11.2014

Procurement Guidance for Transit Agencies

FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS AND PASSENGER OPERATIONS

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION 5

COMPLIANCE LETTER 7

APPLICABLE FEDERAL CLAUSES BASED ON PROCUREMENT TYPE 11

FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION PROCUREMENT METHODS 15

FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION SAMPLE PARAGRAPH FOR SMALL PURCHASES 21

REQUEST FOR QUOTE FORM 23

GUIDE FOR PROFESSIONAL SERVICES AND ARCHITECTURAL ENGINEERING SERVICES 27

GUIDE FOR PROFESSIONAL SERVICES AND ARCHITECTURAL ENGINEERING SERVICES - CHECKLIST 45

GUIDE FOR OPERATIONS, MANAGEMENT, SUBRECIPIENTS 47

GUIDE FOR OPERATIONS, MANAGEMENT, SUBRECIPIENTS - CHECKLIST 69

GUIDE FOR ROLLING STOCK 71

GUIDE FOR ROLLING STOCK - CHECKLIST 91

GUIDE FOR CONSTRUCTION 93

GUIDE FOR CONSTRUCTION – CHECKLIST 121

GUIDE FOR MATERIALS AND SUPPLIES 123

GUIDE FOR MATERIALS AND SUPPLIES - CHECKLIST 142

REFERENCE MATERIAL - 49CFR18.36 144

CIRCULAR 4220.1F LINK 154

CIRCULAR 156

REFERENCE MATERIAL - PROCUREMENT TRIENNIAL REVIEW FY2014 371

REFERENCE MATERIAL - FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION BEST PRACTICES PROCUREMENT MANUAL 395

APPENDIX I- POWERPOINT 445

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

Procurement Process

This information is intended to provide guidance on the processes for procurements when using state and federal dollars. Procurements should be in accordance with Chapter 287, Florida Statutes (F.S.), Chapter 60A, Florida Administrative Code (F.A.C.) and Federal Transit Administration (FTA) Best Practices Procurement Manual. Additionally, geographic preferences are prohibited when procurements involve federal funds *[reference: 49 CFR 18.36 (c)(1)(2) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 2.a(4)(g)].*

Third Party Contracts refer to a recipient's contract with a vendor or contractor, including procurement by purchase order or purchase by credit card, which is financed with Federal assistance awarded by FTA.

An agency should submit their procurement request to the District Representative for approval prior to completing the purchase. To complete the procurement request, the agency should follow these steps:

1. Determine the Funding Source (i.e. – federal, state, or local funds)

2. Determine type of procurement being requested (Examples are located in the Procurement Guidance for Transit Agencies Handbook)
   - Professional Services/Architectural Engineering Services
   - Operations/Management/Subrecipients
   - Rolling Stock
   - Construction
   - Materials and Supplies

3. Determine level of procurement method
   - Micro Purchase – Procurements less than $2,500
   - Small Purchases – Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000
   - Competitive Procurements – Procurements greater than $35,000
   - Other methods listed in the Procurement Guidance for Transit Agencies Manual

4. Ensure that all potential vendors/contractors will accept the applicable federal clauses that relate to the procurement.

After these steps have been completed, the appropriate checklist should be utilized from the Procurement Guidance for Transit Agencies Handbook. The checklist should notate where the applicable clause can be found in the supporting documentation. This checklist should be included in the agency's procurement request.

A sample letter is located in the Procurement Guidance for Transit Agencies Handbook. Agencies may utilize this letter as a template when third party agreements/contracts are necessary. This will ensure that the third party (vendor or contractor) accepts the applicable federal clauses.

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

Procurement Guidance for Transit Agencies

(Insert Date)

____(Insert transit agency name)_____complies with the federal, state and local regulations. The procurement guidelines enclosed herein reflect applicable clauses and purchasing requirements. Based on the procurement method used Federal certifications and requirements are included. Procurements will conform to all applicable federal and state laws. These guidelines comply with 49 CFR 18.36, FTA C 4220.1F, Chapter 3 and Florida Statutes, 287.

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

APPLICABLE FEDERAL CLAUSES BASED ON PROCUREMENT TYPE

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

APPLICABILITY OF THIRD-PARTY CONTRACT CLAUSES
(excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000)

CLAUSE	TYPE OF PROCUREMENT				
	Professional Services/A&E	Operations/ Management/ Subrecipients	Revenue Rolling Stock	Construction	Materials & Supplies
No Federal government obligations to third-parties by use of a disclaimer	All	All	All	All	All
Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts	All	All	All	All	All
Access to Records	All	All	All	All	All
Federal changes	All	All	All	All	All
Civil Rights (EEO, Title VI & ADA)	All	All	All	All	All
Incorporation of FTA Terms	All	All	All	All	All
Energy Conservation	All	All	All	All	All
Termination Provisions (not required of states)	>$10,000	>$10,000	>$10,000	>$10,000	>$10,000
Debarment and Suspension	>$25,000	>$25,000	>$25,000	>$25,000	>$25,000
Buy America			>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000 (for steel, iron, manufactured products)
Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches or other litigation	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000
Lobbying	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000
Clean Air	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000
Clean Water	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000
Cargo Preference			Involving property that may be transported by ocean vessel	Involving property that may be transported by ocean vessel	Involving property that may be transported by ocean vessel
Fly America	Involving foreign transport or travel by air	Involving foreign transport or travel by air	Involving foreign transport or travel by air	Involving foreign transport or travel by air	Involving foreign transport or travel by air
Davis Bacon Act				>$2,000 (including ferry vessels)	
Copeland Anti-Kickback Act				Section 1: All Section 2: >$2,000 (including ferry vessels)	
Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act		>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000 (including ferry vessels)	

APPLICABILITY OF THIRD-PARTY CONTRACT CLAUSES
(excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000)

CLAUSE	TYPE OF PROCUREMENT				
	Professional Services/A&E	Operations/ Management/ Subrecipients	Revenue Rolling Stock	Construction	Materials & Supplies
Bonding (not required of states)				>$100,000 (including ferry vessels)	
Seismic Safety	A&E for new buildings & additions			New buildings & additions	
Transit Employee Protective Arrangements		Transit operations funded with Section 5307, 5309, 5311 or 5316 funds			
Charter Service Operations		All			
School Bus Operations		All			
Drug and Alcohol Testing		Transit operations funded with Section 5307, 5309 or 5311 funds			
Patent Rights	Research & development				
Rights in Data and Copyrights requirements	Research & development				
Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBEs)	All	All	All	All	All
Prompt Payment	All non TVM purchases if threshold for DBE program met	All non TVM purchases if threshold for DBE program met	All non TVM purchases if threshold for DBE program met	All non TVM purchases if threshold for DBE program met	All non TVM purchases if threshold for DBE program met
Recycled Products		Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year		Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year	Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year
ADA Access	A&E	All	All	All	
Special Notification Requirements for States	Limited to states	Limited to states	Limited to states	Limited to states	Limited to states

FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION PROCUREMENT METHODS

This information is intended to provide guidance on the processes for procurements when using state and federal dollars. Procurements should be in accordance with Chapter 287, Florida Statutes (F.S.), Chapter 60A, Florida Administrative Code (F.A.C.) and Federal Transit Administration (FTA) Best Practices Procurement Manual.

Micro Purchases	Procurements less than $2,500
Purchase Requirements	**Micro Purchases:** **1)** Recipients may acquire property and services valued at less than $2,500 without obtaining competitive quotations. These purchases are exempt from FTA's Buy America requirements. Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, however, will apply to construction contracts exceeding $2,000, even though the recipient uses micro-purchase procurement procedures. **(2) Procedures.** The following procedures apply to micro-purchases: (a) Competition. The recipient should distribute micro-purchases equitably among qualified suppliers. Recipients are strongly encouraged to obtain quotes or procure goods and services directly from minority vendors with available. (b) Prohibited Divisions. The recipient may not divide or reduce the size of its procurement merely to come within the micro-purchase limit. (c) Documentation. FTA's only documentation requirement for micro-purchases is a determination that the price is fair and reasonable and a description of how the recipient made its determination.
Small Purchases	Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000
Purchase Requirements	The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients authorizes governmental recipients to use relatively simple and informal small purchase procedures as follows: **(1) When Appropriate.** Small purchase procedures may be used to acquire services, supplies, or other property valued at more than the micro-purchase threshold. These purchases are also exempt from FTA's Buy America requirements. **(2) Procedures.** When using small purchase procedures: (a) Competition. The recipient must obtain price or rate quotations from an adequate number of qualified sources (minimum of two competitive quotes). Competitive quotes should be obtained from minority business enterprises whenever possible. (b) Prohibited Divisions. The recipient may not divide or reduce the size of its procurement to avoid the additional procurement requirements applicable to larger acquisitions. (c) Documentation. Written evidence of all quotes/proposals received and documentation of conditions and circumstances shall be maintained in the procurement file. **Single Quote:** Written evidence of all quotes/proposals received and documentation of conditions and circumstances to support a non-competitive award (only single quote) shall be maintained in the procurement file.
Competitive Procurements (Request for Proposals)	Procurements greater than $35,000

Purchase Requirements	The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients acknowledges the use of competitive proposals to be a generally accepted procurement method when the nature of the procurement does not lend itself to sealed bidding and the recipient expects that more than one source will be willing and able to submit an offer or proposal. **(1) When Appropriate.** Competitive proposals should be used when any of the following circumstances are present: (a) Type of Specifications. The property or services to be acquired are described in a performance or functional specification; or if described in detailed technical specifications, other circumstances such as the need for discussions or the importance of basing contract award on factors other than price alone are present. (b) Uncertain Number of Sources. Uncertainty about whether more than one bid will be submitted in response to an invitation for bids and the recipient lacks the authority or flexibility under State or local law to negotiate the contract price if it receives only a single bid. (c) Price Alone Not Determinative. Due to the nature of the procurement, contract award need not be based exclusively on price or price-related factors. In different types of negotiated acquisitions, the relative importance of cost or price may vary. When the recipient's material requirements are clearly definable and the risk of unsuccessful contract performance is minimal, cost or price may play a dominant role in source selection. The less definitive the requirements, the more development work required, or the greater the performance risk, the more technical or past performance considerations may play a dominant role in source selection and supersede low price. (d) Discussions Expected. Separate discussions with individual offeror(s) are expected to be necessary after they have submitted their proposals. This contrasts with Formal Advertising procedures in which discussions with individual bidders are not likely to be necessary, as award of the contract will be made based on price and price-related factors alone. **(2) Procurement Procedures.** The following procedures apply to procurements by competitive proposals: (a) Publicity. The request for proposals is publicly advertised. (b) Evaluation Factors. All evaluation factors and their relative importance are specified in the solicitation; but numerical or percentage ratings or weights need not be disclosed. (c) Adequate Sources. Proposals are solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources. (d) Evaluation Method. A specific method is established and used to conduct technical evaluations of the proposals received and to determine the most qualified offeror. (e) Price and Other Factors. An award is made to the responsible offeror whose proposal is most advantageous to the recipient's program with price and other factors considered. (f) Best Value. If permitted under its State or local law, the recipient may award the contract to the offeror whose proposal provides the greatest value to the recipient. To do so, the recipient's solicitation must inform potential offerors that the award will be made on a "best value" basis and identify what factors will form the basis for award. The evaluation factors for a specific procurement should reflect the subject matter and the elements that are most important to the recipient. Those evaluation factors may include, but need not be limited to, technical design, technical approach, length of delivery schedules, quality of proposed personnel, past performance, and management plan. The recipient should base its determination of which proposal represents the "best value" on an analysis of the tradeoff of qualitative technical factors and price or cost factors. Apart from the statutory requirement that the contract must support the recipient's public transportation project consistent with applicable Federal laws and regulations, FTA does not require any specific factors or analytic process. *FTA strongly encourages non-governmental recipients to use similar procedures.*
Sealed Bids	
Purchase Requirements	**Sealed Bids (Formal Advertising).** The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients

	acknowledges sealed bidding to be a generally accepted procurement method in which bids are publicly solicited, and a firm fixed price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming to all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is lowest in price. **(1) When Appropriate.** The Common Grant Rule for government recipients states a preference for the sealed bids procurement method for acquiring property, construction, and other services. Procurement using sealed bids is appropriate if: (a) Precise Specifications. A complete, adequate, precise, and realistic specification or purchase description is available. (b) Adequate Sources. Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively for the business. (c) Fixed Price Contract. The procurement generally lends itself to a firm fixed price contract. (d) Price Determinative. The successful bidder can be selected on the basis of price and those price-related factors listed in the solicitation including, but not limited to, transportation costs, life cycle costs, and discounts expected to be taken. Apart from responsibility determinations discussed in later sections of this Chapter, contractor selection may not be determined on the basis of other factors whose costs cannot be measured at the time of award. (e) Discussions Unnecessary. Discussions with one or more bidders after bids have been submitted are expected to be unnecessary as award of the contract will be made based on price and price-related factors alone. This contrasts with Competitive Proposal procedures in which discussions with individual offerors are expected to be necessary and may take place at any time after receipt of proposals. However, a pre-bid conference with prospective bidders before bids have been received can be useful. **(2) Procurement Procedures.** The following procedures apply to sealed bid procurements: (a) Publicity. The invitation for bids is publicly advertised. (b) Adequate Sources. Bids are solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers. (c) Adequate Specifications. The invitation for bids, including any specifications and pertinent attachments, describes the property or services sought in sufficient detail that a prospective bidder will be able to submit a proper bid. (d) Sufficient Time. Bidders are allowed sufficient time to prepare bids before the date of bid opening. (e) Public Opening. All bids are publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids. (f) Fixed Price Contract. A firm fixed price contract is usually awarded in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder, but a fixed price incentive contract or inclusion of an economic price adjustment provision can sometimes be appropriate. When specified in the bidding documents, factors such as transportation costs and life cycle costs affect the determination of the lowest bid; payment discounts are used to determine the low bid only when prior experience indicates that such discounts are typically taken. (g) Rejection of Bids. Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound, documented business reason. *FTA strongly encourages non-governmental recipients to use similar procedures.*
Federal Clauses Needed	See List of Federal Clauses to determined applicable clauses for your procurement.
Two-Step Procurement Procedures	

Purchase Requirements	**Two-Step Procurement Procedures.** If permitted by State and local law, the recipient may use two-step procurement procedures in both sealed bid and competitively negotiated procurements, provided the opportunity for full and open competition is retained. **(1) Review of Technical Qualifications and Approach**. The first step is a review of the prospective contractors' technical approach to the recipient's request and technical qualifications to carry out that approach. The recipient then may narrow the competitive range to prospective contractors that demonstrate a technically satisfactory approach and have satisfactory qualifications. **(2) Review of Bids and Proposals Submitted by Qualified Prospective Contractors**. The second step consists of soliciting and reviewing complete bids (sometimes referred to as "two-step sealed bidding") or proposals (as in "competitive negotiations"), including price, submitted by each prospective contractor determined to be qualified. Absent exceptional circumstances, the recipient should attempt to solicit bids or proposals from at least three qualified prospective contractors. Unlike qualifications-based procurement procedures required for A&E services, and other contracts covered by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b) discussed in subsection 3.f of this Chapter, FTA expects the recipient to consider all bid or proposal prices submitted as well as other technical factors, rather than limiting reviews to the most qualified bidder or offeror.
Federal Clauses Needed	See List of Federal Clauses to determined applicable clauses for your procurement.
Architectural Engineering (A&E) Services and Others Services	
Purchase Requirements	**Architectural Engineering (A&E) Services and Other Services.** FTA's enabling legislation at 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(1) requires the use of the qualifications-based procurement procedures contained in the "Brooks Act," 40 U.S.C. Sections 1101 through 1104, to acquire A&E services, but also for program management, construction management, feasibility studies, preliminary engineering, design, architectural, engineering, surveying, mapping and related services. The nature of the work to be performed and its relationship to construction, not the nature of the prospective contractor, determine whether qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used as described below. **(1) Qualifications-Based Procurement Procedures Required.** The recipient must use qualifications-based procurement procedures not only when contracting for A&E services, but also for other services listed in 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(1) that are directly in support of, directly connected to, directly related to, or lead to construction, alteration, or repair of real property. For example, a contractor performing program management, project design, construction management, or engineering services in which that contractor would select the finished products to be acquired for an FTA assisted construction project must be selected through qualifications-based procurement procedures. **(2) Qualifications-Based Procurement Procedures Prohibited.** Unless FTA determines otherwise in writing, a recipient may not use qualifications-based procurement procedures to acquire other types of services if those services are not directly in support of, directly connected to, directly related to, or do not lead to construction, alteration, or repair of real property. Even if a contractor has performed services listed herein in support of a construction, alteration, or repair project involving real property, selection of that contractor to perform similar services not relating to construction may not be made through the use of qualifications-based procurement procedures. A project involving construction does not always require that qualifications-based procurement procedures be used. Whether or not qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used depends on the actual services to be performed in connection with the construction project. For example, the design or fabrication of message signs, signals, movable barriers, and similar property that will become off-the-shelf items or will be fabricated and delivered as final end products for installation in an FTA assisted construction project are not services for which qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used. Nor are actual construction, alteration, or repair to real

	property the type of services for which qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used. **(3) Qualifications-Based Procurement Procedures.** The following procedures apply to qualifications-based procurements: (a) Qualifications. Unlike other two-step procurement procedures in which price is an evaluation factor, an offeror's qualifications are evaluated to determine contract award. (b) Price. Price is excluded as an evaluation factor. (c) Most Qualified. Negotiations are first conducted with only the most qualified offeror. (d) Next Most Qualified. Only after failing to agree on a fair and reasonable price may negotiations be conducted with the next most qualified offeror. Then, if necessary, negotiations with successive offerors in descending order may be conducted until contract award can be made to the offeror whose price the recipient believes is fair and reasonable. **(4) Effect of State Laws.** To the extent that a State has, before August 10, 2005, adopted by law, an equivalent State qualifications-based procurement requirement for acquiring architectural, engineering, and design services, Federal "Brooks Act" procedures, 40 U.S.C. Sections 1101 through 1104, will not apply. **(5) Audits and Indirect Costs.** As required by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(3), the following requirements apply to a third party contract for program management, architectural engineering, construction management, feasibility studies, preliminary engineering, design, architectural, engineering, surveying, mapping, or related services: (a) Performance of Audits. The third party contract or subcontract must be performed and audited in compliance with FAR Part 31 cost principles. (b) Indirect Cost Rates. The recipient and the third party contractor, its subcontractors and subrecipients, if any, must accept FAR indirect cost rates for one-year applicable accounting periods established by a cognizant Federal or State government agency, if those rates are not currently under dispute. (c) Application of Rates. After a firm's indirect cost rates established as described in subparagraph 3.f(5)(b) of this Chapter are accepted, those rates will apply for purposes of contract estimation, negotiation, administration, reporting, and payments, not limited by administrative or de facto ceilings. (d) Prenotification; Confidentiality of Data. Before requesting or using cost or rate data described in subparagraph 3.f(5)(c), a recipient must notify the affected firm(s). That data must be kept confidential and may not be accessible by or provided by the group of agencies that share cost data under this subparagraph, except by written permission of the audited firm. If prohibited by law, that cost and rate data may not be disclosed under any circumstances. FTA recognizes that many States have "Open Records" laws that may make it difficult to maintain confidential cost or rate data. As a result, before requesting or using cost or rate data, not only should a recipient notify the affected firm, but it must also obtain permission to provide that data in response to a valid request under applicable State law. The confidentiality requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5325(b)(3)(D) cannot be waived, even if they conflict with State law or regulations.
Federal Clauses Needed	See List of Federal Clauses to determined applicable clauses for your procurement.
Design Bid Build	
Purchase Requirements	The design-bid-build procurement method requires separate contracts for design services and for construction. **(1) Design Services.** For design services, the recipient must use qualifications-based procurement procedures, in compliance with applicable Federal, State and local law and regulations. **(2) Construction.** Because the recipient may not use qualifications-based procurement procedures for the actual construction, alteration or repair of real property, the recipient generally must use competitive procedures for the construction. These may include sealed bidding or competitive negotiation procurement methods, as appropriate.

Federal Clauses Needed	See List of Federal Clauses to determined applicable clauses for your procurement.
Design Build	
Purchase Requirements	The design-build procurement method consists of contracting for design and construction simultaneously with contract award to a single contractor, consortium, joint venture, team, or partnership that will be responsible for both the project's design and construction. The Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users (SAFETEA-LU) expressly authorizes the use of FTA capital assistance to support design-build projects "after the recipient complies with Government requirements," 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(d)(2). **(1) Procurement Method Determined by Value.** First, the recipient must separate the various contract activities to be undertaken and classify them as design or construction, and then calculate the estimated total value of each. Because both design and construction are included in a single procurement, the FTA expects the recipient to use the procurement method appropriate for the services having the greatest cost, even though other necessary services would not typically be procured by that method. (a) Construction Predominant. The construction costs of a design-build project are usually predominant so that the recipient would be expected to use competitive negotiations or sealed bids for the entire procurement rather than the qualification-based Brooks Act procurement procedures. Specifically, when construction costs will be predominant, unless FTA determines otherwise in writing, an FTA recipient may not use qualifications-based procurement procedures to acquire architectural engineering, program management, construction management, feasibility studies, preliminary engineering, design, architectural and engineering, surveying, mapping, or related A&E services unless required by State law adopted before August 10, 2005. (b) Design Services Predominant. In the less usual circumstance in which the cost of most work to be performed will consist of costs for architectural and engineering, program management, construction management, feasibility studies, preliminary engineering, design, architectural engineering, surveying, mapping, or related A&E services, FTA expects the recipient to use qualifications-based procurement procedures based on the Brooks Act as described in subsection 3.e of this Chapter. **(2) Selection Processes.** The recipient may structure its design-build procurement using one or more steps as described below: (a) One-Step Method. The recipient may undertake its design-build procurement in a single step. (b) Two-Step Method. Another procurement method the recipient may use for large design-build projects is a two-step selection process as authorized for Federal Government use by 41 U.S.C. Section 253m. This method consists of: Review of Technical Qualifications and Approach. The first step is a review of the prospective contractors' technical qualifications and technical approach to the project. The recipient may then narrow the competitive range to those prospective contractors with satisfactory qualifications that demonstrate a technically satisfactory approach. Review of Complete Proposals. The second step consists of soliciting and reviewing complete proposals, including price, submitted by prospective contractors first determined to be qualified. By using this two-step method, it will not be necessary for the recipient to undertake extensive proposal reviews, nor will prospective offerors need to engage in expensive proposal drafting. This two-step selection procedure is separate and distinct from prequalification and is but one procurement method available to the recipient.
Federal Clauses Needed	See List of Federal Clauses to determined applicable clauses for your procurement.

FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
SAMPLE PARAGRAPH FOR SMALL PURCHASES

(Date)

To: **Joe's Auto Shop**

From: **BBB Transit Agency**

Subject: **Acceptance of Federal Clauses**

This purchase shall conform in all respects to the Federal Transit Administration's Federally Required and Other Model Clauses including but not limited to: No government obligation to third parties; Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts, 31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq., 49 CFR part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001, 49 U.S.C. 5307; Access to records and reports, 49 U.S.C. 5325, 18 CFR 18.36 (i), 49 CFR 633.17; Federal changes, 49 CFR part 18; Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE), 49 CFR part 26; Termination, 49 U.S.C. part 18 FTA circular 4220.1F.

Date:_____

Signature:_____

Company Name:_____

Title:_____

SAMPLE

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

Date: _____ All prices to be F.O.B Department of Transportation (DOT) at _____
City

Requisition Number: _____ Reply Requested By Date: _____ Reply by Time: _____ ☐am☐pm

QUOTE ON ALL OR NONE

Item Description	Recycled Y-N-A*	Quantity – Unit	Unit Price	Total Price
Delivery will be made within _____ days after receipt of order.				

*Y = Recycled Content N = Non-Recycled A = Recycled but not quoted
If recycled content is available, please send information separate from this quote

Accepts VISA? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Minority Business Enterprise (MBE) ☐ Yes ☐ No

COMPANY NAME: _____

ADDRESS: _____

_____

_____

PHONE: _____

FAX/E-MAIL: _____

FEID NO.: _____

QUOTED BY: _____
Typed Name

RETURN COMPLETED FORM TO:
Florida Department of Transportation

NAME: _____

ADDRESS: _____

_____

_____

PHONE: _____

FAX/E-MAIL: _____

THIS IS A REQUEST FOR QUOTES, NOT A PURCHASE ORDER

VENDORS MUST SHOW UNIT PRICES AS SPECIFIED

IMPORTANT INFORMATION: *FOR QUOTE TO BE ACCEPTED VENDOR MUST BE REGISTERED IN THE STATE'S E-PROCUREMENT SYSTEM, MyFloridaMarketPlace (MFMP) at https://vendor.myfloridamarketplace.com

ATTACHMENT TO REQUESTS FOR INFORMAL BIDS/PROPOSALS/QUOTES

MYFLORIDAMARKETPLACE TRANSACTION FEE

The State of Florida through the Department of Management Services **("Department") has instituted MyFloridaMarketPlace, a statewide eProcurement** system. Pursuant to section 287.057(22), Florida Statutes, all payments shall be assessed a Transaction Fee of one percent (1.0%), which the vendor shall pay to the State.

For payments within the State accounting system (FLAIR or its successor), the Transaction Fee shall, when possible, be automatically deducted from payments to the vendor. If automatic deduction is not possible, the vendor shall pay the Transaction Fee pursuant to Rule 60A-1.031(2), F.A.C. By submission of these reports and corresponding payments, vendor certifies their correctness. All such reports and payments shall be subject to audit by the State or its designee.

The vendor shall receive a credit for any Transaction Fee paid by the vendor for the purchase of any item(s) if such item(s) are returned to the vendor through no fault, act, or omission of the vendor. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a Transaction Fee is non-refundable when an item is rejected or returned, or declined, due to the vendor's failure to perform or comply with specifications or requirements of the agreement.

Failure to comply with these requirements shall constitute grounds for declaring the vendor in default and recovering reprocurement costs from the vendor in addition to all outstanding fees. VENDORS DELINQUENT IN PAYING TRANSACTION FEES MAY BE EXCLUDED FROM CONDUCTING FUTURE BUSINESS WITH THE STATE.

On a monthly calendar basis, each vendor registered in MyFloridaMarketPlace shall report its business activity relating to State agreements using Form PUR 3776** (12/04).

**Form PUR 3776 (12/04) will be available from the MyFlorida.com website as an electronic process, click on "Business", click on "Doing Business with the State", click on "Laws & Guidelines", then click on "Purchasing Forms".

GUIDE FOR PROFESSIONAL SERVICES AND ARCHITECTURAL ENGINEERING SERVICES

When procuring professional services/architectural engineering services the following steps should be taken:

1. Determine the method of procurement (i.e., Micro Purchase, Small Purchase, RFP, Sealed Bid, etc.).
2. Apply applicable Federal clauses based on method of procurement (cost of purchase).

Professional Services/Architectural Engineering Services - (i.e., Janitorial Services, Certified Public Accountant, Auditors, Legal Services, etc.)	
Methods of Procurement	Micro Purchases: Procurements less than $2,500 Small Purchases: Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000 Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals): Procurements greater than $35,000
Applicable Federal Clauses **Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000**	
No Government Obligation to Third Parties	
19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES	
Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts	
20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS **31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001** **49 U.S.C. 5307**	
Access to Records	
11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS **49 U.S.C. 5325** **18 CFR 18.36 (i)** **49 CFR 633.17**	
Federal Changes	
12. FEDERAL CHANGES **49 CFR Part 18**	
Civil Rights Requirements – Mandatory Language	
24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS **29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000** **42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112** **42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332** **29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.**	
Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) – contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs	
28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) **49 CFR Part 26**	
Incorporation of FTA terms (Per FTA C4220.1F) – Mandatory Language	
30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
Energy Conservation	
6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 18**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000	

Termination Provisions
21. TERMINATION **49 U.S.C. Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000
Suspension and Debarment
22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000
Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation
25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION **49 CFR Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**
Lobbying – Mandatory Language
10. LOBBYING **31 U.S.C. 1352** **49 CFR Part 19** **49 CFR Part 20**
Clean Air
14. CLEAN AIR **42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq** **40 CFR 15.61** **49 CFR Part 18**
Clean Water
7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS **33 U.S.C. 1251**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air
Fly America
1. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 40118** **41 CFR Part 301-10**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve A&E for New Buildings & Additions
Seismic Safety
5. SEISMIC SAFETY REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 7701 et seq. 49** **CFR Part 41**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve Research & Development
Patent Rights
26. PATENT AND RIGHTS IN DATA **37 CFR Part 401** **49 CFR Parts 18 and 19**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve Architectural & Engineering
ADA Access
FTA is currently working on a contract clause to incorporate appropriate ADA requirements, but it is not yet available.

Below are the applicable clauses that were listed above with suggested or mandatory language. Those clauses with mandatory language are noted.

Professional Services/Architectural Engineering Services - (i.e., Janitorial Services, Certified Public Accountant, Auditors, Legal Services, etc.)	
Methods of Procurement	Micro Purchase: Procurements less than $2,500 Small Purchases: Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000 Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals): Procurements greater than $35,000

Applicable Federal Clauses

Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000

No Government Obligation to Third Parties

19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES

Applicability to Contracts
Applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
Not required by statute or regulation for either primary contractors or subcontractors, this concept should flow down to all levels to clarify, to all parties to the contract, that the Federal Government does not have contractual liability to third parties, absent specific written consent.
Model Clause/Language
While no specific language is required, FTA has developed the following language.

No Obligation by the Federal Government.

(1) The Purchaser and Contractor acknowledge and agree that, notwithstanding any concurrence by the Federal Government in or approval of the solicitation or award of the underlying contract, absent the express written consent by the Federal Government, the Federal Government is not a party to this contract and shall not be subject to any obligations or liabilities to the Purchaser, Contractor, or any other party (whether or not a party to that contract) pertaining to any matter resulting from the underlying contract.

(2) The Contractor agrees to include the above clause in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clause shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to its provisions.

Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts

20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS
31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.
49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001
49 U.S.C. 5307

Applicability to Contracts
These requirements are applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
These requirements flow down to contractors and subcontractors who make, present, or submit covered claims and statements.
Model Clause/Language
These requirements have no specified language, so FTA proffers the following language.

Program Fraud and False or Fraudulent Statements or Related Acts.

(1) The Contractor acknowledges that the provisions of the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986, as amended, 31 U.S.C. § 3801 et seq. and U.S. DOT regulations, "Program Fraud Civil Remedies," 49 C.F.R. Part 31, apply to its actions pertaining to this Project. Upon execution of the underlying contract, the Contractor certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of any statement it has made, it makes, it may make, or causes to be made, pertaining to the underlying contract or the FTA assisted project for which this contract work is being performed. In addition to other penalties that may be applicable, the Contractor further acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification, the Federal Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986 on the Contractor to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(2) The Contractor also acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification to the Federal Government under a contract connected with a project that is financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance originally awarded by FTA under the authority of 49 U.S.C. § 5307, the Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of 18 U.S.C. § 1001 and 49 U.S.C. § 5307(n)(1) on the Contractor, to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(3) The Contractor agrees to include the above two clauses in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clauses shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to the provisions

Access to Records

11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS
49 U.S.C. 5325
18 CFR 18.36 (i)
49 CFR 633.17

Applicability to Contracts
Reference Chart "Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Type of Contracts"
Flow Down
FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.
Model Clause/Language
The specified language is not mandated by the statutes or regulations referenced, but the language provided paraphrases the statutory or regulatory language.

Access to Records - The following access to records requirements apply to this Contract:

1. Where the Purchaser is not a State but a local government and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 18.36(i), the Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their authorized representatives access to any books, documents, papers and records of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions. Contractor also agrees, pursuant to 49 C.F.R. 633.17 to provide the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives including any PMO Contractor access to Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311.

2. Where the Purchaser is a State and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 633.17, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives, including any PMO Contractor, access to the Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311. By definition, a major capital project excludes contracts of less than the simplified acquisition threshold currently set at $100,000.

3. Where the Purchaser enters into a negotiated contract for other than a small purchase or under the simplified acquisition threshold and is an institution of higher education, a hospital or other non-profit organization and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 19.48, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their duly authorized representatives with access to any books, documents, papers and record of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making

audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions.

4. Where any Purchaser which is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 U.S.C. 5325(a) enters into a contract for a capital project or improvement (defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1) through other than competitive bidding, the Contractor shall make available records related to the contract to the Purchaser, the Secretary of Transportation and the Comptroller General or any authorized officer or employee of any of them for the purposes of conducting an audit and inspection.

5. The Contractor agrees to permit any of the foregoing parties to reproduce by any means whatsoever or to copy excerpts and transcriptions as reasonably needed.

6. The Contractor agrees to maintain all books, records, accounts and reports required under this contract for a period of not less than three years after the date of termination or expiration of this contract, except in the event of litigation or settlement of claims arising from the performance of this contract, in which case Contractor agrees to maintain same until the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have disposed of all such litigation, appeals, claims or exceptions related thereto. Reference 49 CFR 18.39(i)(11).

7. FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.

Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Types of Contract

Contract Characteristics		Operational Service Contract	Turnkey	Construction	Architectural Engineering	Acquisition of Rolling Stock	Professional Services
I State Grantees							
a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000)		None	Those imposed on state pass thru to Contractor	None	None	None	None
b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		None unless[1] non-competitive award		Yes, if non-competitive award or if funded thru[2] 5307/5309/5311	None unless non-competitive award	None unless non-competitive award	None unless non-competitive award
II Non State Grantees							
a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000)		Yes[3]	Those imposed on non-state Grantee pass thru to Contractor	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		Yes[3]		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Sources of Authority:
[1] 49 USC 5325 (a)
[2] 49 CFR 633.17
[3] 18 CFR 18.36 (i)

Federal Changes

12. FEDERAL CHANGES
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Federal Changes requirement applies to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Federal Changes requirement flows down appropriately to each applicable changed requirement.
Model Clause/Language
No specific language is mandated. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Federal Changes - Contractor shall at all times comply with all applicable FTA regulations, policies, procedures and directives, including without limitation those listed directly or by reference in the Master Agreement between Purchaser and FTA, as they may be amended or promulgated from time to time during the term of this contract. Contractor's failure to so comply shall constitute a material breach of this contract.

Civil Rights Requirements – Mandatory Language

24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS
29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000
42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112
42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332
29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.

Applicability to Contracts
The Civil Rights Requirements apply to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Civil Rights requirements flow down to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier.
Model Clause/Language
The following clause was predicated on language contained at 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, but FTA has shortened the lengthy text.

Civil Rights - The following requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(1) Nondiscrimination - In accordance with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000d, section 303 of the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 6102, section 202 of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, 42 U.S.C. § 12132, and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees that it will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, age, or disability. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with applicable Federal implementing regulations and other implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(2) Equal Employment Opportunity - The following equal employment opportunity requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(a) Race, Color, Creed, National Origin, Sex - In accordance with Title VII of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000e, and Federal transit laws at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable equal employment opportunity requirements of U.S. Department of Labor (U.S. DOL) regulations, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor," 41 C.F.R. Parts 60 et seq., (which implement Executive Order No. 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order No. 11375, "Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," 42 U.S.C. § 2000e note), and with any applicable Federal statutes, executive orders, regulations, and Federal policies that may in the future affect construction activities undertaken in the course of the Project. The Contractor agrees to take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, color, creed, national origin, sex, or age. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion or transfer, recruitment or recruitment advertising, layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(b) Age - In accordance with section 4 of the Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967, as amended, 29 U.S.C. § § 623 and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to refrain from discrimination against present and prospective employees for reason of age. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(c) Disabilities - In accordance with section 102 of the Americans with Disabilities Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 12112, the Contractor agrees that it will comply with the requirements of U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, "Regulations to Implement the Equal Employment Provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act," 29 C.F.R. Part 1630, pertaining to employment of persons with disabilities. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(3) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA, modified only if necessary to identify the affected parties.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) – contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs

28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE)

49 CFR Part 26

Background and Applicability

The newest version on the Department of Transportation's Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) program became effective July 16, 2003. The rule provides guidance to grantees on the use of overall and contract goals, requirement to include DBE provisions in subcontracts, evaluating DBE participation where specific contract goals have been set, reporting requirements, and replacement of DBE subcontractors. Additionally, the DBE program dictates payment terms and conditions (including limitations on retainage) applicable to all subcontractors regardless of whether they are DBE firms or not.

The DBE program applies to all DOT-assisted contracting activities. A formal clause such as that below must be included in all contracts above the micro-purchase level. The requirements of clause subsection b flow down to subcontracts.

A substantial change to the payment provisions in this newest version of Part 26 concerns retainage (*see* section 26.29). Grantee choices concerning retainage should be reflected in the language choices in clause subsection d.

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the payment terms and conditions applicable to all subcontractors based in Part 26 as well as those related only to DBE subcontractors. The suggested language allows for the options available to grantees concerning retainage, specific contract goals, and evaluation of DBE subcontracting participation when specific contract goals have been established.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises

a. This contract is subject to the requirements of Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 26, *Participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises in Department of Transportation Financial Assistance Programs.* The national goal for participation of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) is 10%. The agency's overall goal for DBE participation is **__ %.** A separate contract goal **[of __ % DBE participation has] [has not]** been established for this procurement.

b. The contractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of this DOT-assisted contract. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as **{insert agency name}** deems appropriate. Each subcontract the contractor signs with a subcontractor must include the assurance in this paragraph (*see* 49 CFR 26.13(b)).

c. ***{If a separate contract goal has been established, use the following}*** Bidders/offerors are required to document sufficient DBE participation to meet these goals or, alternatively, document adequate good faith efforts to do so, as provided for in 49 CFR 26.53. Award of this contract is conditioned on submission of the following **[concurrent with and accompanying sealed bid] [concurrent with and accompanying an initial proposal] [prior to award]**:

1. The names and addresses of DBE firms that will participate in this contract;

2. A description of the work each DBE will perform;

3. The dollar amount of the participation of each DBE firm participating;

4. Written documentation of the bidder/offeror's commitment to use a DBE subcontractor whose participation it submits to

meet the contract goal;

5. Written confirmation from the DBE that it is participating in the contract as provided in the prime contractor's commitment; and

6. If the contract goal is not met, evidence of good faith efforts to do so.

[Bidders][Offerors] must present the information required above **[as a matter of responsiveness] [with initial proposals] [prior to contract award]** (*see* 49 CFR 26.53(3)).

{If no separate contract goal has been established, use the following} The successful bidder/offeror will be required to report its DBE participation obtained through race-neutral means throughout the period of performance.

d. The contractor is required to pay its subcontractors performing work related to this contract for satisfactory performance of that work no later than 30 days after the contractor's receipt of payment for that work from the **{insert agency name}**. In addition, **[the contractor may not hold retainage from its subcontractors.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after the subcontractor's work related to this contract is satisfactorily completed.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after incremental acceptance of the subcontractor's work by the {insert agency name} and contractor's receipt of the partial retainage payment related to the subcontractor's work.]**

e. The contractor must promptly notify **{insert agency name}**, whenever a DBE subcontractor performing work related to this contract is terminated or fails to complete its work, and must make good faith efforts to engage another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work. The contractor may not terminate any DBE subcontractor and perform that work through its own forces or those of an affiliate without prior written consent of **{insert agency name}**.

Incorporation of FTA terms (Per FTA C4220.1F) – Mandatory Language

30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
The incorporation of FTA terms applies to all contracts.
Flow Down
The incorporation of FTA terms has unlimited flow down.
Model Clause/Language
FTA has developed the following incorporation of terms language**:**

Incorporation of Federal Transit Administration (FTA) Terms - The preceding provisions include, in part, certain Standard Terms and Conditions required by DOT, whether or not expressly set forth in the preceding contract provisions. All contractual provisions required by DOT, as set forth in FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions, are hereby incorporated by reference. Anything to the contrary herein notwithstanding, all FTA mandated terms shall be deemed to control in the event of a conflict with other provisions contained in this Agreement. The Contractor shall not perform any act, fail to perform any act, or refuse to comply with any (name of grantee) requests which would cause (name of grantee) to be in violation of the FTA terms and conditions.

Energy Conservation

6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS
42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Energy Conservation requirements are applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Energy Conservation requirements extend to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier and subrecipients and their subagreements at every tier.
Model Clause/Language
No specific clause is recommended in the regulations because the Energy Conservation requirements are so dependent on the

state energy conservation plan. The following language has been developed by FTA:

Energy Conservation - The contractor agrees to comply with mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000

Termination Provisions

21. TERMINATION
49 U.S.C. Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
All contracts (with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education,) in excess of $10,000 shall contain suitable provisions for termination by the grantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (For contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education the threshold is $100,000.) In addition, such contracts shall describe conditions under which the contract may be terminated for default as well as conditions where the contract may be terminated because of circumstances beyond the control of the contractor.
Flow Down
The termination requirements flow down to all contracts in excess of $10,000, with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher learning.
Model Clause/Language
FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such clauses. The following are suggestions of clauses to be used in different types of contracts:

a. Termination for Convenience (General Provision) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, at any time by written notice to the Contractor when it is in the Government's best interest. The Contractor shall be paid its costs, including contract close-out costs, and profit on work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to (Recipient) to be paid the Contractor. If the Contractor has any property in its possession belonging to the (Recipient), the Contractor will account for the same, and dispose of it in the manner the (Recipient) directs.

b. Termination for Default [Breach or Cause] (General Provision) If the Contractor does not deliver supplies in accordance with the contract delivery schedule, or, if the contract is for services, the Contractor fails to perform in the manner called for in the contract, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of the contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. Termination shall be effected by serving a notice of termination on the contractor setting forth the manner in which the Contractor is in default. The contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in the contract.
If it is later determined by the (Recipient) that the Contractor had an excusable reason for not performing, such as a strike, fire, or flood, events which are not the fault of or are beyond the control of the Contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new delivery of performance schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

c. Opportunity to Cure (General Provision) The (Recipient) in its sole discretion may, in the case of a termination for breach or default, allow the Contractor [an appropriately short period of time] in which to cure the defect. In such case, the notice of termination will state the time period in which cure is permitted and other appropriate conditions

If Contractor fails to remedy to (Recipient)'s satisfaction the breach or default of any of the terms, covenants, or conditions of this Contract within [ten (10) days] after receipt by Contractor of written notice from (Recipient) setting forth the nature of said breach or default, (Recipient) shall have the right to terminate the Contract without any further obligation to Contractor. Any such termination for default shall not in any way operate to preclude (Recipient) from also pursuing all available remedies against Contractor and its sureties for said breach or default.

d. Waiver of Remedies for any Breach In the event that (Recipient) elects to waive its remedies for any breach by Contractor of any covenant, term or condition of this Contract, such waiver by (Recipient) shall not limit (Recipient)'s remedies for any succeeding breach of that or of any other term, covenant, or condition of this Contract.

e. Termination for Convenience (Professional or Transit Service Contracts) The (Recipient), by written notice, may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, when it is in the Government's interest. If this contract is terminated, the Recipient shall be liable only for payment under the payment provisions of this contract for services rendered before the effective date of termination.

f. Termination for Default (Supplies and Service) If the Contractor fails to deliver supplies or to perform the services within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner or performance set forth in this contract.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

g. Termination for Default (Transportation Services) If the Contractor fails to pick up the commodities or to perform the services, including delivery services, within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in this contract.

If this contract is terminated while the Contractor has possession of Recipient goods, the Contractor shall, upon direction of the (Recipient), protect and preserve the goods until surrendered to the Recipient or its agent. The Contractor and (Recipient) shall agree on payment for the preservation and protection of goods. Failure to agree on an amount will be resolved under the Dispute clause.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the (Recipient).

h. Termination for Default (Construction) If the Contractor refuses or fails to prosecute the work or any separable part, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the time specified in this contract or any extension or fails to complete the work within this time, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. In this event, the Recipient may take over the work and compete it by contract or otherwise, and may take possession of and use any materials, appliances, and plant on the work site necessary for completing the work. The Contractor and its sureties shall be liable for any damage to the Recipient resulting from the Contractor's refusal or failure to complete the work within specified time, whether or not the Contractor's right to proceed with the work is terminated. This liability includes any increased costs incurred by the Recipient in completing the work.

The Contractor's right to proceed shall not be terminated nor the Contractor charged with damages under this clause if-

1. the delay in completing the work arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor. Examples of such causes include: acts of God, acts of the Recipient, acts of another Contractor in the performance of a contract with the Recipient, epidemics, quarantine restrictions, strikes, freight embargoes; and

2. the contractor, within [10] days from the beginning of any delay, notifies the (Recipient) in writing of the causes of delay. If in the judgment of the (Recipient), the delay is excusable, the time for completing the work shall be extended. The judgment of the (Recipient) shall be final and conclusive on the parties, but subject to appeal under the Disputes clauses.

If, after termination of the Contractor's right to proceed, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, or that the delay was excusable, the rights and obligations of the parties will be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

i. Termination for Convenience or Default (Architect and Engineering) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract in whole or in part, for the Recipient's convenience or because of the failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature, extent, and effective date of the termination. Upon receipt of the notice, the Contractor shall (1) immediately discontinue all services affected (unless the notice

directs otherwise), and (2) deliver to the Contracting Officer all data, drawings, specifications, reports, estimates, summaries, and other information and materials accumulated in performing this contract, whether completed or in process.

If the termination is for the convenience of the Recipient, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment in the contract price but shall allow no anticipated profit on unperformed services.

If the termination is for failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations, the Recipient may complete the work by contact or otherwise and the Contractor shall be liable for any additional cost incurred by the Recipient.
If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

j. Termination for Convenience of Default (Cost-Type Contracts) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, or any portion of it, by serving a notice or termination on the Contractor. The notice shall state whether the termination is for convenience of the (Recipient) or for the default of the Contractor. If the termination is for default, the notice shall state the manner in which the contractor has failed to perform the requirements of the contract. The Contractor shall account for any property in its possession paid for from funds received from the (Recipient), or property supplied to the Contractor by the (Recipient). If the termination is for default, the (Recipient) may fix the fee, if the contract provides for a fee, to be paid the contractor in proportion to the value, if any, of work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to the (Recipient) and the parties shall negotiate the termination settlement to be paid the Contractor.

If the termination is for the convenience of the (Recipient), the Contractor shall be paid its contract close-out costs, and a fee, if the contract provided for payment of a fee, in proportion to the work performed up to the time of termination.

If, after serving a notice of termination for default, the (Recipient) determines that the Contractor has an excusable reason for not performing, such as strike, fire, flood, events which are not the fault of and are beyond the control of the contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new work schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000

Suspension and Debarment

22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)

Background and Applicability

In conjunction with the Office of Management and Budget and other affected Federal agencies, DOT published an update to 49 CFR Part 29 on November 26, 2003. This government-wide regulation implements Executive Order 12549, *Debarment and Suspension*, Executive Order 12689, *Debarment and Suspension*, and 31 U.S.C. 6101 note (Section 2455, Public Law 103-355, 108 Stat. 3327).

The provisions of Part 29 apply to all grantee contracts and subcontracts at any level expected to equal or exceed $25,000 as well as any contract or subcontract (at any level) for Federally required auditing services. 49 CFR 29.220(b). This represents a change from prior practice in that the dollar threshold for application of these rules has been lowered from $100,000 to $25,000. These are contracts and subcontracts referred to in the regulation as "covered transactions."

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors (at any level) that enter into covered transactions are required to verify that the entity (as well as its principals and affiliates) they propose to contract or subcontract with is not excluded or disqualified. They do this by (a) Checking the Excluded Parties List System, (b) Collecting a certification from that person, or (c) Adding a clause or condition to the contract or subcontract. This represents a change from prior practice in that certification is still acceptable but is no longer required. 49 CFR 29.300.

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors who enter into covered transactions also must require the entities they contract with to comply with 49 CFR 29, subpart C and include this requirement in their own subsequent covered transactions (i.e., the requirement flows down to subcontracts at all levels).

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the optional method of verifying that contractors are not excluded or disqualified by certification.

Suspension and Debarment

This contract is a covered transaction for purposes of 49 CFR Part 29. As such, the contractor is required to verify that none of the contractor, its principals, as defined at 49 CFR 29.995, or affiliates, as defined at 49 CFR 29.905, are excluded or disqualified as defined at 49 CFR 29.940 and 29.945.

The contractor is required to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C and must include the requirement to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C in any lower tier covered transaction it enters into.
By signing and submitting its bid or proposal, the bidder or proposer certifies as follows:

The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact relied upon by **{insert agency name}**. If it is later determined that the bidder or proposer knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to remedies available to **{insert agency name}**, the Federal Government may pursue available remedies, including but not limited to suspension and/or debarment. The bidder or proposer agrees to comply with the requirements of 49 CFR 29, Subpart C while this offer is valid and throughout the period of any contract that may arise from this offer. The bidder or proposer further agrees to include a provision requiring such compliance in its lower tier covered transactions.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000

Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation

25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION
49 CFR Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
All contracts in excess of $100,000 shall contain provisions or conditions which will allow for administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. This may include provisions for bonding, penalties for late or inadequate performance, retained earnings, liquidated damages or other appropriate measures.
Flow Down
The Breaches and Dispute Resolutions requirements flow down to all tiers.
Model Clauses/Language
FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such provisions. What provisions are developed will depend on the circumstances and the type of contract. Recipients should consult legal counsel in developing appropriate clauses. The following clauses are examples of provisions from various FTA third party contracts.

Disputes - Disputes arising in the performance of this Contract which are not resolved by agreement of the parties shall be decided in writing by the authorized representative of (Recipient)'s [title of employee]. This decision shall be final and conclusive unless within [ten (10)] days from the date of receipt of its copy, the Contractor mails or otherwise furnishes a written appeal to the [title of employee]. In connection with any such appeal, the Contractor shall be afforded an opportunity to be heard and to offer evidence in support of its position. The decision of the [title of employee] shall be binding upon the Contractor and the Contractor shall abide be the decision.

Performance During Dispute - Unless otherwise directed by (Recipient), Contractor shall continue performance under this Contract while matters in dispute are being resolved.

Claims for Damages - Should either party to the Contract suffer injury or damage to person or property because of any act or omission of the party or of any of his employees, agents or others for whose acts he is legally liable, a claim for damages therefor shall be made in writing to such other party within a reasonable time after the first observance of such injury of damage.

Remedies - Unless this contract provides otherwise, all claims, counterclaims, disputes and other matters in question between the (Recipient) and the Contractor arising out of or relating to this agreement or its breach will be decided by arbitration if the parties mutually agree, or in a court of competent jurisdiction within the State in which the (Recipient) is located.

Rights and Remedies - The duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and the rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of any duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law. No action or failure to act by the (Recipient), (Architect) or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of any right or

duty afforded any of them under the Contract, nor shall any such action or failure to act constitute an approval of or acquiescence in any breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.

Lobbying – Mandatory Language

10. LOBBYING
31 U.S.C. 1352
49 CFR Part 19
49 CFR Part 20

Applicability to Contracts
The Lobbying requirements apply to Construction/Architectural and Engineering/Acquisition of Rolling Stock/Professional Service Contract/Operational Service Contract/Turnkey contracts.
Flow Down
The Lobbying requirements mandate the maximum flow down, pursuant to Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. § 1352(b)(5) and 49 C.F.R. Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7.
Mandatory Clause/Language
Clause and specific language therein are mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Clause pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, *et seq.*]

- Lobbying Certification and Disclosure of Lobbying Activities for third party contractors are mandated by 31 U.S.C. 1352(b)(5), as amended by Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, and DOT implementing regulation, "New Restrictions on Lobbying," at 49 CFR § 20.110(d)

- Language in Lobbying Certification is mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7, which provides that contractors file the certification required by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Lobbying Certification pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995.

- Use of "Disclosure of Lobbying Activities," Standard Form-LLL set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR Part 20, as amended by "Government wide Guidance For New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96) is mandated by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. 1352, as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, et seq.] - Contractors who apply or bid for an award of $100,000 or more shall file the certification required by 49 CFR part 20, "New Restrictions on Lobbying." Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier shall also disclose the name of any registrant under the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 who has made lobbying contacts on its behalf with non-Federal funds with respect to that Federal contract, grant or award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the recipient.

APPENDIX A, 49 CFR PART 20--CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING

Certification for Contracts, Grants, Loans, and Cooperative Agreements

(To be submitted with each bid or offer exceeding $100,000)

The undersigned [Contractor] certifies, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for making lobbying contacts to an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form--LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions [as amended by "Government wide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96). Note: Language in paragraph (2) herein has been modified in accordance with Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 (P.L. 104-65, to be codified at 2 U.S.C. 1601, *et seq.*)]

(3) The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31, U.S.C. § 1352 (as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995). Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such failure.

[Note: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. § 1352(c)(1)-(2)(A), any person who makes a prohibited expenditure or fails to file or amend a required certification or disclosure form shall be subject to
a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such expenditure or failure.]

The Contractor, _____, certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of each statement of its certification and disclosure, if any. In addition, the Contractor understands and agrees that the provisions of 31 U.S.C. A 3801, *et seq.,* apply to this certification and disclosure, if any.
_____ Signature of Contractor's Authorized Official

_____ Name and Title of Contractor's Authorized Official

_____ Date

Clean Air

14. CLEAN AIR
42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq
40 CFR 15.61
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Clean Air requirements apply to all contracts exceeding $100,000, including indefinite quantities where the amount is expected to exceed $100,000 in any year.
Flow Down
The Clean Air requirements flow down to all subcontracts which exceed $100,000.
Model Clauses/Language
No specific language is required. FTA has proposed the following language.

Clean Air - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. §§ 7401 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the
Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Clean Water

7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS
33 U.S.C. 1251

Applicability to Contracts

The Clean Water requirements apply to each contract and subcontract which exceeds $100,000.

Flow Down

The Clean Water requirements flow down to FTA recipients and subrecipients at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

While no mandatory clause is contained in the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, the following language developed by FTA contains all the mandatory requirements:

Clean Water - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, 33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air

Fly America

2. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. § 40118
41 CFR Part 301-10

Applicability to Contracts

The Fly America requirements apply to the transportation of persons or property, by air, between a place in the U.S. and a place outside the U.S., or between places outside the U.S., when the FTA will participate in the costs of such air transportation. Transportation on a foreign air carrier is permissible when provided by a foreign air carrier under a code share agreement when the ticket identifies the U.S. air carrier's designator code and flight number. Transportation by a foreign air carrier is also permissible if there is a bilateral or multilateral air transportation agreement to which the U.S. Government and a foreign government are parties and which the Federal DOT has determined meets the requirements of the Fly America Act.

Flow Down Requirements

The Fly America requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors, who are responsible for ensuring that lower tier contractors and subcontractors are in compliance.

Model Clause/Language

The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specified clause or language. FTA proposes the following language.

Fly America Requirements

The Contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 40118 (the "Fly America" Act) in accordance with the General Services Administration's regulations at 41 CFR Part 301-10, which provide that recipients and subrecipients of Federal funds and their contractors are required to use U.S. Flag air carriers for U.S Government-financed international air travel and transportation of their personal effects or property, to the extent such service is available, unless travel by foreign air carrier is a matter of necessity, as defined by the Fly America Act. The Contractor shall submit, if a foreign air carrier was used, an appropriate certification or memorandum adequately explaining why service by a U.S. flag air carrier was not available or why it was necessary to use a foreign air carrier and shall, in any event, provide a certificate of compliance with the Fly America requirements. The Contractor agrees to include the requirements of this section in all subcontracts that may involve international air transportation.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve A&E for New Buildings & Additions

Seismic Safety

5. SEISMIC SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
42 U.S.C. 7701 et seq. 49
CFR Part 41

Applicability to Contracts

The Seismic Safety requirements apply only to contracts for the construction of new buildings or additions to existing buildings.

Flow Down

The Seismic Safety requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors to assure compliance,

with the applicable building standards for Seismic Safety, including the work performed by all subcontractors.

Model Clauses/Language

The regulations do not provide suggested language for third-party contract clauses. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Seismic Safety - The contractor agrees that any new building or addition to an existing building will be designed and constructed in accordance with the standards for Seismic Safety required in Department of Transportation Seismic Safety Regulations 49 CFR Part 41 and will certify to compliance to the extent required by the regulation. The contractor also agrees to ensure that all work performed under this contract including work performed by a subcontractor is in compliance with the standards required by the Seismic Safety Regulations and the certification of compliance issued on the project.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve Research & Development

Patent Rights

26. PATENT AND RIGHTS IN DATA

37 CFR Part 401
49 CFR Parts 18 and 19

Applicability to Contracts

Patent and rights in data requirements for federally assisted projects ONLY apply to research projects in which FTA finances the purpose of the grant is to finance the development of a product or information. These patent and data rights requirements do not apply to capital projects or operating projects, even though a small portion of the sales price may cover the cost of product development or writing the user's manual.

Flow Down

The Patent and Rights in Data requirements apply to all contractors and their contracts at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

The FTA patent clause is substantially similar to the text of 49 C.F.R. Part 19, Appendix A, Section 5, but the rights in data clause reflects FTA objectives. For patent rights, FTA is governed by Federal law and regulation. For data rights, the text on copyrights is insufficient to meet FTA's purposes for awarding research grants. This model clause, with larger rights as a standard, is proposed with the understanding that this standard could be modified to FTA's needs.

CONTRACTS INVOLVING EXPERIMENTAL, DEVELOPMENTAL, OR RESEARCH WORK.

A. **Rights in Data** - This following requirements apply to each contract involving experimental, developmental or research work:

(1) The term "subject data" used in this clause means recorded information, whether or not copyrighted, that is delivered or specified to be delivered under the contract. The term includes graphic or pictorial delineation in media such as drawings or photographs; text in specifications or related performance or design-type documents; machine forms such as punched cards, magnetic tape, or computer memory printouts; and information retained in computer memory. Examples include, but are not limited to: computer software, engineering drawings and associated lists, specifications, standards, process sheets, manuals, technical reports, catalog item identifications, and related information. The term "subject data" does not include financial reports, cost analyses, and similar information incidental to contract administration.

(2) The following restrictions apply to all subject data first produced in the performance of the contract to which this Attachment has been added:

(a) Except for its own internal use, the Purchaser or Contractor may not publish or reproduce subject data in whole or in part, or in any manner or form, nor may the Purchaser or Contractor authorize others to do so, without the written consent of the Federal Government, until such time as the Federal Government may have either released or approved the release of such data to the public; this restriction on publication, however, does not apply to any contract with an academic institution.

(b) In accordance with 49 C.F.R. § 18.34 and 49 C.F.R. § 19.36, the Federal Government reserves a royalty-free, non-exclusive and irrevocable license to reproduce, publish, or otherwise use, and to authorize others to use, for "Federal Government purposes," any subject data or copyright described in subsections (2)(b)1 and (2)(b)2 of this clause below. As used in the previous sentence, "for Federal Government purposes," means use only for the direct purposes of the Federal Government. Without the copyright owner's consent, the Federal Government may not extend its Federal license to any other party.

1. Any subject data developed under that contract, whether or not a copyright has been obtained; and

2. Any rights of copyright purchased by the Purchaser or Contractor using Federal assistance in whole or in part provided by FTA.

(c) When FTA awards Federal assistance for experimental, developmental, or research work, it is FTA's general intention to increase transportation knowledge available to the public, rather than to restrict the benefits resulting from the work to participants in that work. Therefore, unless FTA determines otherwise, the Purchaser and the Contractor performing experimental, developmental, or research work required by the underlying contract to which this Attachment is added agrees to permit FTA to make available to the public, either FTA's license in the copyright to any subject data developed in the course of that contract, or a copy of the subject data first produced under the contract for which a copyright has not been obtained. If the experimental, developmental, or research work, which is the subject of the underlying contract, is not completed for any reason whatsoever, all data developed under that contract shall become subject data as defined in subsection (a) of this clause and shall be delivered as the Federal Government may direct. This subsection (c) , however, does not apply to adaptations of automatic data processing equipment or programs for the Purchaser or Contractor's use whose costs are financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA for transportation capital projects.

(d) Unless prohibited by state law, upon request by the Federal Government, the Purchaser and the Contractor agree to indemnify, save, and hold harmless the Federal Government, its officers, agents, and employees acting within the scope of their official duties against any liability, including costs and expenses, resulting from any willful or intentional violation by the Purchaser or Contractor of proprietary rights, copyrights, or right of privacy, arising out of the publication, translation, reproduction, delivery, use, or disposition of any data furnished under that contract. Neither the Purchaser nor the Contractor shall be required to indemnify the Federal Government for any such liability arising out of the wrongful act of any employee, official, or agents of the Federal Government.
(e) Nothing contained in this clause on rights in data shall imply a license to the Federal Government under any patent or be construed as affecting the scope of any license or other right otherwise granted to the Federal Government under any patent.

(f) Data developed by the Purchaser or Contractor and financed entirely without using Federal assistance provided by the Federal Government that has been incorporated into work required by the underlying contract to which this Attachment has been added is exempt from the requirements of subsections (b), (c), and (d) of this clause, provided that the Purchaser or Contractor identifies that data in writing at the time of delivery of the contract work.

(g) Unless FTA determines otherwise, the Contractor agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract for experimental, developmental, or research work financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

(3) Unless the Federal Government later makes a contrary determination in writing, irrespective of the Contractor's status (i.e., a large business, small business, state government or state instrumentality, local government, nonprofit organization, institution of higher education, individual, etc.), the Purchaser and the Contractor agree to take the necessary actions to provide, through FTA, those rights in that invention due the Federal Government as described in

U.S. Department of Commerce regulations, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements," 37 C.F.R. Part 401.

(4) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract for experimental, developmental, or research work financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

B. **Patent Rights** - The following requirements apply to each contract involving experimental, developmental, or research work:

(1) General - If any invention, improvement, or discovery is conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under the contract to which this Attachment has been added, and that invention, improvement, or discovery is patentable under the laws of the United States of America or any foreign country, the Purchaser and Contractor agree to take actions necessary to provide immediate notice and a detailed report to the party at a higher tier until FTA is ultimately notified.

(2) Unless the Federal Government later makes a contrary determination in writing, irrespective of the Contractor's status (a large business, small business, state government or state instrumentality, local government, nonprofit organization, institution of higher education, individual), the Purchaser and the Contractor agree to take the necessary actions to provide, through FTA, those rights in that invention due the Federal Government as described in U.S. Department of Commerce regulations, "Rights to

Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements," 37 C.F.R. Part 401. (3) The Contractor also agrees to include the requirements of this clause in each subcontract for experimental, developmental, or research work financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve Architectural & Engineering
ADA Access
FTA is currently working on a contract clause to incorporate appropriate ADA requirements, but it is not yet available.

Applicable Federal Clauses **Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000**	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES	
20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS **31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001** **49 U.S.C. 5307**	
11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS **49 U.S.C. 5325** **18 CFR 18.36 (i)** **49 CFR 633.17**	
12. FEDERAL CHANGES **49 CFR Part 18**	
24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS **29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000** **42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112** **42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332** **29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.**	
28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) **49 CFR Part 26**	
30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 18**	
Does procurement exhibit Geographic Preference? **For reference purposes: 49 CFR 18.36 (c)(1)(2) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 2.a (4)(g)**	
Has proposed contracted entity been verified that they are not excluded or disqualified through the Excluded Parties List System (EPLS)? **For reference purposes: https://www.sam.gov/portal/public/SAM/**	
Has an adequate number of sources been solicited?	
Has applicable ADA language been included?	
Has an adequate cost analysis been performed? **For reference purposes: 49 CFR 18.36 (f)(1) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 6**	
Additional Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
21. TERMINATION **49 U.S.C. Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	

Additional Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000	Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package
22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)	
Additional Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION **49 CFR Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
10. LOBBYING **31 U.S.C. 1352** **49 CFR Part 19** **49 CFR Part 20**	
14. CLEAN AIR **42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq** **40 CFR 15.61** **49 CFR Part 18**	
7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS **33 U.S.C. 1251**	
Additional Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
2. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 40118** **41 CFR Part 301-10**	
Additional Federal Clauses when procurements involve A&E for New Buildings & Additions	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
5. SEISMIC SAFETY REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 7701 et seq. 49 CFR Part 41**	
Additional Federal Clauses when procurements involve Research & Development	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
26. PATENT AND RIGHTS IN DATA **37 CFR Part 401** **49 CFR Parts 18 and 19**	
Additional Federal Clauses when procurements involve Architectural & Engineering	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
Has applicable ADA language been included?	

Approval:

Subrecipient_____Date:_____

Approval:
Florida Department of Transportation

_____Date:_____

When procuring Operations/Management/Subrecipients services the following steps should be taken:

3. Determine the method of procurement (i.e., Micro Purchase, Small Purchase, RFP, Sealed Bid, etc.).
4. Apply applicable Federal clauses based on method of procurement (cost of purchase).

Operations/Management/Subrecipients	
Methods of Procurement	Micro Purchases: Procurements less than $2,500 Small Purchases: Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000 Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals): Procurements greater than $35,000
Applicable Federal Clauses **Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000**	
No Government Obligation to Third Parties	
19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES	
Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts	
20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS **31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001** **49 U.S.C. 5307**	
Access to Records	
11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS **49 U.S.C. 5325** **18 CFR 18.36 (i)** **49 CFR 633.17**	
Federal Changes	
12. FEDERAL CHANGES **49 CFR Part 18**	
Civil Rights Requirements – Mandatory Language	
24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS **29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000** **42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112** **42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332** **29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.**	
Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) – contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs	
28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) **49 CFR Part 26**	
Incorporation of FTA terms (Per FTA C4220.1F) – Mandatory Language	
30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
Energy Conservation	
6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 18**	

Charter Service Operations
3. CHARTER BUS REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(d)** **49 CFR Part 604**
School Bus Operations
3. SCHOOL BUS REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(F)** **49 CFR Part 605**
ADA Access
FTA is currently working on a contract clause to incorporate appropriate ADA requirements, but it is not yet available.
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000
Termination Provisions
21. TERMINATION **49 U.S.C. Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000
Suspension and Debarment
22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000
Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation
25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION **49 CFR Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**
Lobbying – Mandatory Language
10. LOBBYING **31 U.S.C. 1352** **49 CFR Part 19** **49 CFR Part 20**
Clean Air
14. CLEAN AIR **42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq** **40 CFR 15.61** **49 CFR Part 18**
Clean Water
7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS **33 U.S.C. 1251**
Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act
17. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air
Fly America
3. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 40118** **41 CFR Part 301-10**
Applicable Federal Clauses – Transit Operations funded with Section 5307, 5309, 5311, or 5316 funds
Transit Employee Protective Arrangements
27. TRANSIT EMPLOYEE PROTECTIVE AGREEMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 5310, § 5311, and § 5333** **29 CFR Part 215**

Drug and Alcohol Testing
31. DRUG AND ALCOHOL TESTING **49 U.S.C. §5331** **49 CFR Parts 653 and 654**
Applicable Federal Clauses – Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year
Recycled Products
15. RECYCLED PRODUCTS **42 U.S.C. 6962** **40 CFR Part 247** **Executive Order 12873**

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

Below are the applicable clauses that were listed above with suggested or mandatory language. Those clauses with mandatory language are noted.

Operations/Management/Subrecipients	
Methods of Procurement	Micro Purchase: Procurements less than $2,500 Small Purchases: Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000 Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals): Procurements greater than $35,000

Applicable Federal Clauses

Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000

No Government Obligation to Third Parties

19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES

Applicability to Contracts
Applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
Not required by statute or regulation for either primary contractors or subcontractors, this concept should flow down to all levels to clarify, to all parties to the contract, that the Federal Government does not have contractual liability to third parties, absent specific written consent.
Model Clause/Language
While no specific language is required, FTA has developed the following language.

No Obligation by the Federal Government.

(1) The Purchaser and Contractor acknowledge and agree that, notwithstanding any concurrence by the Federal Government in or approval of the solicitation or award of the underlying contract, absent the express written consent by the Federal Government, the Federal Government is not a party to this contract and shall not be subject to any obligations or liabilities to the Purchaser, Contractor, or any other party (whether or not a party to that contract) pertaining to any matter resulting from the underlying contract.

(2) The Contractor agrees to include the above clause in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clause shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to its provisions.

Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts

20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS
31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.
49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001
49 U.S.C. 5307

Applicability to Contracts
These requirements are applicable to all contracts.
Flow Dow
These requirements flow down to contractors and subcontractors who make, present, or submit covered claims and statements.
Model Clause/Language
These requirements have no specified language, so FTA proffers the following language.

Program Fraud and False or Fraudulent Statements or Related Acts.

(1) The Contractor acknowledges that the provisions of the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986, as amended, 31 U.S.C. § 3801 et seq. and U.S. DOT regulations, "Program Fraud Civil Remedies," 49 C.F.R. Part 31, apply to its actions pertaining to this Project. Upon execution of the underlying contract, the Contractor certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of any statement it has made, it makes, it may make, or causes to be made, pertaining to the underlying contract or the FTA assisted project for which this contract work is being performed. In addition to other penalties that may be applicable, the Contractor further acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification, the Federal Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of the Program Fraud Civil
Remedies Act of 1986 on the Contractor to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(2) The Contractor also acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification to the Federal Government under a contract connected with a project that is financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance originally awarded by FTA under the authority of 49 U.S.C. § 5307, the Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of 18 U.S.C. § 1001 and 49 U.S.C. § 5307(n)(1) on the Contractor, to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(3) The Contractor agrees to include the above two clauses in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clauses shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to the provisions

Access to Records

11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS
49 U.S.C. 5325
18 CFR 18.36 (i)
49 CFR 633.17

Applicability to Contracts
Reference Chart "Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Type of Contracts"
Flow Down
FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.
Model Clause/Language
The specified language is not mandated by the statutes or regulations referenced, but the language provided paraphrases the statutory or regulatory language.

Access to Records - The following access to records requirements apply to this Contract:

1. Where the Purchaser is not a State but a local government and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 18.36(i), the Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their authorized representatives access to any books, documents, papers and records of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions. Contractor also agrees, pursuant to 49 C.F.R. 633.17 to provide the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives including any PMO Contractor access to Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311.

2. Where the Purchaser is a State and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 633.17, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives, including any PMO Contractor, access to the Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311. By definition, a major capital project excludes contracts of less than the simplified acquisition threshold currently set at $100,000.

3. Where the Purchaser enters into a negotiated contract for other than a small purchase or under the simplified acquisition threshold and is an institution of higher education, a hospital or other non-profit organization and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 19.48, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their duly authorized representatives with access to any books, documents,

papers and record of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions.

4. Where any Purchaser which is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 U.S.C. 5325(a) enters into a contract for a capital project or improvement (defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1) through other than competitive bidding, the Contractor shall make available records related to the contract to the Purchaser, the Secretary of Transportation and the Comptroller General or any authorized officer or employee of any of them for the purposes of conducting an audit and inspection.

5. The Contractor agrees to permit any of the foregoing parties to reproduce by any means whatsoever or to copy excerpts and transcriptions as reasonably needed.

6. The Contractor agrees to maintain all books, records, accounts and reports required under this contract for a period of not less than three years after the date of termination or expiration of this contract, except in the event of litigation or settlement of claims arising from the performance of this contract, in which case Contractor agrees to maintain same until the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have disposed of all such litigation, appeals, claims or exceptions related thereto. Reference 49 CFR 18.39(i)(11).

7. FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.

Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Types of Contract

Contract Characteristics		Operational Service Contract	Turnkey	Construction	Architectural Engineering	Acquisition of Rolling Stock	Professional Services
I State Grantees							
a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000)		None	Those imposed on state pass thru to Contractor	None	None	None	None
b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		None unless[1] non-competitive award		Yes, if non-competitive award or if funded thru[2] 5307/5309/5311	None unless non-competitive award	None unless non-competitive award	None unless non-competitive award
II Non State Grantees							
a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000)		Yes[3]	Those imposed on non-state Grantee pass thru to Contractor	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		Yes[3]		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Sources of Authority:
[1] 49 USC 5325 (a)
[2] 49 CFR 633.17
[3] 18 CFR 18.36 (i)

Federal Changes

12. FEDERAL CHANGES
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Federal Changes requirement applies to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Federal Changes requirement flows down appropriately to each applicable changed requirement.
Model Clause/Language
No specific language is mandated. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Federal Changes - Contractor shall at all times comply with all applicable FTA regulations, policies, procedures and directives, including without limitation those listed directly or by reference in the Master Agreement between Purchaser and FTA, as they may be amended or promulgated from time to time during the term of this contract. Contractor's failure to so comply shall constitute a material breach of this contract.

Civil Rights Requirements – Mandatory Language

24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS
29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000
42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112
42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332
29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.

Applicability to Contracts
The Civil Rights Requirements apply to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Civil Rights requirements flow down to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier.
Model Clause/Language
The following clause was predicated on language contained at 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, but FTA has shortened the lengthy text.

Civil Rights - The following requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(1) Nondiscrimination - In accordance with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000d, section 303 of the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 6102, section 202 of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, 42 U.S.C. § 12132, and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees that it will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, age, or disability. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with applicable Federal implementing regulations and other implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(2) Equal Employment Opportunity - The following equal employment opportunity requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(a) Race, Color, Creed, National Origin, Sex - In accordance with Title VII of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000e, and Federal transit laws at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable equal employment opportunity requirements of U.S. Department of Labor (U.S. DOL) regulations, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor," 41 C.F.R. Parts 60 et seq., (which implement Executive Order No. 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order No. 11375, "Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," 42 U.S.C. § 2000e note), and with any applicable Federal statutes, executive orders, regulations, and Federal policies that may in the future affect construction activities undertaken in the course of the Project. The Contractor agrees to take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, color, creed, national origin, sex, or age. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion or transfer, recruitment or recruitment advertising, layoff or termination; rates of pay or other

forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(b) Age - In accordance with section 4 of the Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967, as amended, 29 U.S.C. § § 623 and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to refrain from discrimination against present and prospective employees for reason of age. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(c) Disabilities - In accordance with section 102 of the Americans with Disabilities Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 12112, the Contractor agrees that it will comply with the requirements of U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, "Regulations to Implement the Equal Employment Provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act," 29 C.F.R. Part 1630, pertaining to employment of persons with disabilities. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(3) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA, modified only if necessary to identify the affected parties.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) – contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs

28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE)
49 CFR Part 26

Background and Applicability
The newest version on the Department of Transportation's Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) program became effective July 16, 2003. The rule provides guidance to grantees on the use of overall and contract goals, requirement to include DBE provisions in subcontracts, evaluating DBE participation where specific contract goals have been set, reporting requirements, and replacement of DBE subcontractors. Additionally, the DBE program dictates payment terms and conditions (including limitations on retainage) applicable to all subcontractors regardless of whether they are DBE firms or not.

The DBE program applies to all DOT-assisted contracting activities. A formal clause such as that below must be included in all contracts above the micro-purchase level. The requirements of clause subsection b flow down to subcontracts.

A substantial change to the payment provisions in this newest version of Part 26 concerns retainage (*see* section 26.29). Grantee choices concerning retainage should be reflected in the language choices in clause subsection d.

Clause Language
The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the payment terms and conditions applicable to all subcontractors based in Part 26 as well as those related only to DBE subcontractors. The suggested language allows for the options available to grantees concerning retainage, specific contract goals, and evaluation of DBE subcontracting participation when specific contract goals have been established.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises

a. This contract is subject to the requirements of Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 26, *Participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises in Department of Transportation Financial Assistance Programs.* The national goal for participation of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) is 10%. The agency's overall goal for DBE participation is **__ %.** A separate contract goal **[of __ % DBE participation has] [has not]** been established for this procurement.

b. The contractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of this DOT-assisted contract. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as **{insert agency name}** deems appropriate. Each subcontract the contractor signs with a subcontractor must include the assurance in this paragraph (*see* 49 CFR 26.13(b)).

c. ***{If a separate contract goal has been established, use the following}*** Bidders/offerors are required to document sufficient DBE participation to meet these goals or, alternatively, document adequate good faith efforts to do so, as provided for in 49 CFR 26.53. Award of this contract is conditioned on submission of the following **[concurrent with and accompanying sealed bid] [concurrent with and accompanying an initial proposal] [prior to award]**:

1. The names and addresses of DBE firms that will participate in this contract;

2. A description of the work each DBE will perform;

3. The dollar amount of the participation of each DBE firm participating;

4. Written documentation of the bidder/offeror's commitment to use a DBE subcontractor whose participation it submits to meet the contract goal;

5. Written confirmation from the DBE that it is participating in the contract as provided in the prime contractor's commitment; and

6. If the contract goal is not met, evidence of good faith efforts to do so.

[Bidders][Offerors] must present the information required above **[as a matter of responsiveness] [with initial proposals] [prior to contract award]** (*see* 49 CFR 26.53(3)).

{If no separate contract goal has been established, use the following} The successful bidder/offeror will be required to report its DBE participation obtained through race-neutral means throughout the period of performance.

d. The contractor is required to pay its subcontractors performing work related to this contract for satisfactory performance of that work no later than 30 days after the contractor's receipt of payment for that work from the **{insert agency name}**. In addition, **[the contractor may not hold retainage from its subcontractors.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after the subcontractor's work related to this contract is satisfactorily completed.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after incremental acceptance of the subcontractor's work by the {insert agency name} and contractor's receipt of the partial retainage payment related to the subcontractor's work.]**

e. The contractor must promptly notify **{insert agency name}**, whenever a DBE subcontractor performing work related to this contract is terminated or fails to complete its work, and must make good faith efforts to engage another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work. The contractor may not terminate any DBE subcontractor and perform that work through its own forces or those of an affiliate without prior written consent of **{insert agency name}**.

Incorporation of FTA terms (Per FTA C4220.1F) – Mandatory Language

30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
The incorporation of FTA terms applies to all contracts.
Flow Down
The incorporation of FTA terms has unlimited flow down.
Model Clause/Language
FTA has developed the following incorporation of terms language**:**

Incorporation of Federal Transit Administration (FTA) Terms - The preceding provisions include, in part, certain Standard Terms and Conditions required by DOT, whether or not expressly set forth in the preceding contract provisions. All contractual provisions required by DOT, as set forth in FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions, are hereby incorporated by reference. Anything to the contrary herein notwithstanding, all FTA mandated terms shall be deemed to control in the event of a conflict with other provisions contained in this Agreement. The Contractor shall not perform any act, fail to perform any act, or refuse to comply with any (name of grantee) requests which would cause (name of grantee) to be in violation of the FTA terms and conditions.

Energy Conservation

6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS
42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Energy Conservation requirements are applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Energy Conservation requirements extend to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier and subrecipients and

their subagreements at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

No specific clause is recommended in the regulations because the Energy Conservation requirements are so dependent on the state energy conservation plan. The following language has been developed by FTA:

Energy Conservation - The contractor agrees to comply with mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act.

Charter Service Operations

3. CHARTER BUS REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323(d)
49 CFR Part 604

Applicability to Contracts

The Charter Bus requirements apply to the following type of contract: Operational Service Contracts.

Flow Down Requirements

The Charter Bus requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier service contractors.

Model Clause/Language

The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specific clause or language. The following clause has been developed by FTA.

Charter Service Operations - The contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 5323(d) and 49 CFR Part 604, which provides that recipients and subrecipients of FTA assistance are prohibited from providing charter service using federally funded equipment or facilities if there is at least one private charter operator willing and able to provide the service, except under one of the exceptions at 49 CFR 604.9. Any charter service provided under one of the exceptions must be "incidental," i.e., it must not interfere with or detract from the provision of mass transportation.

School Bus Operations

3. SCHOOL BUS REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323(F)
49 CFR Part 605

Applicability to Contracts

The School Bus requirements apply to the following type of contract: Operational Service Contracts.

Flow Down Requirements

The School Bus requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier service contractors.

Model Clause/Language

The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specific clause or language. The following clause has been developed by FTA.

School Bus Operations - Pursuant to 69 U.S.C. 5323(f) and 49 CFR Part 605, recipients and subrecipients of FTA assistance may not engage in school bus operations exclusively for the transportation of students and school personnel in competition with private school bus operators unless qualified under specified exemptions. When operating exclusive school bus service under an allowable exemption, recipients and subrecipients may not use federally funded equipment, vehicles, or facilities.

ADA Access

FTA is currently working on a contract clause to incorporate appropriate ADA requirements, but it is not yet available.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000

Termination Provisions

21. TERMINATION
49 U.S.C. Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts

All contracts (with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education,) in excess of $10,000 shall contain suitable provisions for termination by the grantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for

settlement. (For contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education the threshold is $100,000.) In addition, such contracts shall describe conditions under which the contract may be terminated for default as well as conditions where the contract may be terminated because of circumstances beyond the control of the contractor.

Flow Down

The termination requirements flow down to all contracts in excess of $10,000, with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher learning.

Model Clause/Language

FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such clauses. The following are suggestions of clauses to be used in different types of contracts:

a. Termination for Convenience (General Provision) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, at any time by written notice to the Contractor when it is in the Government's best interest. The Contractor shall be paid its costs, including contract close-out costs, and profit on work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to (Recipient) to be paid the Contractor. If the Contractor has any property in its possession belonging to the (Recipient), the Contractor will account for the same, and dispose of it in the manner the (Recipient) directs.

b. Termination for Default [Breach or Cause] (General Provision) If the Contractor does not deliver supplies in accordance with the contract delivery schedule, or, if the contract is for services, the Contractor fails to perform in the manner called for in the contract, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of the contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. Termination shall be effected by serving a notice of termination on the contractor setting forth the manner in which the Contractor is in default. The contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in the contract.
If it is later determined by the (Recipient) that the Contractor had an excusable reason for not performing, such as a strike, fire, or flood, events which are not the fault of or are beyond the control of the Contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new delivery of performance schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

c. Opportunity to Cure (General Provision) The (Recipient) in its sole discretion may, in the case of a termination for breach or default, allow the Contractor [an appropriately short period of time] in which to cure the defect. In such case, the notice of termination will state the time period in which cure is permitted and other appropriate conditions

If Contractor fails to remedy to (Recipient)'s satisfaction the breach or default of any of the terms, covenants, or conditions of this Contract within [ten (10) days] after receipt by Contractor of written notice from (Recipient) setting forth the nature of said breach or default, (Recipient) shall have the right to terminate the Contract without any further obligation to Contractor. Any such termination for default shall not in any way operate to preclude (Recipient) from also pursuing all available remedies against Contractor and its sureties for said breach or default.

d. Waiver of Remedies for any Breach In the event that (Recipient) elects to waive its remedies for any breach by Contractor of any covenant, term or condition of this Contract, such waiver by (Recipient) shall not limit (Recipient)'s remedies for any succeeding breach of that or of any other term, covenant, or condition of this Contract.

e. Termination for Convenience (Professional or Transit Service Contracts) The (Recipient), by written notice, may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, when it is in the Government's interest. If this contract is terminated, the Recipient shall be liable only for payment under the payment provisions of this contract for services rendered before the effective date of termination.

f. Termination for Default (Supplies and Service) If the Contractor fails to deliver supplies or to perform the services within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner or performance set forth in this contract.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

g. Termination for Default (Transportation Services) If the Contractor fails to pick up the commodities or to perform the services, including delivery services, within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by

delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in this contract.

If this contract is terminated while the Contractor has possession of Recipient goods, the Contractor shall, upon direction of the (Recipient), protect and preserve the goods until surrendered to the Recipient or its agent. The Contractor and (Recipient) shall agree on payment for the preservation and protection of goods. Failure to agree on an amount will be resolved under the Dispute clause.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the (Recipient).

h. Termination for Default (Construction) If the Contractor refuses or fails to prosecute the work or any separable part, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the time specified in this contract or any extension or fails to complete the work within this time, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. In this event, the Recipient may take over the work and compete it by contract or otherwise, and may take possession of and use any materials, appliances, and plant on the work site necessary for completing the work. The Contractor and its sureties shall be liable for any damage to the Recipient resulting from the Contractor's refusal or failure to complete the work within specified time, whether or not the Contractor's right to proceed with the work is terminated. This liability includes any increased costs incurred by the Recipient in completing the work.

The Contractor's right to proceed shall not be terminated nor the Contractor charged with damages under this clause if-

1. the delay in completing the work arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor. Examples of such causes include: acts of God, acts of the Recipient, acts of another Contractor in the performance of a contract with the Recipient, epidemics, quarantine restrictions, strikes, freight embargoes; and

2. the contractor, within [10] days from the beginning of any delay, notifies the (Recipient) in writing of the causes of delay. If in the judgment of the (Recipient), the delay is excusable, the time for completing the work shall be extended. The judgment of the (Recipient) shall be final and conclusive on the parties, but subject to appeal under the Disputes clauses.

If, after termination of the Contractor's right to proceed, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, or that the delay was excusable, the rights and obligations of the parties will be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

i. Termination for Convenience or Default (Architect and Engineering) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract in whole or in part, for the Recipient's convenience or because of the failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature, extent, and effective date of the termination. Upon receipt of the notice, the Contractor shall (1) immediately discontinue all services affected (unless the notice directs otherwise), and (2) deliver to the Contracting Officer all data, drawings, specifications, reports, estimates, summaries, and other information and materials accumulated in performing this contract, whether completed or in process.

If the termination is for the convenience of the Recipient, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment in the contract price but shall allow no anticipated profit on unperformed services.

If the termination is for failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations, the Recipient may complete the work by contact or otherwise and the Contractor shall be liable for any additional cost incurred by the Recipient.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

j. Termination for Convenience of Default (Cost-Type Contracts) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, or any portion of it, by serving a notice or termination on the Contractor. The notice shall state whether the termination is for convenience of the (Recipient) or for the default of the Contractor. If the termination is for default, the notice shall state the manner in which the contractor has failed to perform the requirements of the contract. The Contractor shall account for any property in its possession

paid for from funds received from the (Recipient), or property supplied to the Contractor by the (Recipient). If the termination is for default, the (Recipient) may fix the fee, if the contract provides for a fee, to be paid the contractor in proportion to the value, if any, of work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to the (Recipient) and the parties shall negotiate the termination settlement to be paid the Contractor.

If the termination is for the convenience of the (Recipient), the Contractor shall be paid its contract close-out costs, and a fee, if the contract provided for payment of a fee, in proportion to the work performed up to the time of termination.

If, after serving a notice of termination for default, the (Recipient) determines that the Contractor has an excusable reason for not performing, such as strike, fire, flood, events which are not the fault of and are beyond the control of the contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new work schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000

Suspension and Debarment

22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)

Background and Applicability

In conjunction with the Office of Management and Budget and other affected Federal agencies, DOT published an update to 49 CFR Part 29 on November 26, 2003. This government-wide regulation implements Executive Order 12549, *Debarment and Suspension*, Executive Order 12689, *Debarment and Suspension*, and 31 U.S.C. 6101 note (Section 2455, Public Law 103-355, 108 Stat. 3327).

The provisions of Part 29 apply to all grantee contracts and subcontracts at any level expected to equal or exceed $25,000 as well as any contract or subcontract (at any level) for Federally required auditing services. 49 CFR 29.220(b). This represents a change from prior practice in that the dollar threshold for application of these rules has been lowered from $100,000 to $25,000. These are contracts and subcontracts referred to in the regulation as "covered transactions."

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors (at any level) that enter into covered transactions are required to verify that the entity (as well as its principals and affiliates) they propose to contract or subcontract with is not excluded or disqualified. They do this by (a) Checking the Excluded Parties List System, (b) Collecting a certification from that person, or (c) Adding a clause or condition to the contract or subcontract. This represents a change from prior practice in that certification is still acceptable but is no longer required. 49 CFR 29.300.

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors who enter into covered transactions also must require the entities they contract with to comply with 49 CFR 29, subpart C and include this requirement in their own subsequent covered transactions (i.e., the requirement flows down to subcontracts at all levels).

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the optional method of verifying that contractors are not excluded or disqualified by certification.

Suspension and Debarment

> This contract is a covered transaction for purposes of 49 CFR Part 29. As such, the contractor is required to verify that none of the contractor, its principals, as defined at 49 CFR 29.995, or affiliates, as defined at 49 CFR 29.905, are excluded or disqualified as defined at 49 CFR 29.940 and 29.945.
>
> The contractor is required to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C and must include the requirement to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C in any lower tier covered transaction it enters into.
> By signing and submitting its bid or proposal, the bidder or proposer certifies as follows:

The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact relied upon by **{insert agency name}**. If it is later determined that the bidder or proposer knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to remedies available to **{insert agency name}**, the Federal Government may pursue available remedies, including but not limited to suspension and/or debarment. The bidder or proposer agrees to comply with the requirements of 49 CFR 29, Subpart C while this offer is valid and throughout the period of any contract that may arise from this offer. The bidder or proposer further agrees to include a provision requiring such compliance in its

lower tier covered transactions.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000

Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation

25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION
49 CFR Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
All contracts in excess of $100,000 shall contain provisions or conditions which will allow for administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. This may
include provisions for bonding, penalties for late or inadequate performance, retained earnings, liquidated damages or other appropriate measures.
Flow Down
The Breaches and Dispute Resolutions requirements flow down to all tiers.
Model Clauses/Language
FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such provisions. What provisions are developed will depend on the circumstances and the type of contract. Recipients should consult legal counsel in developing appropriate clauses. The following clauses are examples of provisions from various FTA third party contracts.

Disputes - Disputes arising in the performance of this Contract which are not resolved by agreement of the parties shall be decided in writing by the authorized representative of (Recipient)'s [title of employee]. This decision shall be final and conclusive unless within [ten (10)] days from the date of receipt of its copy, the Contractor mails or otherwise furnishes a written appeal to the [title of employee]. In connection with any such appeal, the Contractor shall be afforded an opportunity to be heard and to offer evidence in support of its position. The decision of the [title of employee] shall be binding upon the Contractor and the Contractor shall abide be the decision.

Performance During Dispute - Unless otherwise directed by (Recipient), Contractor shall continue performance under this Contract while matters in dispute are being resolved.

Claims for Damages - Should either party to the Contract suffer injury or damage to person or property because of any act or omission of the party or of any of his employees, agents or others for whose acts he is legally liable, a claim for damages therefor shall be made in writing to such other party within a reasonable time after the first observance of such injury of damage.

Remedies - Unless this contract provides otherwise, all claims, counterclaims, disputes and other matters in question between the (Recipient) and the Contractor arising out of or relating to this agreement or its breach will be decided by arbitration if the parties mutually agree, or in a court of competent jurisdiction within the State in which the (Recipient) is located.

Rights and Remedies - The duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and the rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of any duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law. No action or failure to act by the (Recipient), (Architect) or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of any right or duty afforded any of them under the Contract, nor shall any such action or failure to act constitute an approval of or acquiescence in any breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.

Lobbying –Mandatory Language

10. LOBBYING
31 U.S.C. 1352
49 CFR Part 19
49 CFR Part 20

Applicability to Contracts
The Lobbying requirements apply to Construction/Architectural and Engineering/Acquisition of Rolling Stock/Professional Service Contract/Operational Service Contract/Turnkey contracts.
Flow Down
The Lobbying requirements mandate the maximum flow down, pursuant to Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. § 1352(b)(5)

and 49 C.F.R. Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7.

Mandatory Clause/Language

Clause and specific language therein are mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Clause pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, *et seq.*]

- Lobbying Certification and Disclosure of Lobbying Activities for third party contractors are mandated by 31 U.S.C. 1352(b)(5), as amended by Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, and DOT implementing regulation, "New Restrictions on Lobbying," at 49 CFR § 20.110(d)

- Language in Lobbying Certification is mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7, which provides that contractors file the certification required by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Lobbying Certification pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995.

- Use of "Disclosure of Lobbying Activities," Standard Form-LLL set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR Part 20, as amended by "Government wide Guidance For New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96) is mandated by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. 1352, as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, et seq.] - Contractors who apply or bid for an award of $100,000 or more shall file the certification required by 49 CFR part 20, "New Restrictions on Lobbying." Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier shall also disclose the name of any registrant under the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 who has made lobbying contacts on its behalf with non-Federal funds with respect to that Federal contract, grant or award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the recipient.

APPENDIX A, 49 CFR PART 20--CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING

Certification for Contracts, Grants, Loans, and Cooperative Agreements

(To be submitted with each bid or offer exceeding $100,000)

The undersigned [Contractor] certifies, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for making lobbying contacts to an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form--LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions [as amended by "Government wide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96). Note: Language in paragraph (2) herein has been modified in accordance with Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 (P.L. 104-65, to be codified at 2 U.S.C. 1601, *et seq.*)]

(3) The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered

into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31, U.S.C. § 1352 (as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995). Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such failure.

[Note: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. § 1352(c)(1)-(2)(A), any person who makes a prohibited expenditure or fails to file or amend a required certification or disclosure form shall be subject to
a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such expenditure or failure.]

The Contractor, _____, certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of each statement of its certification and disclosure, if any. In addition, the Contractor understands and agrees that the provisions of 31 U.S.C. A 3801, *et seq.,* apply to this certification and disclosure, if any.
_____ Signature of Contractor's Authorized Official

_____ Name and Title of Contractor's Authorized Official

_____ Date

Clean Air

14. CLEAN AIR
42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq
40 CFR 15.61
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Clean Air requirements apply to all contracts exceeding $100,000, including indefinite quantities where the amount is expected to exceed $100,000 in any year.
Flow Down
The Clean Air requirements flow down to all subcontracts which exceed $100,000.
Model Clauses/Language
No specific language is required. FTA has proposed the following language.

Clean Air - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. §§ 7401 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the
Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Clean Water

7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS
33 U.S.C. 1251

Applicability to Contracts
The Clean Water requirements apply to each contract and subcontract which exceeds $100,000.
Flow Down
The Clean Water requirements flow down to FTA recipients and subrecipients at every tier.
Model Clause/Language
While no mandatory clause is contained in the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, the following language developed by FTA contains all the mandatory requirements:

Clean Water - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, 33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act

17. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT

Background and Application

The Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act is codified at 40 USC 3701, *et seq.* The Act applies to grantee contracts and subcontracts "financed at least in part by loans or grants from … the [Federal] Government." 40 USC 3701(b)(1)(B)(iii) and (b)(2), 29 CFR 5.2(h), 49 CFR 18.36(i)(6). Although the original Act required its application in any construction contract over $2,000 or non-construction contract to which the Act applied over $2,500 (and language to that effect is still found in 49 CFR 18.36(i)(6)), the Act no longer applies to any "contract in an amount that is not greater than $100,000." 40 USC 3701(b)(3) (A)(iii).

The Act applies to construction contracts and, in very limited circumstances, non-construction projects that employ "laborers or mechanics on a public work." These non-construction applications do not generally apply to transit procurements because transit procurements (to include rail cars and buses) are deemed "commercial items." 40 USC 3707, 41 USC 403 (12). A grantee that contemplates entering into a contract to procure a developmental or unique item should consult counsel to determine if the Act applies to that procurement and that additional language required by 29 CFR 5.5(c) must be added to the basic clause below.

The clause language is drawn directly from 29 CFR 5.5(b) and any deviation from the model clause below should be coordinated with counsel to ensure the Act's requirements are satisfied.

Clause Language

Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards

(1) **Overtime requirements** - No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.

(2) **Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages** - In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section, in the sum of $10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section.

(3) **Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages** - The (***write in the name of the grantee***) shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (2) of this section.

(4) **Subcontracts** - The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this section.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air

Fly America

4. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. § 40118
41 CFR Part 301-10

Applicability to Contracts

The Fly America requirements apply to the transportation of persons or property, by air, between a place in the U.S. and a place

outside the U.S., or between places outside the U.S., when the FTA will participate in the costs of such air transportation. Transportation on a foreign air carrier is permissible when provided by a foreign air carrier under a code share agreement when the ticket identifies the U.S. air carrier's designator code and flight number. Transportation by a foreign air carrier is also permissible if there is a bilateral or multilateral air transportation agreement to which the U.S. Government and a foreign government are parties and which the Federal DOT has determined meets the requirements of the Fly America Act.

Flow Down Requirements

The Fly America requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors, who are responsible for ensuring that lower tier contractors and subcontractors are in compliance.

Model Clause/Language

The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specified clause or language. FTA proposes the following language.

Fly America Requirements

The Contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 40118 (the "Fly America" Act) in accordance with the General Services Administration's regulations at 41 CFR Part 301-10, which provide that recipients and subrecipients of Federal funds and their contractors are required to use U.S. Flag air carriers for U.S Government-financed international air travel and transportation of their personal effects or property, to the extent such service is available, unless travel by foreign air carrier is a matter of necessity, as defined by the Fly America Act. The Contractor shall submit, if a foreign air carrier was used, an appropriate certification or memorandum adequately explaining why service by a U.S. flag air carrier was not available or why it was necessary to use a foreign air carrier and shall, in any event, provide a certificate of compliance with the Fly America requirements. The Contractor agrees to include the requirements of this section in all subcontracts that may involve international air transportation.

Applicable Federal Clauses – Transit Operations funded with Section 5307, 5309, 5311, or 5316 funds

Transit Employee Protective Arrangements

27. TRANSIT EMPLOYEE PROTECTIVE AGREEMENTS

49 U.S.C. § 5310, § 5311, and § 5333

29 CFR Part 215

Applicability to Contracts

The Transit Employee Protective Provisions apply to each contract for transit operations performed by employees of a Contractor recognized by FTA to be a transit operator. (Because transit operations involve many activities apart from directly driving or operating transit vehicles, FTA determines which activities constitute transit "operations" for purposes of this clause.)

Flow Down

These provisions are applicable to all contracts and subcontracts at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

Since no mandatory language is specified, FTA had developed the following language:

Transit Employee Protective Provisions. (1) The Contractor agrees to the comply with applicable transit employee protective requirements as follows:

(a) General Transit Employee Protective Requirements - To the extent that FTA determines that transit operations are involved, the Contractor agrees to carry out the transit operations work on the underlying contract in compliance with terms and conditions determined by the U.S. Secretary of Labor to be fair and equitable to protect the interests of employees employed under this contract and to meet the employee protective requirements of 49 U.S.C. A 5333(b), and U.S. DOL guidelines at 29 C.F.R. Part 215, and any amendments thereto. These terms and conditions are identified in the letter of certification from the U.S. DOL to FTA applicable to the FTA Recipient's project from which Federal assistance is provided to support work on the underlying contract. The Contractor agrees to carry out that work in compliance with the conditions stated in that U.S. DOL letter. The requirements of this subsection (1), however, do not apply to any contract financed with Federal assistance provided by FTA either for projects for elderly individuals and individuals with disabilities authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5310(a)(2), or for projects for nonurbanized areas authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5311. Alternate provisions for those projects are set forth in subsections (b) and (c) of this clause.

(b) Transit Employee Protective Requirements for Projects Authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5310(a)(2) for Elderly Individuals and Individuals with Disabilities - If the contract involves transit operations financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5310(a)(2), and if the U.S. Secretary of Transportation has determined or determines in the future that the employee protective requirements of 49 U.S.C. § 5333(b) are necessary or appropriate for the state and the public body subrecipient for which work is performed on the underlying contract, the Contractor agrees to carry out the Project in compliance

with the terms and conditions determined by the U.S. Secretary of Labor to meet the requirements of 49 U.S.C. § 5333(b), U.S. DOL guidelines at 29 C.F.R. Part 215, and any amendments thereto. These terms and conditions are identified in the U.S. DOL's letter of certification to FTA, the date of which is set forth Grant Agreement or Cooperative Agreement with the state. The Contractor agrees to perform transit operations in connection with the underlying contract in compliance with the conditions stated in that U.S. DOL letter.

(c) Transit Employee Protective Requirements for Projects Authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5311 in Nonurbanized Areas - If the contract involves transit operations financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5311, the Contractor agrees to comply with the terms and conditions of the Special Warranty for the Nonurbanized Area Program agreed to by the U.S. Secretaries of Transportation and Labor, dated May 31, 1979, and the procedures implemented by U.S. DOL or any revision thereto.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include the any applicable requirements in each subcontract involving transit operations financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Drug and Alcohol Testing

31. DRUG AND ALCOHOL TESTING
49 U.S.C. §5331
49 CFR Parts 653 and 654

Applicability to Contracts
The Drug and Alcohol testing provisions apply to Operational Service Contracts.
Flow Down Requirements
Anyone who performs a safety-sensitive function for the recipient or subrecipient is required to comply with 49 CFR 653 and 654, with certain exceptions for contracts involving maintenance services. Maintenance contractors for non-urbanized area formula program grantees are not subject to the rules. Also, the rules do not apply to maintenance subcontractors.
Model Clause/Language

Introduction
FTA's drug and alcohol rules, 49 CFR 653 and 654, respectively, are unique among the regulations issued by FTA. First, they require recipients to ensure that any entity performing a safety-sensitive function on the recipient's behalf (usually subrecipients and/or contractors) implement a complex drug and alcohol testing program that complies with Parts 653 and 654. Second, the rules condition the receipt of certain kinds of FTA funding on the recipient's compliance with the rules; thus, the recipient is not in compliance with the rules unless every entity that performs a safety-sensitive function on the recipient's behalf is in compliance with the rules. Third, the rules do not specify how a recipient ensures that its subrecipients and/or contractors comply with them.

How a recipient does so depends on several factors, including whether the contractor is covered independently by the drug and alcohol rules of another Department of Transportation operating administration, the nature of the relationship that the recipient has with the contractor, and the financial resources available to the recipient to oversee the contractor's drug and alcohol testing program. In short, there are a variety of ways a recipient can ensure that its subrecipients and contractors comply with the rules.

Therefore, FTA has developed three model contract provisions for recipients to use "as is" or to modify to fit their particular situations.

Explanation of Model Contract Clauses
Under Option 1, the recipient ensures the contractor's compliance with the rules by requiring the contractor to participate in a drug and alcohol program administered by the recipient. The advantages of doing this are obvious: the recipient maintains total control over its compliance with 49 CFR 653 and 654. The disadvantage is that the recipient, which may not directly employ any safety-sensitive employees, has to implement a complex testing program. Therefore, this may be a practical option only for those recipients which have a testing program for their employees, and can add the contractor's safety-sensitive employees to that program.

Under Option 2, the recipient relies on the contractor to implement a drug and alcohol testing program that complies with 49 CFR 653 and 654, but retains the ability to monitor the contractor's testing program; thus, the recipient has less control over its compliance with the drug and alcohol testing rules than it does under option 1. The advantage of this approach is that it places the responsibility for complying with the rules on the entity that is actually performing the safety-sensitive function. Moreover, it reserves to the recipient the power to ensure that the contractor complies with the program. The disadvantage of Option 2 is that without adequate monitoring of the contractor's program, the recipient may find itself out of compliance with the rules.

Under option 3, the recipient specifies some or all of the specific features of a contractor's drug and alcohol compliance program. Thus, it requires the recipient to decide what it wants to do and how it wants to do it. The advantage of this option is that the recipient has more control over the contractor's drug and alcohol testing program, yet it is not actually administering the testing program. The disadvantage is that the recipient has to specify and understand clearly what it wants to do and why.

Drug and Alcohol Testing
Option 1

The contractor agrees to:

(a) participate in (grantee's or recipient's) drug and alcohol program established in compliance with 49 CFR 653 and 654.

Drug and Alcohol Testing
Option 2

The contractor agrees to establish and implement a drug and alcohol testing program that complies with 49 CFR Parts 653 and 654, produce any documentation necessary to establish its compliance with Parts 653 and 654, and permit any authorized representative of the United States Department of Transportation or its operating administrations, the State Oversight Agency of (name of State), or the (insert name of grantee), to inspect the facilities and records associated with the implementation of the drug and alcohol testing program as required under 49 CFR Parts 653 and 654 and review the testing process. The contractor agrees further to certify annually its compliance with Parts 653 and 654 before (insert date) and to submit the Management Information System (MIS) reports before (insert date before March 15) to (insert title and address of person responsible for receiving information). To certify compliance the contractor shall use the "Substance Abuse Certifications" in the "Annual List of Certifications and Assurances for Federal Transit Administration Grants and Cooperative Agreements," which is published annually in the Federal Register.

Drug and Alcohol Testing
Option 3

The contractor agrees to establish and implement a drug and alcohol testing program that complies with 49 CFR Parts 653 and 654, produce any documentation necessary to establish its compliance with Parts 653 and 654, and permit any authorized representative of the United States Department of Transportation or its operating administrations, the State Oversight Agency of (name of State), or the (insert name of grantee), to inspect the facilities and records associated with the implementation of the drug and alcohol testing program as required under 49 CFR Parts 653 and 654 and review the testing process. The contractor agrees further to certify annually its compliance with Parts 653 and 654 before (insert date) and to submit the Management Information System (MIS) reports before (insert date before March 15) to (insert title and address of person responsible for receiving information). To certify compliance the contractor shall use the "Substance Abuse Certifications" in the "Annual List of Certifications and Assurances for Federal Transit Administration Grants and Cooperative Agreements," which is published annually in the Federal Register. The Contractor agrees further to [Select a, b, or c] (a) submit before (insert date or upon request) a copy of the Policy Statement developed to implement its drug and alcohol testing program; OR (b) adopt (insert title of the Policy Statement the recipient wishes the contractor to use) as its policy statement as required under 49 CFR 653 and 654; OR (c) submit for review and approval before (insert date or upon request) a copy of its Policy Statement developed to implement its drug and alcohol testing program. In addition, the contractor agrees to: (to be determined by the recipient, but may address areas such as: the selection of the certified laboratory, substance abuse professional, or Medical Review Officer, or the use of a consortium).

Applicable Federal Clauses – Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year

Recycled Products

15. RECYCLED PRODUCTS
42 U.S.C. 6962
40 CFR Part 247
Executive Order 12873

Applicability to Contracts

The Recycled Products requirements apply to all contracts for items designated by the EPA, when the purchaser or contractor procures $10,000 or more of one of these items during the fiscal year, or has procured $10,000 or more of such items in the previous fiscal year, using Federal funds. New requirements for "recovered materials" will become effective May 1, 1996. These

new regulations apply to all procurement actions involving items designated by the EPA, where the procuring agency purchases $10,000 or more of one of these items in a fiscal year, or when the cost of such items purchased during the previous fiscal year was $10,000.

Flow Down

These requirements flow down to all to all contractor and subcontractor tiers.

Model Clause/Language

No specific clause is mandated, but FTA has developed the following language.

Recovered Materials - The contractor agrees to comply with all the requirements of Section 6002 of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), as amended (42 U.S.C. 6962), including but not limited to the regulatory provisions of 40 CFR Part 247, and Executive Order 12873, as they apply to the procurement of the items designated in Subpart B of 40 CFR Part 247.

Applicable Federal Clauses **Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000**	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES	
20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS **31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001** **49 U.S.C. 5307**	
11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS **49 U.S.C. 5325** **18 CFR 18.36 (i)** **49 CFR 633.17**	
12. FEDERAL CHANGES **49 CFR Part 18**	
24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS **29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000** **42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112** **42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332** **29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.**	
28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) **49 CFR Part 26**	
30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 18**	
3. CHARTER BUS REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(d)** **49 CFR Part 604**	
3. SCHOOL BUS REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(F)** **49 CFR Part 605**	
Does procurement exhibit Geographic Preference? **For reference purposes: 49 CFR 18.36 (c)(1)(2) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 2.a (4)(g)**	
Has proposed contracted entity been verified that they are not excluded or disqualified through the Excluded Parties List System (EPLS)? **For reference purposes: https://www.sam.gov/portal/public/SAM/**	
Has an adequate number of sources been solicited?	
Has applicable ADA language been included?	
Has an adequate cost analysis been performed? **For reference purposes: 49 CFR 18.36 (f)(1) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 6**	

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000	Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package
21. TERMINATION **49 U.S.C. Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION **49 CFR Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
10. LOBBYING **31 U.S.C. 1352** **49 CFR Part 19** **49 CFR Part 20**	
14. CLEAN AIR **42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq** **40 CFR 15.61** **49 CFR Part 18**	
7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS **33 U.S.C. 1251**	
17. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
5. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 40118** **41 CFR Part 301-10**	
Applicable Federal Clauses – Transit Operations funded with Section 5307, 5309, 5311, or 5316 funds	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
27. TRANSIT EMPLOYEE PROTECTIVE AGREEMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 5310, § 5311, and § 5333** **29 CFR Part 215**	
31. DRUG AND ALCOHOL TESTING **49 U.S.C. §5331** **49 CFR Parts 653 and 654**	
Applicable Federal Clauses – Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
15. RECYCLED PRODUCTS **42 U.S.C. 6962** **40 CFR Part 247** **Executive Order 12873**	

Approval:

Subrecipient_____Date:_____

Approval:

Florida Department of Transportation_____Date:_____

When procuring materials and supplies the following steps should be taken:

5. Determine the method of procurement (i.e., Micro Purchase, Small Purchase, RFP, Sealed Bid, etc.).
6. Apply applicable Federal clauses based on method of procurement (cost of purchase).

Rolling Stock	
Methods of Procurement	Micro Purchases: Procurements less than $2,500 Small Purchases: Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000 Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals): Procurements greater than $35,000
Applicable Federal Clauses **Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000**	
No Government Obligation to Third Parties	
19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES	
Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts	
20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS **31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001** **49 U.S.C. 5307**	
Access to Records	
11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS **49 U.S.C. 5325** **18 CFR 18.36 (i)** **49 CFR 633.17**	
Federal Changes	
12. FEDERAL CHANGES **49 CFR Part 18**	
Civil Rights Requirements – Mandatory Language	
24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS **29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000** **42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112** **42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332** **29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.**	
Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) – contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs	
28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) **49 CFR Part 26**	
Incorporation of FTA terms (Per FTA C4220.1F) – Mandatory Language	
30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
Energy Conservation	
6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 18**	
Charter Service Operations	
3. CHARTER BUS REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(d)** **49 CFR Part 604**	
School Bus Operations	
3. SCHOOL BUS REQUIREMENTS	

49 U.S.C. 5323(F) **49 CFR Part 605**
ADA Access
FTA is currently working on a contract clause to incorporate appropriate ADA requirements, but it is not yet available.
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000
Termination Provisions
21. TERMINATION **49 U.S.C. Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000
Suspension and Debarment
22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000
Buy America – Mandatory Language
2. BUY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(j)** **49 CFR Part 661**
Pre-Award and Post Delivery Audit Requirements
9. PRE-AWARD AND POST DELIVERY AUDITS REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323** **49 CFR Part 663**
Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation
25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION **49 CFR Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**
Lobbying – Mandatory Language
10. LOBBYING **31 U.S.C. 1352** **49 CFR Part 19** **49 CFR Part 20**
Clean Air
14. CLEAN AIR **42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq** **40 CFR 15.61** **49 CFR Part 18**
Clean Water
7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS **33 U.S.C. 1251**
Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act
17. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve property that may be transported by ocean vessel
Cargo Preference
4. CARGO PREFERENCE REQUIREMENTS **46 U.S.C. 1241** **46 CFR Part 381**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air
Fly America
6. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 40118** **41 CFR Part 301-10**

Below are the applicable clauses that were listed above with suggested or mandatory language. Those clauses with mandatory language are noted.

Rolling Stock	
Methods of Procurement	Micro Purchase: Procurements less than $2,500 Small Purchases: Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000 Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals): Procurements greater than $35,000

Applicable Federal Clauses

Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000

No Government Obligation to Third Parties

19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES

Applicability to Contracts
Applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
Not required by statute or regulation for either primary contractors or subcontractors, this concept should flow down to all levels to clarify, to all parties to the contract, that the Federal Government does not have contractual liability to third parties, absent specific written consent.
Model Clause/Language
While no specific language is required, FTA has developed the following language.

No Obligation by the Federal Government.

(1) The Purchaser and Contractor acknowledge and agree that, notwithstanding any concurrence by the Federal Government in or approval of the solicitation or award of the underlying contract, absent the express written consent by the Federal Government, the Federal Government is not a party to this contract and shall not be subject to any obligations or liabilities to the Purchaser, Contractor, or any other party (whether or not a party to that contract) pertaining to any matter resulting from the underlying contract.

(2) The Contractor agrees to include the above clause in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clause shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to its provisions.

Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts

20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS
31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.
49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001
49 U.S.C. 5307

Applicability to Contracts
These requirements are applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
These requirements flow down to contractors and subcontractors who make, present, or submit covered claims and statements.
Model Clause/Language
These requirements have no specified language, so FTA proffers the following language.

Program Fraud and False or Fraudulent Statements or Related Acts.

(1) The Contractor acknowledges that the provisions of the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986, as amended, 31 U.S.C. § 3801 et seq. and U.S. DOT regulations, "Program Fraud Civil Remedies," 49 C.F.R. Part 31, apply to its actions pertaining to this Project. Upon execution of the underlying contract, the Contractor certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of any statement it has made, it makes, it may make, or causes to be made, pertaining to the underlying contract or the FTA assisted project for which this contract work is being performed. In addition to other penalties that may be applicable, the Contractor further acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification, the Federal Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of the Program Fraud Civil
Remedies Act of 1986 on the Contractor to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(2) The Contractor also acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification to the Federal Government under a contract connected with a project that is financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance originally awarded by FTA under the authority of 49 U.S.C. § 5307, the Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of 18 U.S.C. § 1001 and 49 U.S.C. § 5307(n)(1) on the Contractor, to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(3) The Contractor agrees to include the above two clauses in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clauses shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to the provisions

Access to Records

11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS
49 U.S.C. 5325
18 CFR 18.36 (i)
49 CFR 633.17

Applicability to Contracts
Reference Chart "Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Type of Contracts"
Flow Down
FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.
Model Clause/Language
The specified language is not mandated by the statutes or regulations referenced, but the language provided paraphrases the statutory or regulatory language.

Access to Records - The following access to records requirements apply to this Contract:

1. Where the Purchaser is not a State but a local government and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 18.36(i), the Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their authorized representatives access to any books, documents, papers and records of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions. Contractor also agrees, pursuant to 49 C.F.R. 633.17 to provide the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives including any PMO Contractor access to Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311.

2. Where the Purchaser is a State and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 633.17, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives, including any PMO Contractor, access to the Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311. By definition, a major capital project excludes contracts of less than the simplified acquisition threshold currently set at $100,000.

3. Where the Purchaser enters into a negotiated contract for other than a small purchase or under the simplified acquisition threshold and is an institution of higher education, a hospital or other non-profit organization and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 19.48, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their duly authorized representatives with access to any books, documents, papers and record of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions.

4. Where any Purchaser which is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 U.S.C. 5325(a) enters into a contract for a capital project or improvement (defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1) through other than competitive bidding, the Contractor shall make available records related to the contract to the Purchaser, the Secretary of Transportation and the Comptroller General or any authorized officer or employee of any of them for the purposes of conducting an audit and inspection.

5. The Contractor agrees to permit any of the foregoing parties to reproduce by any means whatsoever or to copy excerpts and transcriptions as reasonably needed.

6. The Contractor agrees to maintain all books, records, accounts and reports required under this contract for a period of not less than three years after the date of termination or expiration of this contract, except in the event of litigation or settlement of claims arising from the performance of this contract, in which case Contractor agrees to maintain same until the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have disposed of all such litigation, appeals, claims or exceptions related thereto. Reference 49 CFR 18.39(i)(11).

7. FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.

Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Types of Contract

Contract Characteristics		Operational Service Contract	Turnkey	Construction	Architectural Engineering	Acquisition of Rolling Stock	Professional Services
I State Grantees							
a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000)		None	Those imposed on state pass thru to Contractor	None	None	None	None
b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		None unless[1] non-competitive award		Yes, if non-competitive award or if funded thru[2] 5307/5309/5311	None unless non-competitive award	None unless non-competitive award	None unless non-competitive award
II Non State Grantees							
a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000)		Yes[3]	Those imposed on non-state Grantee pass thru to Contractor	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		Yes[3]		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Sources of Authority:
[1] 49 USC 5325 (a)
[2] 49 CFR 633.17
[3] 18 CFR 18.36 (i)

Federal Changes

12. FEDERAL CHANGES
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Federal Changes requirement applies to all contracts.

Flow Down
The Federal Changes requirement flows down appropriately to each applicable changed requirement.

Model Clause/Language
No specific language is mandated. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Federal Changes - Contractor shall at all times comply with all applicable FTA regulations, policies, procedures and directives, including without limitation those listed directly or by reference in the Master Agreement between Purchaser and FTA, as they may be amended or promulgated from time to time during the term of this contract. Contractor's failure to so comply shall constitute a material breach of this contract.

Civil Rights Requirements – Mandatory Language

24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS
29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000
42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112
42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332
29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.

Applicability to Contracts
The Civil Rights Requirements apply to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Civil Rights requirements flow down to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier.
Model Clause/Language
The following clause was predicated on language contained at 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, but FTA has shortened the lengthy text.

Civil Rights - The following requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(1) Nondiscrimination - In accordance with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000d, section 303 of the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 6102, section 202 of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, 42 U.S.C. § 12132, and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees that it will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, age, or disability. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with applicable Federal implementing regulations and other implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(2) Equal Employment Opportunity - The following equal employment opportunity requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(a) Race, Color, Creed, National Origin, Sex - In accordance with Title VII of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000e, and Federal transit laws at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable equal employment opportunity requirements of U.S. Department of Labor (U.S. DOL) regulations, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor," 41 C.F.R. Parts 60 et seq., (which implement Executive Order No. 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order No. 11375, "Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," 42 U.S.C. § 2000e note), and with any applicable Federal statutes, executive orders, regulations, and Federal policies that may in the future affect construction activities undertaken in the course of the Project. The Contractor agrees to take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, color, creed, national origin, sex, or age. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion or transfer, recruitment or recruitment advertising, layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(b) Age - In accordance with section 4 of the Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967, as amended, 29 U.S.C. § § 623 and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to refrain from discrimination against present and prospective employees for reason of age. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(c) Disabilities - In accordance with section 102 of the Americans with Disabilities Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 12112, the Contractor agrees that it will comply with the requirements of U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, "Regulations to Implement the Equal Employment Provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act," 29 C.F.R. Part 1630, pertaining to employment of persons with disabilities. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(3) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA, modified only if necessary to identify the affected parties.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) – contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs

28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE)

49 CFR Part 26

Background and Applicability

The newest version on the Department of Transportation's Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) program became effective July 16, 2003. The rule provides guidance to grantees on the use of overall and contract goals, requirement to include DBE provisions in subcontracts, evaluating DBE participation where specific contract goals have been set, reporting requirements, and replacement of DBE subcontractors. Additionally, the DBE program dictates payment terms and conditions (including limitations on retainage) applicable to all subcontractors regardless of whether they are DBE firms or not.

The DBE program applies to all DOT-assisted contracting activities. A formal clause such as that below must be included in all contracts above the micro-purchase level. The requirements of clause subsection b flow down to subcontracts.

A substantial change to the payment provisions in this newest version of Part 26 concerns retainage (*see* section 26.29). Grantee choices concerning retainage should be reflected in the language choices in clause subsection d.

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the payment terms and conditions applicable to all subcontractors based in Part 26 as well as those related only to DBE subcontractors. The suggested language allows for the options available to grantees concerning retainage, specific contract goals, and evaluation of DBE subcontracting participation when specific contract goals have been established.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises

a. This contract is subject to the requirements of Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 26, *Participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises in Department of Transportation Financial Assistance Programs.* The national goal for participation of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) is 10%. The agency's overall goal for DBE participation is **__ %.** A separate contract goal **[of __ % DBE participation has] [has not]** been established for this procurement.

b. The contractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of this DOT-assisted contract. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as **{insert agency name}** deems appropriate. Each subcontract the contractor signs with a subcontractor must include the assurance in this paragraph (*see* 49 CFR 26.13(b)).

c. ***{If a separate contract goal has been established, use the following}*** Bidders/offerors are required to document sufficient DBE participation to meet these goals or, alternatively, document adequate good faith efforts to do so, as provided for in 49 CFR 26.53. Award of this contract is conditioned on submission of the following **[concurrent with and accompanying sealed bid] [concurrent with and accompanying an initial proposal] [prior to award]**:

1. The names and addresses of DBE firms that will participate in this contract;

2. A description of the work each DBE will perform;

3. The dollar amount of the participation of each DBE firm participating;

4. Written documentation of the bidder/offeror's commitment to use a DBE subcontractor whose participation it submits to meet the contract goal;

5. Written confirmation from the DBE that it is participating in the contract as provided in the prime contractor's commitment; and

6. If the contract goal is not met, evidence of good faith efforts to do so.

[Bidders][Offerors] must present the information required above **[as a matter of responsiveness] [with initial proposals] [prior to contract award]** (*see* 49 CFR 26.53(3)).

{If no separate contract goal has been established, use the following} The successful bidder/offeror will be required to report its DBE participation obtained through race-neutral means throughout the period of performance.

d. The contractor is required to pay its subcontractors performing work related to this contract for satisfactory performance of that work no later than 30 days after the contractor's receipt of payment for that work from the **{insert agency name}**. In addition, **[the contractor may not hold retainage from its subcontractors.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after the subcontractor's work related to this contract is satisfactorily completed.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after incremental acceptance of the subcontractor's work by the {insert agency name} and contractor's receipt of the partial retainage payment related to the subcontractor's work.]**

e. The contractor must promptly notify **{insert agency name}**, whenever a DBE subcontractor performing work related to this contract is terminated or fails to complete its work, and must make good faith efforts to engage another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work. The contractor may not terminate any DBE subcontractor and perform that work through its own forces or those of an affiliate without prior written consent of **{insert agency name}**.

Incorporation of FTA terms (Per FTA C4220.1F) – Mandatory Language

30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
The incorporation of FTA terms applies to all contracts.
Flow Down
The incorporation of FTA terms has unlimited flow down.
Model Clause/Language
FTA has developed the following incorporation of terms language**:**

Incorporation of Federal Transit Administration (FTA) Terms - The preceding provisions include, in part, certain Standard Terms and Conditions required by DOT, whether or not expressly set forth in the preceding contract provisions. All contractual provisions required by DOT, as set forth in FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions, are hereby incorporated by reference. Anything to the contrary herein notwithstanding, all FTA mandated terms shall be deemed to control in the event of a conflict with other provisions contained in this Agreement. The Contractor shall not perform any act, fail to perform any act, or refuse to comply with any (name of grantee) requests which would cause (name of grantee) to be in violation of the FTA terms and conditions.

Energy Conservation

6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS
42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Energy Conservation requirements are applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Energy Conservation requirements extend to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier and subrecipients and their subagreements at every tier.
Model Clause/Language
No specific clause is recommended in the regulations because the Energy Conservation requirements are so dependent on the state energy conservation plan. The following language has been developed by FTA:

Energy Conservation - The contractor agrees to comply with mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act.

Charter Service Operations

3. CHARTER BUS REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323(d)
49 CFR Part 604

Applicability to Contracts
The Charter Bus requirements apply to the following type of contract: Operational Service Contracts.
Flow Down Requirements
The Charter Bus requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier service contractors.
Model Clause/Language
The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specific clause or language. The following clause has been developed by FTA.

Charter Service Operations - The contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 5323(d) and 49 CFR Part 604, which provides that recipients and subrecipients of FTA assistance are prohibited from providing charter service using federally funded equipment or facilities if there is at least one private charter operator willing and able to provide the service, except under one of the exceptions at 49 CFR 604.9. Any charter service provided under one of the exceptions must be "incidental," i.e., it must not interfere with or detract from the provision of mass transportation.

School Bus Operations

3. SCHOOL BUS REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323(F)
49 CFR Part 605

Applicability to Contracts
The School Bus requirements apply to the following type of contract: Operational Service Contracts.
Flow Down Requirements
The School Bus requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier service contractors.
Model Clause/Language
The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specific clause or language. The following clause has been developed by FTA.

School Bus Operations - Pursuant to 69 U.S.C. 5323(f) and 49 CFR Part 605, recipients and subrecipients of FTA assistance may not engage in school bus operations exclusively for the transportation of students and school personnel in competition with private school bus operators unless qualified under specified exemptions. When operating exclusive school bus service under an allowable exemption, recipients and subrecipients may not use federally funded equipment, vehicles, or facilities.

ADA Access

FTA is currently working on a contract clause to incorporate appropriate ADA requirements, but it is not yet available.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000

Termination Provisions

21. TERMINATION
49 U.S.C. Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
All contracts (with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education,) in excess of $10,000 shall contain suitable provisions for termination by the grantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (For contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education the threshold is $100,000.) In addition, such contracts shall describe conditions under which the contract may be terminated for default as well as conditions where the contract may be terminated because of circumstances beyond the control of the contractor.
Flow Down
The termination requirements flow down to all contracts in excess of $10,000, with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher learning.
Model Clause/Language

FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such clauses. The following are suggestions of clauses to be used in different types of contracts:

a. Termination for Convenience (General Provision) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, at any time by written notice to the Contractor when it is in the Government's best interest. The Contractor shall be paid its costs, including contract close-out costs, and profit on work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to (Recipient) to be paid the Contractor. If the Contractor has any property in its possession belonging to the (Recipient), the Contractor will account for the same, and dispose of it in the manner the (Recipient) directs.

b. Termination for Default [Breach or Cause] (General Provision) If the Contractor does not deliver supplies in accordance with the contract delivery schedule, or, if the contract is for services, the Contractor fails to perform in the manner called for in the contract, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of the contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. Termination shall be effected by serving a notice of termination on the contractor setting forth the manner in which the Contractor is in default. The contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in the contract.
If it is later determined by the (Recipient) that the Contractor had an excusable reason for not performing, such as a strike, fire, or flood, events which are not the fault of or are beyond the control of the Contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new delivery of performance schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

c. Opportunity to Cure (General Provision) The (Recipient) in its sole discretion may, in the case of a termination for breach or default, allow the Contractor [an appropriately short period of time] in which to cure the defect. In such case, the notice of termination will state the time period in which cure is permitted and other appropriate conditions

If Contractor fails to remedy to (Recipient)'s satisfaction the breach or default of any of the terms, covenants, or conditions of this Contract within [ten (10) days] after receipt by Contractor of written notice from (Recipient) setting forth the nature of said breach or default, (Recipient) shall have the right to terminate the Contract without any further obligation to Contractor. Any such termination for default shall not in any way operate to preclude (Recipient) from also pursuing all available remedies against Contractor and its sureties for said breach or default.

d. Waiver of Remedies for any Breach In the event that (Recipient) elects to waive its remedies for any breach by Contractor of any covenant, term or condition of this Contract, such waiver by (Recipient) shall not limit (Recipient)'s remedies for any succeeding breach of that or of any other term, covenant, or condition of this Contract.

e. Termination for Convenience (Professional or Transit Service Contracts) The (Recipient), by written notice, may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, when it is in the Government's interest. If this contract is terminated, the Recipient shall be liable only for payment under the payment provisions of this contract for services rendered before the effective date of termination.

f. Termination for Default (Supplies and Service) If the Contractor fails to deliver supplies or to perform the services within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner or performance set forth in this contract.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

g. Termination for Default (Transportation Services) If the Contractor fails to pick up the commodities or to perform the services, including delivery services, within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in this contract.

If this contract is terminated while the Contractor has possession of Recipient goods, the Contractor shall, upon direction of the (Recipient), protect and preserve the goods until surrendered to the Recipient or its agent. The Contractor and (Recipient) shall agree on payment for the preservation and protection of goods. Failure to agree on an amount will be resolved under the Dispute clause.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the (Recipient).

h. Termination for Default (Construction) If the Contractor refuses or fails to prosecute the work or any separable part, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the time specified in this contract or any extension or fails to complete the work within this time, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. In this event, the Recipient may take over the work and compete it by contract or otherwise, and may take possession of and use any materials, appliances, and plant on the work site necessary for completing the work. The Contractor and its sureties shall be liable for any damage to the Recipient resulting from the Contractor's refusal or failure to complete the work within specified time, whether or not the Contractor's right to proceed with the work is terminated. This liability includes any increased costs incurred by the Recipient in completing the work.

The Contractor's right to proceed shall not be terminated nor the Contractor charged with damages under this clause if-

1. the delay in completing the work arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor. Examples of such causes include: acts of God, acts of the Recipient, acts of another Contractor in the performance of a contract with the Recipient, epidemics, quarantine restrictions, strikes, freight embargoes; and

2. the contractor, within [10] days from the beginning of any delay, notifies the (Recipient) in writing of the causes of delay. If in the judgment of the (Recipient), the delay is excusable, the time for completing the work shall be extended. The judgment of the (Recipient) shall be final and conclusive on the parties, but subject to appeal under the Disputes clauses.

If, after termination of the Contractor's right to proceed, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, or that the delay was excusable, the rights and obligations of the parties will be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

i. Termination for Convenience or Default (Architect and Engineering) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract in whole or in part, for the Recipient's convenience or because of the failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature, extent, and effective date of the termination. Upon receipt of the notice, the Contractor shall (1) immediately discontinue all services affected (unless the notice directs otherwise), and (2) deliver to the Contracting Officer all data, drawings, specifications, reports, estimates, summaries, and other information and materials accumulated in performing this contract, whether completed or in process.

If the termination is for the convenience of the Recipient, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment in the contract price but shall allow no anticipated profit on unperformed services.

If the termination is for failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations, the Recipient may complete the work by contact or otherwise and the Contractor shall be liable for any additional cost incurred by the Recipient.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

j. Termination for Convenience of Default (Cost-Type Contracts) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, or any portion of it, by serving a notice or termination on the Contractor. The notice shall state whether the termination is for convenience of the (Recipient) or for the default of the Contractor. If the termination is for default, the notice shall state the manner in which the contractor has failed to perform the requirements of the contract. The Contractor shall account for any property in its possession paid for from funds received from the (Recipient), or property supplied to the Contractor by the (Recipient). If the termination is for default, the (Recipient) may fix the fee, if the contract provides for a fee, to be paid the contractor in proportion to the value, if any, of work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to the (Recipient) and the parties shall negotiate the termination settlement to be paid the Contractor.

If the termination is for the convenience of the (Recipient), the Contractor shall be paid its contract close-out costs, and a fee, if the contract provided for payment of a fee, in proportion to the work performed up to the time of termination.

If, after serving a notice of termination for default, the (Recipient) determines that the Contractor has an excusable reason for not performing, such as strike, fire, flood, events which are not the fault of and are beyond the control of the contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new work schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000

Suspension and Debarment

22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)

Background and Applicability

In conjunction with the Office of Management and Budget and other affected Federal agencies, DOT published an update to 49 CFR Part 29 on November 26, 2003. This government-wide regulation implements Executive Order 12549, *Debarment and Suspension*, Executive Order 12689, *Debarment and Suspension*, and 31 U.S.C. 6101 note (Section 2455, Public Law 103-355, 108 Stat. 3327).

The provisions of Part 29 apply to all grantee contracts and subcontracts at any level expected to equal or exceed $25,000 as well as any contract or subcontract (at any level) for Federally required auditing services. 49 CFR 29.220(b). This represents a change from prior practice in that the dollar threshold for application of these rules has been lowered from $100,000 to $25,000. These are contracts and subcontracts referred to in the regulation as "covered transactions."

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors (at any level) that enter into covered transactions are required to verify that the entity (as well as its principals and affiliates) they propose to contract or subcontract with is not excluded or disqualified. They do this by (a) Checking the Excluded Parties List System, (b) Collecting a certification from that person, or (c) Adding a clause or condition to the contract or subcontract. This represents a change from prior practice in that certification is still acceptable but is no longer required. 49 CFR 29.300.

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors who enter into covered transactions also must require the entities they contract with to comply with 49 CFR 29, subpart C and include this requirement in their own subsequent covered transactions (i.e., the requirement flows down to subcontracts at all levels).

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the optional method of verifying that contractors are not excluded or disqualified by certification.

Suspension and Debarment

> This contract is a covered transaction for purposes of 49 CFR Part 29. As such, the contractor is required to verify that none of the contractor, its principals, as defined at 49 CFR 29.995, or affiliates, as defined at 49 CFR 29.905, are excluded or disqualified as defined at 49 CFR 29.940 and 29.945.
>
> The contractor is required to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C and must include the requirement to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C in any lower tier covered transaction it enters into.
> By signing and submitting its bid or proposal, the bidder or proposer certifies as follows:

The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact relied upon by **{insert agency name}**. If it is later determined that the bidder or proposer knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to remedies available to **{insert agency name}**, the Federal Government may pursue available remedies, including but not limited to suspension and/or debarment. The bidder or proposer agrees to comply with the requirements of 49 CFR 29, Subpart C while this offer is valid and throughout the period of any contract that may arise from this offer. The bidder or proposer further agrees to include a provision requiring such compliance in its lower tier covered transactions.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000

Buy America – Mandatory Language

2. BUY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323(j)
49 CFR Part 661

Applicability to Contracts
The Buy America requirements apply to the following types of contracts: Construction Contracts and Acquisition of Goods or Rolling Stock (valued at more than $100,000).
Flow Down
The Buy America requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors, who are responsible for ensuring that lower tier contractors and subcontractors are in compliance. The $100,000 threshold applies only to the grantee contract, subcontracts under that amount are subject to Buy America.
Mandatory Clause/Language
The Buy America regulation, at 49 CFR 661.13, requires notification of the Buy America requirements in FTA-funded contracts, but does not specify the language to be used. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Buy America - The contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j) and 49 C.F.R. Part 661, which provide that Federal funds may not be obligated unless steel, iron, and manufactured products used in FTA-funded projects are produced in the United States, unless a waiver has been granted by FTA or the product is subject to a general waiver. General waivers are listed in 49 C.F.R. 661.7, and include final assembly in the United States for 15 passenger vans and 15 passenger wagons produced by Chrysler Corporation, and microcomputer equipment and software. Separate requirements for rolling stock are set out at 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and 49 C.F.R. 661.11. Rolling stock must be assembled in the United States and have a 60 percent domestic content.

A bidder or offeror must submit to the FTA recipient the appropriate Buy America certification (below) with all bids or offers on FTA-funded contracts, except those subject to a general waiver. Bids or offers that are not accompanied by a completed Buy America certification must be rejected as nonresponsive. This requirement does not apply to lower tier subcontractors.

Certification requirement for procurement of steel, iron, or manufactured products.

Certificate of Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it will meet the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1) and the applicable regulations in 49 C.F.R. Part 661.5.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title _____

Certificate of Non-Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it cannot comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1) and 49 C.F.R. 661.5, but it may qualify for an exception pursuant to 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(A), 5323(j)(2)(B), or 5323(j)(2)(D), and 49 C.F.R. 661.7.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title _____

Certification requirement for procurement of buses, other rolling stock and associated equipment.

Certificate of Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C).

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it will comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and the regulations at 49 C.F.R. Part 661.11.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title _____

Certificate of Non-Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it cannot comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and 49 C.F.R. 661.11, but may qualify for an exception pursuant to 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(A), 5323(j)(2)(B), or 5323(j)(2)(D), and 49 CFR 661.7.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title

Pre-Award and Post Delivery Audit Requirements

9. PRE-AWARD AND POST DELIVERY AUDITS REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323
49 CFR Part 663

Applicability to Contracts
These requirements apply only to the acquisition of Rolling Stock/Turnkey.

Flow Down
These requirements should not flow down, except to the turnkey contractor as stated in Master Agreement.

Model Clause/Language
Clause and language therein are merely suggested. 49 C.F.R. Part 663 does not contain specific language to be included in third party contracts but does contain requirements applicable to subrecipients and third party contractors.

- Buy America certification is mandated under FTA regulation, "Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits of Rolling Stock Purchases," 49 C.F.R. 663.13.

-- Specific language for the Buy America certification is mandated by FTA regulation,

"Buy America Requirements--Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, as amended,"

49 C.F.R. 661.12, but has been modified to include FTA's Buy America requirements codified at 49 U.S.C. A 5323(j).

Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audit Requirements - The Contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. § 5323(l) and FTA's implementing regulation at 49 C.F.R. Part 663 and to submit the following certifications:

(1) Buy America Requirements: The Contractor shall complete and submit a declaration certifying either compliance or noncompliance with Buy America. If the Bidder/Offeror certifies compliance with Buy America, it shall submit documentation which lists 1) component and subcomponent parts of the rolling stock to be purchased identified by manufacturer of the parts, their country of origin and costs; and 2) the location of the final assembly point for the rolling stock, including a description of the activities that will take place at the final assembly point and the cost of final assembly.

(2) Solicitation Specification Requirements: The Contractor shall submit evidence that it will be capable of meeting the bid specifications.
(3) Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS): The Contractor shall submit 1) manufacturer's FMVSS self-certification sticker information that the vehicle complies with relevant FMVSS or 2) manufacturer's certified statement that the contracted buses will not be subject to FMVSS regulations.

BUY AMERICA CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE WITH FTA REQUIREMENTS FOR BUSES, OTHER ROLLING STOCK, OR ASSOCIATED EQUIPMENT

(To be submitted with a bid or offer exceeding the small purchase threshold for Federal assistance programs, currently set at $100,000.)

Certificate of Compliance

The bidder hereby certifies that it will comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. Section 5323(j)(2)(C), Section 165(b)(3) of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, as amended, and the regulations of 49 C.F.R. 661.11:

Date: _____
Signature: _____
Company Name: _____
Title: _____

Certificate of Non-Compliance

The bidder hereby certifies that it cannot comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. Section 5323(j)(2)(C) and Section 165(b)(3) of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, as amended, but may qualify for an exception to the requirements consistent with 49 U.S.C. Sections 5323(j)(2)(B) or (j)(2)(D), Sections 165(b)(2) or (b)(4) of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act, as amended, and regulations in 49 C.F.R. 661.7.

Date: _____
Signature: _____
Company Name: _____
Title:

Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation

25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION
49 CFR Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
All contracts in excess of $100,000 shall contain provisions or conditions which will allow for administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. This may
include provisions for bonding, penalties for late or inadequate performance, retained earnings, liquidated damages or other appropriate measures.
Flow Down
The Breaches and Dispute Resolutions requirements flow down to all tiers.
Model Clauses/Language
FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such provisions. What provisions are developed will depend on the circumstances and the type of contract. Recipients should consult legal counsel in developing appropriate clauses. The following clauses are examples of provisions from various FTA third party contracts.

Disputes - Disputes arising in the performance of this Contract which are not resolved by agreement of the parties shall be decided in writing by the authorized representative of (Recipient)'s [title of employee]. This decision shall be final and conclusive unless within [ten (10)] days from the date of receipt of its copy, the Contractor mails or otherwise furnishes a written appeal to the [title of employee]. In connection with any such appeal, the Contractor shall be afforded an opportunity to be heard and to offer evidence in support of its position. The decision of the [title of employee] shall be binding upon the Contractor and the Contractor shall abide be the decision.

Performance During Dispute - Unless otherwise directed by (Recipient), Contractor shall continue performance under this Contract while matters in dispute are being resolved.

Claims for Damages - Should either party to the Contract suffer injury or damage to person or property because of any act or omission of the party or of any of his employees, agents or others for whose acts he is legally liable, a claim for damages therefor shall be made in writing to such other party within a reasonable time after the first observance of such injury of damage.

Remedies - Unless this contract provides otherwise, all claims, counterclaims, disputes and other matters in question between the (Recipient) and the Contractor arising out of or relating to this agreement or its breach will be decided by arbitration if the parties mutually agree, or in a court of competent jurisdiction within the State in which the (Recipient) is located.

Rights and Remedies - The duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and the rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of any duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law. No action or failure to act by the (Recipient), (Architect) or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of any right or duty afforded any of them under the Contract, nor shall any such action or failure to act constitute an approval of or acquiescence in any breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.

Lobbying – Mandatory Language

10. LOBBYING
31 U.S.C. 1352
49 CFR Part 19
49 CFR Part 20

Applicability to Contracts
The Lobbying requirements apply to Construction/Architectural and Engineering/Acquisition of Rolling Stock/Professional Service Contract/Operational Service Contract/Turnkey contracts.

Flow Down
The Lobbying requirements mandate the maximum flow down, pursuant to Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. § 1352(b)(5) and 49 C.F.R. Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7.
Mandatory Clause/Language
Clause and specific language therein are mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Clause pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, *et seq.*]

- Lobbying Certification and Disclosure of Lobbying Activities for third party contractors are mandated by 31 U.S.C. 1352(b)(5), as amended by Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, and DOT implementing regulation, "New Restrictions on Lobbying," at 49 CFR § 20.110(d)

- Language in Lobbying Certification is mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7, which provides that contractors file the certification required by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Lobbying Certification pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995.

- Use of "Disclosure of Lobbying Activities," Standard Form-LLL set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR Part 20, as amended by "Government wide Guidance For New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96) is mandated by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. 1352, as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, et seq.] - Contractors who apply or bid for an award of $100,000 or more shall file the certification required by 49 CFR part 20, "New Restrictions on Lobbying." Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier shall also disclose the name of any registrant under the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 who has made lobbying contacts on its behalf with non-Federal funds with respect to that Federal contract, grant or award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the recipient.

APPENDIX A, 49 CFR PART 20--CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING

Certification for Contracts, Grants, Loans, and Cooperative Agreements

(To be submitted with each bid or offer exceeding $100,000)

The undersigned [Contractor] certifies, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for making lobbying contacts to an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form--LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions [as amended by "Government wide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96). Note: Language in paragraph (2) herein has been modified in accordance with Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 (P.L. 104-65, to be codified at 2 U.S.C. 1601, *et seq.*)]

(3) The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31, U.S.C. § 1352 (as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995). Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such failure.

[Note: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. § 1352(c)(1)-(2)(A), any person who makes a prohibited expenditure or fails to file or amend a required certification or disclosure form shall be subject to
a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such expenditure or failure.]

The Contractor, _____, certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of each statement of its certification and disclosure, if any. In addition, the Contractor understands and agrees that the provisions of 31 U.S.C. A 3801, *et seq.,* apply to this certification and disclosure, if any.
_____ Signature of Contractor's Authorized Official
_____ Name and Title of Contractor's Authorized Official
_____ Date

Clean Air

14. CLEAN AIR
42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq
40 CFR 15.61
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Clean Air requirements apply to all contracts exceeding $100,000, including indefinite quantities where the amount is expected to exceed $100,000 in any year.
Flow Down
The Clean Air requirements flow down to all subcontracts which exceed $100,000.
Model Clauses/Language
No specific language is required. FTA has proposed the following language.

Clean Air - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. §§ 7401 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the
Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Clean Water

7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS

33 U.S.C. 1251

Applicability to Contracts
The Clean Water requirements apply to each contract and subcontract which exceeds $100,000.
Flow Down
The Clean Water requirements flow down to FTA recipients and subrecipients at every tier.
Model Clause/Language
While no mandatory clause is contained in the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, the following language developed by FTA contains all the mandatory requirements:

Clean Water - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, 33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act

17. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT

Background and Application
The Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act is codified at 40 USC 3701, *et seq.* The Act applies to grantee contracts and subcontracts "financed at least in part by loans or grants from … the [Federal] Government." 40 USC 3701(b)(1)(B)(iii) and (b)(2), 29 CFR 5.2(h), 49 CFR 18.36(i)(6). Although the original Act required its application in any construction contract over $2,000 or non-construction contract to which the Act applied over $2,500 (and language to that effect is still found in 49 CFR 18.36(i)(6)), the Act no longer applies to any "contract in an amount that is not greater than $100,000." 40 USC 3701(b)(3) (A)(iii).

The Act applies to construction contracts and, in very limited circumstances, non-construction projects that employ "laborers or mechanics on a public work." These non-construction applications do not generally apply to transit procurements because transit procurements (to include rail cars and buses) are deemed "commercial items." 40 USC 3707, 41 USC 403 (12). A grantee that contemplates entering into a contract to procure a developmental or unique item should consult counsel to determine if the Act applies to that procurement and that additional language required by 29 CFR 5.5(c) must be added to the basic clause below.

The clause language is drawn directly from 29 CFR 5.5(b) and any deviation from the model clause below should be coordinated with counsel to ensure the Act's requirements are satisfied.

Clause Language

Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards

(1) **Overtime requirements** - No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.

(2) **Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages** - In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section, in the sum of $10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section.

(3) **Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages** - The (***write in the name of the grantee***) shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (2) of this section.

(4) **Subcontracts** - The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this section.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve property that may be transported by ocean vessel

Cargo Preference

4. CARGO PREFERENCE REQUIREMENTS
46 U.S.C. 1241
46 CFR Part 381

Applicability to Contracts
The Cargo Preference requirements apply to all contracts involving equipment, materials, or commodities which may be transported by ocean vessels.
Flow Down
The Cargo Preference requirements apply to all subcontracts when the subcontract may be involved with the transport of equipment, material, or commodities by ocean vessel.
Model Clause/Language
The MARAD regulations at 46 CFR 381.7 contain suggested contract clauses. The following language is proffered by FTA.

Cargo Preference - Use of United States-Flag Vessels - The contractor agrees: a. to use privately owned United States-Flag commercial vessels to ship at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers) involved, whenever shipping any equipment, material, or commodities pursuant to the underlying contract to the extent such vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for United States-Flag commercial vessels; b. to furnish within 20 working days following the date of loading for shipments originating within the United States or within 30 working days following the date of leading for shipments originating outside the United States, a legible copy of a rated, "on-board" commercial ocean bill-of -lading in English for each shipment of cargo described in the preceding paragraph to the Division of National Cargo, Office of Market Development, Maritime Administration, Washington, DC 20590 and to the FTA recipient (through the contractor in the case of a subcontractor's bill-of-lading.) c. to include these requirements in all subcontracts issued pursuant to this contract when the subcontract may involve the transport of equipment, material, or commodities by ocean vessel.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air

Fly America

7. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. § 40118
41 CFR Part 301-10

Applicability to Contracts
The Fly America requirements apply to the transportation of persons or property, by air, between a place in the U.S. and a place outside the U.S., or between places outside the U.S., when the FTA will participate in the costs of such air transportation. Transportation on a foreign air carrier is permissible when provided by a foreign air carrier under a code share agreement when the ticket identifies the U.S. air carrier's designator code and flight number. Transportation by a foreign air carrier is also permissible if there is a bilateral or multilateral air transportation agreement to which the U.S. Government and a foreign government are parties and which the Federal DOT has determined meets the requirements of the Fly America Act.
Flow Down Requirements
The Fly America requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors, who are responsible for ensuring that lower tier contractors and subcontractors are in compliance.
Model Clause/Language
The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specified clause or language. FTA proposes the following language.

Fly America Requirements
The Contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 40118 (the "Fly America" Act) in accordance with the General Services Administration's regulations at 41 CFR Part 301-10, which provide that recipients and subrecipients of Federal funds and their contractors are required to use U.S. Flag air carriers for U.S Government-financed international air travel and transportation of their personal effects or property, to the extent such service is available, unless travel by foreign air carrier is a matter of necessity, as defined by the Fly America Act. The Contractor shall submit, if a foreign air carrier was used, an appropriate certification or memorandum adequately explaining why service by a U.S. flag air carrier was not available or why it was necessary to use a foreign air carrier and shall, in any event, provide a certificate of compliance with the Fly America requirements. The Contractor agrees to include the requirements of this section in all subcontracts that may involve international air transportation.

Applicable Federal Clauses **Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000**	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES	
20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS **31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001** **49 U.S.C. 5307**	
11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS **49 U.S.C. 5325** **18 CFR 18.36 (i)** **49 CFR 633.17**	
12. FEDERAL CHANGES **49 CFR Part 18**	
24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS **29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000** **42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112** **42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332** **29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.**	
28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) **49 CFR Part 26**	
30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 18**	
3. CHARTER BUS REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(d)** **49 CFR Part 604**	
3. SCHOOL BUS REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(F)** **49 CFR Part 605**	
Does procurement exhibit Geographic Preference? **For reference purposes: 49 CFR 18.36 (c)(1)(2) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 2.a (4)(g)**	
Has proposed contracted entity been verified that they are not excluded or disqualified through the Excluded Parties List System (EPLS)? **For reference purposes: https://www.sam.gov/portal/public/SAM/**	
Has an adequate number of sources been solicited?	
Has applicable ADA language been included?	
Has an adequate cost analysis been performed? **For reference purposes: 49 CFR 18.36 (f)(1) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 6**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**

21. TERMINATION **49 U.S.C. Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
2. BUY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(j)** **49 CFR Part 661**	
9. PRE-AWARD AND POST DELIVERY AUDITS REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323** **49 CFR Part 663**	
25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION **49 CFR Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
10. LOBBYING **31 U.S.C. 1352** **49 CFR Part 19** **49 CFR Part 20**	
14. CLEAN AIR **42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq** **40 CFR 15.61** **49 CFR Part 18**	
7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS **33 U.S.C. 1251**	
17. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve property that may be transported by ocean vessel	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
4. CARGO PREFERENCE REQUIREMENTS **46 U.S.C. 1241** **46 CFR Part 381**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
8. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 40118** **41 CFR Part 301-10**	

Approval:
Subrecipient

_____Date:_____

Approval:
Florida Department of Transportation

_____Date:_____

When procuring materials and supplies the following steps should be taken:

7. Determine the method of procurement (i.e., Micro Purchase, Small Purchase, RFP, Sealed Bid, etc.).
8. Apply applicable Federal clauses based on method of procurement (cost of purchase).

Construction	
Methods of Procurement	Micro Purchase: Procurements less than $2,500 Small Purchases: Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000 Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals): Procurements greater than $35,000
Applicable Federal Clauses **Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000**	
No Government Obligation to Third Parties	
19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES	
Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts	
20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS **31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001** **49 U.S.C. 5307**	
Access to Records	
11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS **49 U.S.C. 5325** **18 CFR 18.36 (i)** **49 CFR 633.17**	
Federal Changes	
12. FEDERAL CHANGES **49 CFR Part 18**	
Civil Rights Requirements – Mandatory Language	
24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS **29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000** **42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112** **42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332** **29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.**	
Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) – contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs	
28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) **49 CFR Part 26**	
Incorporation of FTA terms (Per FTA C4220.1F) – Mandatory Language	
30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
Energy Conservation	
6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 18**	
ADA Access	
FTA is currently working on a contract clause to incorporate appropriate ADA requirements, but it is not yet available.	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000	

Termination Provisions
21. TERMINATION **49 U.S.C. Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000
Suspension and Debarment
22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000
Buy America
2. BUY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(j)** **49 CFR Part 661**
Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation
25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION **49 CFR Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**
Lobbying – Mandatory Language
10. LOBBYING **31 U.S.C. 1352** **49 CFR Part 19** **49 CFR Part 20**
Clean Air
14. CLEAN AIR **42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq** **40 CFR 15.61** **49 CFR Part 18**
Clean Water
7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS **33 U.S.C. 1251**
Bonding
13. BONDING REQUIREMENTS
Davis Bacon Act – greater than $2,000 (including ferry vessels) Copeland Anti-Kickback Act – greater than $100,000 (including ferry vessels) – Mandatory Language
16. DAVIS-BACON AND COPELAND ANTI-KICKBACK ACTS
Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act (including ferry vessels)
17. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve property that may be transported by ocean vessel
Cargo Preference
4. CARGO PREFERENCE REQUIREMENTS **46 U.S.C. 1241** **46 CFR Part 381**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air
Fly America
9. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 40118** **41 CFR Part 301-10**
Applicable Federal Clauses – New Buildings and Additions
Seismic Safety – New Buildings & Additions
5. SEISMIC SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

42 U.S.C. 7701 et seq. 49 CFR Part 41
Applicable Federal Clauses – Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year
Recycled Products
15. RECYCLED PRODUCTS **42 U.S.C. 6962** **40 CFR Part 247** **Executive Order 12873**

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

Below are the applicable clauses that were listed above with suggested or mandatory language. Those clauses with mandatory language are noted.

Construction	
Methods of Procurement	Micro Purchase: Procurements less than $2,500 Small Purchases: Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000 Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals): Procurements greater than $35,000

Applicable Federal Clauses

Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000

No Government Obligation to Third Parties

19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES

Applicability to Contracts
Applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
Not required by statute or regulation for either primary contractors or subcontractors, this concept should flow down to all levels to clarify, to all parties to the contract, that the Federal Government does not have contractual liability to third parties, absent specific written consent.
Model Clause/Language
While no specific language is required, FTA has developed the following language.

No Obligation by the Federal Government.

(1) The Purchaser and Contractor acknowledge and agree that, notwithstanding any concurrence by the Federal Government in or approval of the solicitation or award of the underlying contract, absent the express written consent by the Federal Government, the Federal Government is not a party to this contract and shall not be subject to any obligations or liabilities to the Purchaser, Contractor, or any other party (whether or not a party to that contract) pertaining to any matter resulting from the underlying contract.

(2) The Contractor agrees to include the above clause in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clause shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to its provisions.

Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts

20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS
31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.
49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001
49 U.S.C. 5307

Applicability to Contracts
These requirements are applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
These requirements flow down to contractors and subcontractors who make, present, or submit covered claims and statements.

Model Clause/Language
These requirements have no specified language, so FTA proffers the following language.

Program Fraud and False or Fraudulent Statements or Related Acts.

(1) The Contractor acknowledges that the provisions of the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986, as amended, 31 U.S.C. § 3801 et seq. and U.S. DOT regulations, "Program Fraud Civil Remedies," 49 C.F.R. Part 31, apply to its actions pertaining to this Project. Upon execution of the underlying contract, the Contractor certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of any statement it has made, it makes, it may make, or causes to be made, pertaining to the underlying contract or the FTA assisted project for which this contract work is being performed. In addition to other penalties that may be applicable, the Contractor further acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification, the Federal Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986 on the Contractor to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(2) The Contractor also acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification to the Federal Government under a contract connected with a project that is financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance originally awarded by FTA under the authority of 49 U.S.C. § 5307, the Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of 18 U.S.C. § 1001 and 49 U.S.C. § 5307(n)(1) on the Contractor, to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(3) The Contractor agrees to include the above two clauses in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clauses shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to the provisions

Access to Records

11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS
49 U.S.C. 5325
18 CFR 18.36 (i)
49 CFR 633.17

Applicability to Contracts
Reference Chart "Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Type of Contracts"
Flow Down
FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.
Model Clause/Language
The specified language is not mandated by the statutes or regulations referenced, but the language provided paraphrases the statutory or regulatory language.

Access to Records - The following access to records requirements apply to this Contract:

1. Where the Purchaser is not a State but a local government and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 18.36(i), the Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their authorized representatives access to any books, documents, papers and records of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions. Contractor also agrees, pursuant to 49 C.F.R. 633.17 to provide the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives including any PMO Contractor access to Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311.

2. Where the Purchaser is a State and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 633.17, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives, including any PMO Contractor, access to the Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311. By definition, a major capital project excludes contracts of less than the simplified acquisition threshold currently set at $100,000.

3. Where the Purchaser enters into a negotiated contract for other than a small purchase or under the simplified acquisition threshold and is an institution of higher education, a hospital or other non-profit organization and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 19.48, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, FTA

Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their duly authorized representatives with access to any books, documents, papers and record of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions.

4. Where any Purchaser which is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 U.S.C. 5325(a) enters into a contract for a capital project or improvement (defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1) through other than competitive bidding, the Contractor shall make available records related to the contract to the Purchaser, the Secretary of Transportation and the Comptroller General or any authorized officer or employee of any of them for the purposes of conducting an audit and inspection.

5. The Contractor agrees to permit any of the foregoing parties to reproduce by any means whatsoever or to copy excerpts and transcriptions as reasonably needed.

6. The Contractor agrees to maintain all books, records, accounts and reports required under this contract for a period of not less than three years after the date of termination or expiration of this contract, except in the event of litigation or settlement of claims arising from the performance of this contract, in which case Contractor agrees to maintain same until the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have disposed of all such litigation, appeals, claims or exceptions related thereto. Reference 49 CFR 18.39(i)(11).

7. FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.

Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Types of Contract

Contract Characteristics		Operational Service Contract	Turnkey	Construction	Architectural Engineering	Acquisition of Rolling Stock	Professional Services
I State Grantees							
a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000)		None	Those imposed on state pass thru to Contractor	None	None	None	None
b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		None unless[1] non-competitive award		Yes, if non-competitive award or if funded thru[2] 5307/5309/5311	None unless non-competitive award	None unless non-competitive award	None unless non-competitive award
II Non State Grantees							
a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000)		Yes[3]	Those imposed on non-state Grantee pass thru to Contractor	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		Yes[3]		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Sources of Authority:
[1] 49 USC 5325 (a)

[2] 49 CFR 633.17
[3] 18 CFR 18.36 (i)

Federal Changes

12. FEDERAL CHANGES
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Federal Changes requirement applies to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Federal Changes requirement flows down appropriately to each applicable changed requirement.
Model Clause/Language
No specific language is mandated. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Federal Changes - Contractor shall at all times comply with all applicable FTA regulations, policies, procedures and directives, including without limitation those listed directly or by reference in the Master Agreement between Purchaser and FTA, as they may be amended or promulgated from time to time during the term of this contract. Contractor's failure to so comply shall constitute a material breach of this contract.

Civil Rights Requirements – Mandatory Language

24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS
29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000
42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112
42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332
29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.

Applicability to Contracts
The Civil Rights Requirements apply to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Civil Rights requirements flow down to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier.
Model Clause/Language
The following clause was predicated on language contained at 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, but FTA has shortened the lengthy text.

Civil Rights - The following requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(1) Nondiscrimination - In accordance with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000d, section 303 of the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 6102, section 202 of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, 42 U.S.C. § 12132, and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees that it will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, age, or disability. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with applicable Federal implementing regulations and other implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(2) Equal Employment Opportunity - The following equal employment opportunity requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(a) Race, Color, Creed, National Origin, Sex - In accordance with Title VII of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000e, and Federal transit laws at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable equal employment opportunity requirements of U.S. Department of Labor (U.S. DOL) regulations, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor," 41 C.F.R. Parts 60 et seq., (which implement Executive Order No. 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order No. 11375, "Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," 42 U.S.C. § 2000e note), and with any applicable Federal statutes, executive orders, regulations, and Federal policies that may in the future affect construction activities undertaken in the course of the Project. The Contractor agrees to take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, color, creed, national origin, sex, or age. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion or transfer, recruitment or recruitment advertising, layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. In addition, the Contractor agrees to

comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(b) Age - In accordance with section 4 of the Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967, as amended, 29 U.S.C. § § 623 and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to refrain from discrimination against present and prospective employees for reason of age. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(c) Disabilities - In accordance with section 102 of the Americans with Disabilities Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 12112, the Contractor agrees that it will comply with the requirements of U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, "Regulations to Implement the Equal Employment Provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act," 29 C.F.R. Part 1630, pertaining to employment of persons with disabilities. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(3) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA, modified only if necessary to identify the affected parties.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) – contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs

28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE)

49 CFR Part 26

Background and Applicability

The newest version on the Department of Transportation's Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) program became effective July 16, 2003. The rule provides guidance to grantees on the use of overall and contract goals, requirement to include DBE provisions in subcontracts, evaluating DBE participation where specific contract goals have been set, reporting requirements, and replacement of DBE subcontractors. Additionally, the DBE program dictates payment terms and conditions (including limitations on retainage) applicable to all subcontractors regardless of whether they are DBE firms or not.

The DBE program applies to all DOT-assisted contracting activities. A formal clause such as that below must be included in all contracts above the micro-purchase level. The requirements of clause subsection b flow down to subcontracts.

A substantial change to the payment provisions in this newest version of Part 26 concerns retainage (*see* section 26.29). Grantee choices concerning retainage should be reflected in the language choices in clause subsection d.

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the payment terms and conditions applicable to all subcontractors based in Part 26 as well as those related only to DBE subcontractors. The suggested language allows for the options available to grantees concerning retainage, specific contract goals, and evaluation of DBE subcontracting participation when specific contract goals have been established.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises

a. This contract is subject to the requirements of Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 26, *Participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises in Department of Transportation Financial Assistance Programs.* The national goal for participation of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) is 10%. The agency's overall goal for DBE participation is **__ %.** A separate contract goal **[of __ % DBE participation has] [has not]** been established for this procurement.

b. The contractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of this DOT-assisted contract. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as **{insert agency name}** deems appropriate. Each subcontract the contractor signs with a subcontractor must include the assurance in this paragraph (*see* 49 CFR 26.13(b)).

c. ***{If a separate contract goal has been established, use the following}*** Bidders/offerors are required to document sufficient DBE participation to meet these goals or, alternatively, document adequate good faith efforts to do so, as provided for in 49 CFR 26.53. Award of this contract is conditioned on submission of the following **[concurrent with and accompanying sealed bid] [concurrent with and accompanying an initial proposal] [prior to award]**:

1. The names and addresses of DBE firms that will participate in this contract;

2. A description of the work each DBE will perform;

3. The dollar amount of the participation of each DBE firm participating;

4. Written documentation of the bidder/offeror's commitment to use a DBE subcontractor whose participation it submits to meet the contract goal;

5. Written confirmation from the DBE that it is participating in the contract as provided in the prime contractor's commitment; and

6. If the contract goal is not met, evidence of good faith efforts to do so.

[Bidders][Offerors] must present the information required above **[as a matter of responsiveness] [with initial proposals] [prior to contract award]** (*see* 49 CFR 26.53(3)).

{If no separate contract goal has been established, use the following} The successful bidder/offeror will be required to report its DBE participation obtained through race-neutral means throughout the period of performance.

d. The contractor is required to pay its subcontractors performing work related to this contract for satisfactory performance of that work no later than 30 days after the contractor's receipt of payment for that work from the **{insert agency name}**. In addition, **[the contractor may not hold retainage from its subcontractors.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after the subcontractor's work related to this contract is satisfactorily completed.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after incremental acceptance of the subcontractor's work by the {insert agency name} and contractor's receipt of the partial retainage payment related to the subcontractor's work.]**

e. The contractor must promptly notify **{insert agency name}**, whenever a DBE subcontractor performing work related to this contract is terminated or fails to complete its work, and must make good faith efforts to engage another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work. The contractor may not terminate any DBE subcontractor and perform that work through its own forces or those of an affiliate without prior written consent of **{insert agency name}**.

Incorporation of FTA terms (Per FTA C4220.1F) – Mandatory Language

30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS

FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts

The incorporation of FTA terms applies to all contracts.

Flow Down

The incorporation of FTA terms has unlimited flow down.

Model Clause/Language

FTA has developed the following incorporation of terms language**:**

Incorporation of Federal Transit Administration (FTA) Terms - The preceding provisions include, in part, certain Standard Terms and Conditions required by DOT, whether or not expressly set forth in the preceding contract provisions. All contractual provisions required by DOT, as set forth in FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions, are hereby incorporated by reference. Anything to the contrary herein notwithstanding, all FTA mandated terms shall be deemed to control in the event of a conflict with other provisions contained in this Agreement. The Contractor shall not perform any act, fail to perform any act, or refuse to comply with any (name of grantee) requests which would cause (name of grantee) to be in violation of the FTA terms and conditions.

Energy Conservation

6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS

42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.

49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts

The Energy Conservation requirements are applicable to all contracts.

Flow Down

The Energy Conservation requirements extend to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier and subrecipients and their subagreements at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

No specific clause is recommended in the regulations because the Energy Conservation requirements are so dependent on the state energy conservation plan. The following language has been developed by FTA:

Energy Conservation - The contractor agrees to comply with mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act.

ADA Access

FTA is currently working on a contract clause to incorporate appropriate ADA requirements, but it is not yet available.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000

Termination Provisions

21. TERMINATION

49 U.S.C. Part 18

FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts

All contracts (with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education,) in excess of $10,000 shall contain suitable provisions for termination by the grantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (For contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education the threshold is $100,000.) In addition, such contracts shall describe conditions under which the contract may be terminated for default as well as conditions where the contract may be terminated because of circumstances beyond the control of the contractor.

Flow Down

The termination requirements flow down to all contracts in excess of $10,000, with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher learning.

Model Clause/Language

FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such clauses. The following are suggestions of clauses to be used in different types of contracts:

a. Termination for Convenience (General Provision) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, at any time by written notice to the Contractor when it is in the Government's best interest. The Contractor shall be paid its costs, including contract close-out costs, and profit on work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to (Recipient) to be paid the Contractor. If the Contractor has any property in its possession belonging to the (Recipient), the Contractor will account for the same, and dispose of it in the manner the (Recipient) directs.

b. Termination for Default [Breach or Cause] (General Provision) If the Contractor does not deliver supplies in accordance with the contract delivery schedule, or, if the contract is for services, the Contractor fails to perform in the manner called for in the contract, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of the contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. Termination shall be effected by serving a notice of termination on the contractor setting forth the manner in which the Contractor is in default. The contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in the contract.

If it is later determined by the (Recipient) that the Contractor had an excusable reason for not performing, such as a strike, fire, or flood, events which are not the fault of or are beyond the control of the Contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new delivery of performance schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

c. Opportunity to Cure (General Provision) The (Recipient) in its sole discretion may, in the case of a termination for breach or default, allow the Contractor [an appropriately short period of time] in which to cure the defect. In such case, the notice of termination will state the time period in which cure is permitted and other appropriate conditions

If Contractor fails to remedy to (Recipient)'s satisfaction the breach or default of any of the terms, covenants, or conditions of this Contract within [ten (10) days] after receipt by Contractor of written notice from (Recipient) setting forth the nature of said

breach or default, (Recipient) shall have the right to terminate the Contract without any further obligation to Contractor. Any such termination for default shall not in any way operate to preclude (Recipient) from also pursuing all available remedies against Contractor and its sureties for said breach or default.

d. Waiver of Remedies for any Breach In the event that (Recipient) elects to waive its remedies for any breach by Contractor of any covenant, term or condition of this Contract, such waiver by (Recipient) shall not limit (Recipient)'s remedies for any succeeding breach of that or of any other term, covenant, or condition of this Contract.

e. Termination for Convenience (Professional or Transit Service Contracts) The (Recipient), by written notice, may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, when it is in the Government's interest. If this contract is terminated, the Recipient shall be liable only for payment under the payment provisions of this contract for services rendered before the effective date of termination.

f. Termination for Default (Supplies and Service) If the Contractor fails to deliver supplies or to perform the services within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner or performance set forth in this contract.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

g. Termination for Default (Transportation Services) If the Contractor fails to pick up the commodities or to perform the services, including delivery services, within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in this contract.

If this contract is terminated while the Contractor has possession of Recipient goods, the Contractor shall, upon direction of the (Recipient), protect and preserve the goods until surrendered to the Recipient or its agent. The Contractor and (Recipient) shall agree on payment for the preservation and protection of goods. Failure to agree on an amount will be resolved under the Dispute clause.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the (Recipient).

h. Termination for Default (Construction) If the Contractor refuses or fails to prosecute the work or any separable part, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the time specified in this contract or any extension or fails to complete the work within this time, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. In this event, the Recipient may take over the work and compete it by contract or otherwise, and may take possession of and use any materials, appliances, and plant on the work site necessary for completing the work. The Contractor and its sureties shall be liable for any damage to the Recipient resulting from the Contractor's refusal or failure to complete the work within specified time, whether or not the Contractor's right to proceed with the work is terminated. This liability includes any increased costs incurred by the Recipient in completing the work.

The Contractor's right to proceed shall not be terminated nor the Contractor charged with damages under this clause if-

1. the delay in completing the work arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor. Examples of such causes include: acts of God, acts of the Recipient, acts of another Contractor in the performance of a contract with the Recipient, epidemics, quarantine restrictions, strikes, freight embargoes; and

2. the contractor, within [10] days from the beginning of any delay, notifies the (Recipient) in writing of the causes of delay. If in the judgment of the (Recipient), the delay is excusable, the time for completing the work shall be extended. The judgment of the (Recipient) shall be final and conclusive on the parties, but subject to appeal under the Disputes clauses.

If, after termination of the Contractor's right to proceed, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, or that the delay was excusable, the rights and obligations of the parties will be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

i. Termination for Convenience or Default (Architect and Engineering) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract in whole or in part, for the Recipient's convenience or because of the failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature, extent, and effective date of the termination. Upon receipt of the notice, the Contractor shall (1) immediately discontinue all services affected (unless the notice directs otherwise), and (2) deliver to the Contracting Officer all data, drawings, specifications, reports, estimates, summaries, and other information and materials accumulated in performing this contract, whether completed or in process.

If the termination is for the convenience of the Recipient, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment in the contract price but shall allow no anticipated profit on unperformed services.

If the termination is for failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations, the Recipient may complete the work by contact or otherwise and the Contractor shall be liable for any additional cost incurred by the Recipient.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

j. Termination for Convenience of Default (Cost-Type Contracts) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, or any portion of it, by serving a notice or termination on the Contractor. The notice shall state whether the termination is for convenience of the (Recipient) or for the default of the Contractor. If the termination is for default, the notice shall state the manner in which the contractor has failed to perform the requirements of the contract. The Contractor shall account for any property in its possession paid for from funds received from the (Recipient), or property supplied to the Contractor by the (Recipient). If the termination is for default, the (Recipient) may fix the fee, if the contract provides for a fee, to be paid the contractor in proportion to the value, if any, of work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to the (Recipient) and the parties shall negotiate the termination settlement to be paid the Contractor.

If the termination is for the convenience of the (Recipient), the Contractor shall be paid its contract close-out costs, and a fee, if the contract provided for payment of a fee, in proportion to the work performed up to the time of termination.

If, after serving a notice of termination for default, the (Recipient) determines that the Contractor has an excusable reason for not performing, such as strike, fire, flood, events which are not the fault of and are beyond the control of the contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new work schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000

Suspension and Debarment

22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)

Background and Applicability

In conjunction with the Office of Management and Budget and other affected Federal agencies, DOT published an update to 49 CFR Part 29 on November 26, 2003. This government-wide regulation implements Executive Order 12549, *Debarment and Suspension*, Executive Order 12689, *Debarment and Suspension*, and 31 U.S.C. 6101 note (Section 2455, Public Law 103-355, 108 Stat. 3327).

The provisions of Part 29 apply to all grantee contracts and subcontracts at any level expected to equal or exceed $25,000 as well as any contract or subcontract (at any level) for Federally required auditing services. 49 CFR 29.220(b). This represents a change from prior practice in that the dollar threshold for application of these rules has been lowered from $100,000 to $25,000. These are contracts and subcontracts referred to in the regulation as “covered transactions.”

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors (at any level) that enter into covered transactions are required to verify that the entity (as well as its principals and affiliates) they propose to contract or subcontract with is not excluded or disqualified. They do this

by (a) Checking the Excluded Parties List System, (b) Collecting a certification from that person, or (c) Adding a clause or condition to the contract or subcontract. This represents a change from prior practice in that certification is still acceptable but is no longer required. 49 CFR 29.300.

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors who enter into covered transactions also must require the entities they contract with to comply with 49 CFR 29, subpart C and include this requirement in their own subsequent covered transactions (i.e., the requirement flows down to subcontracts at all levels).

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the optional method of verifying that contractors are not excluded or disqualified by certification.

Suspension and Debarment

> This contract is a covered transaction for purposes of 49 CFR Part 29. As such, the contractor is required to verify that none of the contractor, its principals, as defined at 49 CFR 29.995, or affiliates, as defined at 49 CFR 29.905, are excluded or disqualified as defined at 49 CFR 29.940 and 29.945.
>
> The contractor is required to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C and must include the requirement to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C in any lower tier covered transaction it enters into.
> By signing and submitting its bid or proposal, the bidder or proposer certifies as follows:

The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact relied upon by **{insert agency name}**. If it is later determined that the bidder or proposer knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to remedies available to **{insert agency name}**, the Federal Government may pursue available remedies, including but not limited to suspension and/or debarment. The bidder or proposer agrees to comply with the requirements of 49 CFR 29, Subpart C while this offer is valid and throughout the period of any contract that may arise from this offer. The bidder or proposer further agrees to include a provision requiring such compliance in its lower tier covered transactions.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000

Buy America – Mandatory Language

2. BUY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323(j)
49 CFR Part 661

Applicability to Contracts

The Buy America requirements apply to the following types of contracts: Construction Contracts and Acquisition of Goods or Rolling Stock (valued at more than $100,000).

Flow Down

The Buy America requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors, who are responsible for ensuring that lower tier contractors and subcontractors are in compliance. The $100,000 threshold applies only to the grantee contract, subcontracts under that amount are subject to Buy America.

Clause/Language

The Buy America regulation, at 49 CFR 661.13, requires notification of the Buy America requirements in FTA-funded contracts, but does not specify the language to be used. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Buy America - The contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j) and 49 C.F.R. Part 661, which provide that Federal funds may not be obligated unless steel, iron, and manufactured products used in FTA-funded projects are produced in the United States, unless a waiver has been granted by FTA or the product is subject to a general waiver. General waivers are listed in 49 C.F.R. 661.7, and include final assembly in the United States for 15 passenger vans and 15 passenger wagons produced by Chrysler Corporation, and microcomputer equipment and software. Separate requirements for rolling stock are set out at 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and 49 C.F.R. 661.11. Rolling stock must be assembled in the United States and have a 60 percent domestic content.

A bidder or offeror must submit to the FTA recipient the appropriate Buy America certification (below) with all bids or offers on FTA-funded contracts, except those subject to a general waiver. Bids or offers that are not accompanied by a completed Buy

America certification must be rejected as nonresponsive. This requirement does not apply to lower tier subcontractors.

Certification requirement for procurement of steel, iron, or manufactured products.

Certificate of Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it will meet the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1) and the applicable regulations in 49 C.F.R. Part 661.5.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title _____

Certificate of Non-Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it cannot comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1) and 49 C.F.R. 661.5, but it may qualify for an exception pursuant to 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(A), 5323(j)(2)(B), or 5323(j)(2)(D), and 49 C.F.R. 661.7.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title _____

Certification requirement for procurement of buses, other rolling stock and associated equipment.

Certificate of Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C).

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it will comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and the regulations at 49 C.F.R. Part 661.11.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title _____

Certificate of Non-Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it cannot comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and 49 C.F.R. 661.11, but may qualify for an exception pursuant to 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(A), 5323(j)(2)(B), or 5323(j)(2)(D), and 49 CFR 661.7.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title

Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation

25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION
49 CFR Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
All contracts in excess of $100,000 shall contain provisions or conditions which will allow for administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. This may

include provisions for bonding, penalties for late or inadequate performance, retained earnings, liquidated damages or other appropriate measures.

Flow Down

The Breaches and Dispute Resolutions requirements flow down to all tiers.

Model Clauses/Language

FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such provisions. What provisions are developed will depend on the circumstances and the type of contract. Recipients should consult legal counsel in developing appropriate clauses. The following clauses are examples of provisions from various FTA third party contracts.

Disputes - Disputes arising in the performance of this Contract which are not resolved by agreement of the parties shall be decided in writing by the authorized representative of (Recipient)'s [title of employee]. This decision shall be final and conclusive unless within [ten (10)] days from the date of receipt of its copy, the Contractor mails or otherwise furnishes a written appeal to the [title of employee]. In connection with any such appeal, the Contractor shall be afforded an opportunity to be heard and to offer evidence in support of its position. The decision of the [title of employee] shall be binding upon the Contractor and the Contractor shall abide be the decision.

Performance During Dispute - Unless otherwise directed by (Recipient), Contractor shall continue performance under this Contract while matters in dispute are being resolved.

Claims for Damages - Should either party to the Contract suffer injury or damage to person or property because of any act or omission of the party or of any of his employees, agents or others for whose acts he is legally liable, a claim for damages therefor shall be made in writing to such other party within a reasonable time after the first observance of such injury of damage.

Remedies - Unless this contract provides otherwise, all claims, counterclaims, disputes and other matters in question between the (Recipient) and the Contractor arising out of or relating to this agreement or its breach will be decided by arbitration if the parties mutually agree, or in a court of competent jurisdiction within the State in which the (Recipient) is located.

Rights and Remedies - The duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and the rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of any duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law. No action or failure to act by the (Recipient), (Architect) or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of any right or duty afforded any of them under the Contract, nor shall any such action or failure to act constitute an approval of or acquiescence in any breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.

Lobbying – Mandatory Language

10. LOBBYING
31 U.S.C. 1352
49 CFR Part 19
49 CFR Part 20

Applicability to Contracts

The Lobbying requirements apply to Construction/Architectural and Engineering/Acquisition of Rolling Stock/Professional Service Contract/Operational Service Contract/Turnkey contracts.

Flow Down

The Lobbying requirements mandate the maximum flow down, pursuant to Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. § 1352(b)(5) and 49 C.F.R. Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7.

Mandatory Clause/Language

Clause and specific language therein are mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Clause pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, *et seq.*]

- Lobbying Certification and Disclosure of Lobbying Activities for third party contractors are mandated by 31 U.S.C. 1352(b)(5), as amended by Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, and DOT implementing regulation, "New Restrictions on

Lobbying," at 49 CFR § 20.110(d)

- Language in Lobbying Certification is mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7, which provides that contractors file the certification required by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Lobbying Certification pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995.

- Use of "Disclosure of Lobbying Activities," Standard Form-LLL set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR Part 20, as amended by "Government wide Guidance For New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96) is mandated by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. 1352, as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, et seq.] - Contractors who apply or bid for an award of $100,000 or more shall file the certification required by 49 CFR part 20, "New Restrictions on Lobbying." Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier shall also disclose the name of any registrant under the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 who has made lobbying contacts on its behalf with non-Federal funds with respect to that Federal contract, grant or award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the recipient.

APPENDIX A, 49 CFR PART 20--CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING

Certification for Contracts, Grants, Loans, and Cooperative Agreements

(To be submitted with each bid or offer exceeding $100,000)

The undersigned [Contractor] certifies, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for making lobbying contacts to an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form--LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions [as amended by "Government wide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96). Note: Language in paragraph (2) herein has been modified in accordance with Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 (P.L. 104-65, to be codified at 2 U.S.C. 1601, *et seq.*)]

(3) The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31, U.S.C. § 1352 (as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995). Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such failure.

[Note: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. § 1352(c)(1)-(2)(A), any person who makes a prohibited expenditure or fails to file or amend a required certification or disclosure form shall be subject to
a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such expenditure or failure.]

The Contractor, _____, certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of each statement of its certification and disclosure, if any. In addition, the Contractor understands and agrees that the provisions of 31 U.S.C. A 3801, *et seq.,* apply to this certification and disclosure, if any.

_____ Signature of Contractor's Authorized Official

_____ Name and Title of Contractor's Authorized Official

_____ Date

Clean Air

14. CLEAN AIR

42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq

40 CFR 15.61

49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts

The Clean Air requirements apply to all contracts exceeding $100,000, including indefinite quantities where the amount is expected to exceed $100,000 in any year.

Flow Down

The Clean Air requirements flow down to all subcontracts which exceed $100,000.

Model Clauses/Language

No specific language is required. FTA has proposed the following language.

Clean Air - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. §§ 7401 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the
Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Clean Water

7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS

33 U.S.C. 1251

Applicability to Contracts

The Clean Water requirements apply to each contract and subcontract which exceeds $100,000.

Flow Down

The Clean Water requirements flow down to FTA recipients and subrecipients at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

While no mandatory clause is contained in the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, the following language developed by FTA contains all the mandatory requirements:

Clean Water - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, 33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Bonding

13. BONDING REQUIREMENTS

Applicability to Contracts

For those construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding $100,000, FTA may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the recipient, provided that they meet the minimum requirements for construction contracts as follows:

a. A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five (5) percent of the bid price. The "bid guarantees" shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certifies check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

b. A performance bond on the part to the Contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

c. A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "payment bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment, as required by law, of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract. Payment bond amounts required from Contractors are as follows:

(1) 50% of the contract price if the contract price is not more than $1 million;

(2) 40% of the contract price if the contract price is more than $1 million but not more than $5 million; or

(3) $2.5 million if the contract price is more than $5 million.

d. A cash deposit, certified check or other negotiable instrument may be accepted by a grantee in lieu of performance and payment bonds, provided the grantee has established a procedure to assure that the interest of FTA is adequately protected. An irrevocable letter of credit would also satisfy the requirement for a bond.

Flow Down

Bonding requirements flow down to the first tier contractors.

Model Clauses/Language

FTA does not prescribe specific wording to be included in third party contracts. FTA has prepared sample clauses as follows:

Bid Bond Requirements (Construction)

(a) Bid Security

A Bid Bond must be issued by a fully qualified surety company acceptable to (Recipient) and listed as a company currently authorized under 31 CFR, Part 223 as possessing a Certificate of Authority as described thereunder.

(b) Rights Reserved

In submitting this Bid, it is understood and agreed by bidder that the right is reserved by (Recipient) to reject any and all bids, or part of any bid, and it is agreed that the Bid may not be withdrawn for a period of [ninety (90)] days subsequent to the opening of bids, without the written consent of (Recipient).

It is also understood and agreed that if the undersigned bidder should withdraw any part or all of his bid within [ninety (90)] days after the bid opening without the written consent of (Recipient), shall refuse or be unable to enter into this Contract, as provided above, or refuse or be unable to furnish adequate and acceptable Performance Bonds and Labor and Material Payments Bonds, as provided above, or refuse or be unable to furnish adequate and acceptable insurance, as provided above, he shall forfeit his bid security to the extent of (Recipient's) damages occasioned by such withdrawal, or refusal, or inability to enter into an agreement, or provide adequate security therefor.

It is further understood and agreed that to the extent the defaulting bidder's Bid Bond, Certified Check, Cashier's Check, Treasurer's Check, and/or Official Bank Check (excluding any income generated thereby which has been retained by (Recipient) as provided in [Item x "Bid Security" of the Instructions to Bidders]) shall prove inadequate to fully recompense (Recipient) for the damages occasioned by default, then the undersigned bidder agrees to indemnify (Recipient) and pay over to (Recipient) the difference between the bid security and (Recipient's) total damages, so as to make (Recipient) whole.

The undersigned understands that any material alteration of any of the above or any of the material contained on this form, other than that requested, will render the bid unresponsive.

Performance and Payment Bonding Requirements (Construction)

The Contractor shall be required to obtain performance and payment bonds as follows:

(a) Performance bonds

1. The penal amount of performance bonds shall be 100 percent of the original contract price, unless the (Recipient) determines that a lesser amount would be adequate for the protection of the (Recipient).

2. The (Recipient) may require additional performance bond protection when a contract price is increased. The increase in protection shall generally equal 100 percent of the increase in contract price. The (Recipient) may secure additional protection by directing the Contractor to increase the penal amount of the existing bond or to obtain an additional bond.

(b) Payment bonds

1. The penal amount of the payment bonds shall equal:

(i) Fifty percent of the contract price if the contract price is not more than $1 million.

(ii) Forty percent of the contract price if the contract price is more than $1 million but not more than $5 million; or

(iii) Two and one half million if the contract price is more than $5 million.

2. If the original contract price is $5 million or less, the (Recipient) may require additional protection as required by subparagraph 1 if the contract price is increased.

Performance and Payment Bonding Requirements (Non-Construction)

The Contractor may be required to obtain performance and payment bonds when necessary to protect the (Recipient's) interest.

(a) The following situations may warrant a performance bond:

1. (Recipient) property or funds are to be provided to the contractor for use in performing the contract or as partial compensation (as in retention of salvaged material).

2. A contractor sells assets to or merges with another concern, and the (Recipient), after recognizing the latter concern as the successor in interest, desires assurance that it is financially capable.

3. Substantial progress payments are made before delivery of end items starts.

4. Contracts are for dismantling, demolition, or removal of improvements.

(b) When it is determined that a performance bond is required, the Contractor shall be required to obtain performance bonds as follows:

1. The penal amount of performance bonds shall be 100 percent of the original contract price, unless the (Recipient) determines that a lesser amount would be adequate for the protection of the (Recipient).

2. The (Recipient) may require additional performance bond protection when a contract price is increased. The increase in protection shall generally equal 100 percent of the increase in contract price. The (Recipient) may secure additional protection by directing the Contractor to increase the penal amount of the existing bond or to obtain an additional bond.

(c) A payment bond is required only when a performance bond is required, and if the use of payment bond is in the (Recipient's) interest.

(d) When it is determined that a payment bond is required, the Contractor shall be required to obtain payment bonds as follows:

1. The penal amount of payment bonds shall equal:

(i) Fifty percent of the contract price if the contract price is not more than $1 million;

(ii) Forty percent of the contract price if the contract price is more than $1 million but not more than $5 million; or

(iii) Two and one half million if the contract price is increased.

Advance Payment Bonding Requirements

The Contractor may be required to obtain an advance payment bond if the contract contains an advance payment provision and a performance bond is not furnished. The (recipient) shall determine the amount of the advance payment bond necessary to protect the (Recipient).

Patent Infringement Bonding Requirements (Patent Indemnity)

The Contractor may be required to obtain a patent indemnity bond if a performance bond is not furnished and the financial responsibility of the Contractor is unknown or doubtful. The (recipient) shall determine the amount of the patent indemnity to protect the (Recipient).

Warranty of the Work and Maintenance Bonds

1. The Contractor warrants to (Recipient), the Architect and/or Engineer that all materials and equipment furnished under this Contract will be of highest quality and new unless otherwise specified by (Recipient), free from faults and defects and in conformance with the Contract Documents. All work not so conforming to these standards shall be considered defective. If required by the [Project Manager], the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

2. The Work furnished must be of first quality and the workmanship must be the best obtainable in the various trades. The Work must be of safe, substantial and durable construction in all respects. The Contractor hereby guarantees the Work against defective materials or faulty workmanship for a minimum period of one (1) year after Final Payment by (Recipient) and shall replace or repair any defective materials or equipment or faulty workmanship during the period of the guarantee at no cost to (Recipient). As additional security for these guarantees, the Contractor shall, prior to the release of Final Payment [as provided in Item X below], furnish separate Maintenance (or Guarantee) Bonds in form acceptable to (Recipient) written by the same corporate surety that provides the Performance Bond and Labor and Material Payment Bond for this Contract. These bonds shall secure the Contractor's obligation to replace or repair defective materials and faulty workmanship for a minimum period of one (1) year after Final Payment and shall be written in an amount equal to ONE HUNDRED PERCENT (100%) of the CONTRACT SUM, as adjusted (if at all).

Davis Bacon Act – greater than $2,000 (including ferry vessels) Copeland Anti-Kickback Act – greater than $100,000 (including ferry vessels) – Mandatory Language

16. DAVIS-BACON AND COPELAND ANTI-KICKBACK ACTS

Background and Application

The Davis-Bacon and Copeland Acts are codified at 40 USC 3141, *et seq.* and 18 USC 874. The Acts apply to grantee construction contracts and subcontracts that "at least partly are financed by a loan or grant from the Federal Government." 40 USC 3145(a), 29 CFR 5.2(h), 49 CFR 18.36(i)(5). The Acts apply to any construction contract over $2,000. 40 USC 3142(a), 29 CFR 5.5(a). 'Construction,' for purposes of the Acts, includes "actual construction, alteration and/or repair, including painting and decorating." 29 CFR 5.5(a). The requirements of both Acts are incorporated into a single clause (*see* 29 CFR 3.11) enumerated at 29 CFR 5.5(a) and reproduced below.

The clause language is drawn directly from 29 CFR 5.5(a) and any deviation from the model clause below should be coordinated with counsel to ensure the Acts' requirements are satisfied.

Clause Language

Davis-Bacon and Copeland Anti-Kickback Acts

(1) **Minimum wages** - (i) All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937 or under the Housing Act of 1949 in the construction or development of the project), will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the contractor and such laborers and mechanics.

Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph (1)(iv) of this section; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in 29 CFR Part 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: Provided, That the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classifications and wage rates conformed under paragraph (1)(ii) of this section) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.

(ii)(A) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:

(1) Except with respect to helpers as defined as 29 CFR 5.2(n)(4), the work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and

(2) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and

(3) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination; and

(4) With respect to helpers as defined in 29 CFR 5.2(n)(4), such a classification prevails in the area in which the work is performed.

(B) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(C) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Administrator for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the

contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(D) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to paragraphs (a)(1)(ii) (B) or (C) of this section, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.

(iii) Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.

(iv) If the contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program, Provided, That the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.

(v)(A) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefor only when the following criteria have been met:

(1) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and

(2) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and

(3) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.

(B) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(C) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Administrator for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination with 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(D) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to paragraphs (a)(1)(v) (B) or (C) of this section, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the
classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.

(2) **Withholding** - The [***insert name of grantee***] shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld from the contractor under this contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937 or under the Housing Act of 1949 in the construction or development of the project), all or part of the wages required by the contract, the [***insert name of grantee***] may, after written notice to the contractor, sponsor, applicant, or owner, take such action

as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.

(3) **Payrolls and basic records** - (i) Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937, or under the Housing Act of 1949, in the construction or development of the project). Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.

(ii)(A) The contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the [***insert name of grantee***] for transmission to the Federal Transit Administration. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under section 5.5(a)(3)(i) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5. This information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 is available for this purpose and may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents (Federal Stock Number 029-005-00014-1), U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors.

(B) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:

(1) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be maintained under section 5.5(a)(3)(i) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5 and that such information is correct and complete;

(2) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in Regulations, 29 CFR part 3;

(3) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.

(C) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph (a)(3)(ii)(B) of this section.

(D) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under section 1001 of title 18 and section 231 of title 31 of the United States Code.

(iii) The contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph (a)(3)(i) of this section available for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of the Federal Transit Administration or the Department of Labor, and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, the Federal agency may, after written notice to the contractor, sponsor, applicant, or owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR 5.12.
(4) **Apprentices and trainees** - (i) Apprentices - Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training,

or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Bureau, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice. The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed. Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division of the U.S. Department of Labor determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination. In the event the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Bureau, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(ii) Trainees - Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration. The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration. Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(iii) Equal employment opportunity - The utilization of apprentices, trainees and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR part 30.

(5) **Compliance with Copeland Act requirements** - The contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR part 3, which are incorporated by reference in this contract.

(6) **Subcontracts** - The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses contained in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1) through (10) and such other clauses as the Federal Transit Administration may by appropriate instructions require, and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5.

(7) **Contract termination: debarment** - A breach of the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5 may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.

(8) **Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act requirements** - All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related

Acts contained in 29 CFR parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.

(9) **Disputes concerning labor standards** - Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this contract shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 CFR parts 5, 6, and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.

(10) **Certification of eligibility** - (i) By entering into this contract, the contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

(ii) No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

(iii) The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.

Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act (including ferry vessels)

17. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT

Background and Application

The Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act is codified at 40 USC 3701, *et seq.* The Act applies to grantee contracts and subcontracts "financed at least in part by loans or grants from … the [Federal] Government." 40 USC 3701(b)(1)(B)(iii) and (b)(2), 29 CFR 5.2(h), 49 CFR 18.36(i)(6). Although the original Act required its application in any construction contract over $2,000 or non-construction contract to which the Act applied over $2,500 (and language to that effect is still found in 49 CFR 18.36(i)(6)), the Act no longer applies to any "contract in an amount that is not greater than $100,000." 40 USC 3701(b)(3) (A)(iii).

The Act applies to construction contracts and, in very limited circumstances, non-construction projects that employ "laborers or mechanics on a public work." These non-construction applications do not generally apply to transit procurements because transit procurements (to include rail cars and buses) are deemed "commercial items." 40 USC 3707, 41 USC 403 (12). A grantee that contemplates entering into a contract to procure a developmental or unique item should consult counsel to determine if the Act applies to that procurement and that additional language required by 29 CFR 5.5(c) must be added to the basic clause below.

The clause language is drawn directly from 29 CFR 5.5(b) and any deviation from the model clause below should be coordinated with counsel to ensure the Act's requirements are satisfied.

Clause Language

Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards

(1) **Overtime requirements** - No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.

(2) **Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages** - In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section, in the sum of $10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section.

(3) **Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages** - The (***write in the name of the grantee***) shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal

contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (2) of this section.

(4) **Subcontracts** - The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this section.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve property that may be transported by ocean vessel

Cargo Preference

4. CARGO PREFERENCE REQUIREMENTS
46 U.S.C. 1241
46 CFR Part 381

Applicability to Contracts
The Cargo Preference requirements apply to all contracts involving equipment, materials, or commodities which may be transported by ocean vessels.

Flow Down
The Cargo Preference requirements apply to all subcontracts when the subcontract may be involved with the transport of equipment, material, or commodities by ocean vessel.

Model Clause/Language
The MARAD regulations at 46 CFR 381.7 contain suggested contract clauses. The following language is proffered by FTA.

Cargo Preference - Use of United States-Flag Vessels - The contractor agrees: a. to use privately owned United States-Flag commercial vessels to ship at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers) involved, whenever shipping any equipment, material, or commodities pursuant to the underlying contract to the extent such vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for United States-Flag commercial vessels; b. to furnish within 20 working days following the date of loading for shipments originating within the United States or within 30 working days following the date of leading for shipments originating outside the United States, a legible copy of a rated, "on-board" commercial ocean bill-of -lading in English for each shipment of cargo described in the preceding paragraph to the Division of National Cargo, Office of Market Development, Maritime Administration, Washington, DC 20590 and to the FTA recipient (through the contractor in the case of a subcontractor's bill-of-lading.) c. to include these requirements in all subcontracts issued pursuant to this contract when the subcontract may involve the transport of equipment, material, or commodities by ocean vessel.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air

Fly America

10. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. § 40118
41 CFR Part 301-10

Applicability to Contracts
The Fly America requirements apply to the transportation of persons or property, by air, between a place in the U.S. and a place outside the U.S., or between places outside the U.S., when the FTA will participate in the costs of such air transportation. Transportation on a foreign air carrier is permissible when provided by a foreign air carrier under a code share agreement when the ticket identifies the U.S. air carrier's designator code and flight number. Transportation by a foreign air carrier is also permissible if there is a bilateral or multilateral air transportation agreement to which the U.S. Government and a foreign government are parties and which the Federal DOT has determined meets the requirements of the Fly America Act.

Flow Down Requirements
The Fly America requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors, who are responsible for ensuring that lower tier contractors and subcontractors are in compliance.

Model Clause/Language
The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specified clause or language. FTA proposes the following language.

Fly America Requirements

The Contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 40118 (the "Fly America" Act) in accordance with the General Services Administration's regulations at 41 CFR Part 301-10, which provide that recipients and subrecipients of Federal funds and their contractors are required to use U.S. Flag air carriers for U.S Government-financed international air travel and transportation of their personal effects or property, to the extent such service is available, unless travel by foreign air carrier is a matter of necessity, as defined by the Fly America Act. The Contractor shall submit, if a foreign air carrier was used, an appropriate certification or memorandum adequately explaining why service by a U.S. flag air carrier was not available or why it was necessary to use a foreign air carrier and shall, in any event, provide a certificate of compliance with the Fly America requirements. The Contractor agrees to include the requirements of this section in all subcontracts that may involve international air transportation.

Applicable Federal Clauses – New Buildings and Additions

Seismic Safety – New Buildings & Additions

5. SEISMIC SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
42 U.S.C. 7701 et seq. 49
CFR Part 41

Applicability to Contracts
The Seismic Safety requirements apply only to contracts for the construction of new buildings or additions to existing buildings.
Flow Down
The Seismic Safety requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors to assure compliance, with the applicable building standards for Seismic Safety, including the work performed by all subcontractors.
Model Clauses/Language
The regulations do not provide suggested language for third-party contract clauses. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Seismic Safety - The contractor agrees that any new building or addition to an existing building will be designed and constructed in accordance with the standards for Seismic Safety required in Department of Transportation Seismic Safety Regulations 49 CFR Part 41 and will certify to compliance to the extent required by the regulation. The contractor also agrees to ensure that all work performed under this contract including work performed by a subcontractor is in compliance with the standards required by the Seismic Safety Regulations and the certification of compliance issued on the project.

Applicable Federal Clauses – Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year

Recycled Products

15. RECYCLED PRODUCTS
42 U.S.C. 6962
40 CFR Part 247
Executive Order 12873

Applicability to Contracts
The Recycled Products requirements apply to all contracts for items designated by the EPA, when the purchaser or contractor procures $10,000 or more of one of these items during the fiscal year, or has procured $10,000 or more of such items in the previous fiscal year, using Federal funds. New requirements for "recovered materials" will become effective May 1, 1996. These new regulations apply to all procurement actions involving items designated by the EPA, where the procuring agency purchases $10,000 or more of one of these items in a fiscal year, or when the cost of such items purchased during the previous fiscal year was $10,000.
Flow Down
These requirements flow down to all to all contractor and subcontractor tiers.
Model Clause/Language
No specific clause is mandated, but FTA has developed the following language.

Recovered Materials - The contractor agrees to comply with all the requirements of Section 6002 of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), as amended (42 U.S.C. 6962), including but not limited to the regulatory provisions of 40 CFR Part 247, and Executive Order 12873, as they apply to the procurement of the items designated in Subpart B of 40 CFR Part 247.

Applicable Federal Clauses **Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000**	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES	
20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS **31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001** **49 U.S.C. 5307**	
11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS **49 U.S.C. 5325** **18 CFR 18.36 (i)** **49 CFR 633.17**	
12. FEDERAL CHANGES **49 CFR Part 18**	
24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS **29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000** **42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112** **42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332** **29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.**	
28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) **49 CFR Part 26**	
30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 18**	
Does procurement exhibit Geographic Preference? **For reference purposes: 49 CFR 18.36 (c)(1)(2) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 2.a (4)(g)**	
Has proposed contracted entity been verified that they are not excluded or disqualified through the Excluded Parties List System (EPLS)? **For reference purposes: https://www.sam.gov/portal/public/SAM/**	
Has an adequate number of sources been solicited?	
Has applicable ADA language been included?	
Has an adequate cost analysis been performed? **For reference purposes: 49 CFR 18.36 (f)(1) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 6**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
21. TERMINATION **49 U.S.C. Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**

22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
2. BUY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(j)** **49 CFR Part 661**	
25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION **49 CFR Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
10. LOBBYING **31 U.S.C. 1352** **49 CFR Part 19** **49 CFR Part 20**	
14. CLEAN AIR **42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq** **40 CFR 15.61** **49 CFR Part 18**	
7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS **33 U.S.C. 1251**	
13. BONDING REQUIREMENTS	
16. DAVIS-BACON AND COPELAND ANTI-KICKBACK ACTS	
17. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve property that may be transported by ocean vessel	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
4. CARGO PREFERENCE REQUIREMENTS **46 U.S.C. 1241** **46 CFR Part 381**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
11. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 40118** **41 CFR Part 301-10**	
Applicable Federal Clauses – New Buildings and Additions	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
5. SEISMIC SAFETY REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 7701 et seq. 49 CFR Part 41**	
Applicable Federal Clauses – Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
15. RECYCLED PRODUCTS **42 U.S.C. 6962** **40 CFR Part 247** **Executive Order 12873**	

Approval: Subrecipient_____Date:_____

Approval: Florida Department of Transportation_____Date:_____

When procuring materials and supplies the following steps should be taken:

9. Determine the method of procurement (i.e., Micro Purchase, Small Purchase, RFP, Sealed Bid, etc.).
10. Apply applicable Federal clauses based on method of procurement (cost of purchase).

Materials and Supplies - (i.e., Replacement Parts, Office Supplies, Fuel, etc.)	
Methods of Procurement	Micro Purchases: Procurements less than $2,500 Small Purchases: Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000 Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals): Procurements greater than $35,000
Applicable Federal Clauses **Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000**	
No Government Obligation to Third Parties	
19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES	
Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts	
20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS **31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001** **49 U.S.C. 5307**	
Access to Records	
11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS **49 U.S.C. 5325** **18 CFR 18.36 (i)** **49 CFR 633.17**	
Federal Changes	
12. FEDERAL CHANGES **49 CFR Part 18**	
Civil Rights Requirements – Mandatory Language	
24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS **29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000** **42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112** **42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332** **29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.**	
Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) – contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs	
28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) **49 CFR Part 26**	
Incorporation of FTA terms (Per FTA C4220.1F) – Mandatory Language	
30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
Energy Conservation	
6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 18**	
ADA Access	
FTA is currently working on a contract clause to incorporate appropriate ADA requirements, but it is not yet available.	

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000
Termination Provisions
21. TERMINATION **49 U.S.C. Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000
Suspension and Debarment
22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000
Buy America (for steel, iron, manufactured products) – Mandatory Language
2. BUY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(j)** **49 CFR Part 661**
Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation
25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION **49 CFR Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**
Lobbying – Mandatory Language
10. LOBBYING **31 U.S.C. 1352** **49 CFR Part 19** **49 CFR Part 20**
Clean Air
14. CLEAN AIR **42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq** **40 CFR 15.61** **49 CFR Part 18**
Clean Water
7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS **33 U.S.C. 1251**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve property that may be transported by ocean vessel
Cargo Preference
4. CARGO PREFERENCE REQUIREMENTS **46 U.S.C. 1241** **46 CFR Part 381**
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air
Fly America
12. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 40118** **41 CFR Part 301-10**
Applicable Federal Clauses – Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year
Recycled Products
15. RECYCLED PRODUCTS **42 U.S.C. 6962** **40 CFR Part 247** **Executive Order 12873**

Below are the applicable clauses that were listed above with suggested or mandatory language. Those clauses with mandatory language are noted.

Materials and Supplies - (i.e., Replacement Parts, Office Supplies, Fuel, etc.)	
Methods of Procurement	Micro Purchase: Procurements less than $2,500 Small Purchases: Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000 Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals): Procurements greater than $35,000

Applicable Federal Clauses

Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000

No Government Obligation to Third Parties

19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES

Applicability to Contracts
Applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
Not required by statute or regulation for either primary contractors or subcontractors, this concept should flow down to all levels to clarify, to all parties to the contract, that the Federal Government does not have contractual liability to third parties, absent specific written consent.
Model Clause/Language
While no specific language is required, FTA has developed the following language.

No Obligation by the Federal Government.

(1) The Purchaser and Contractor acknowledge and agree that, notwithstanding any concurrence by the Federal Government in or approval of the solicitation or award of the underlying contract, absent the express written consent by the Federal Government, the Federal Government is not a party to this contract and shall not be subject to any obligations or liabilities to the Purchaser, Contractor, or any other party (whether or not a party to that contract) pertaining to any matter resulting from the underlying contract.

(2) The Contractor agrees to include the above clause in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clause shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to its provisions.

Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts

20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS
31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.
49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001
49 U.S.C. 5307

Applicability to Contracts
These requirements are applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
These requirements flow down to contractors and subcontractors who make, present, or submit covered claims and statements.
Model Clause/Language
These requirements have no specified language, so FTA proffers the following language.
Program Fraud and False or Fraudulent Statements or Related Acts.

(1) The Contractor acknowledges that the provisions of the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986, as amended, 31 U.S.C. §

3801 et seq. and U.S. DOT regulations, "Program Fraud Civil Remedies," 49 C.F.R. Part 31, apply to its actions pertaining to this Project. Upon execution of the underlying contract, the Contractor certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of any statement it has made, it makes, it may make, or causes to be made, pertaining to the underlying contract or the FTA assisted project for which this contract work is being performed. In addition to other penalties that may be applicable, the Contractor further acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification, the Federal Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986 on the Contractor to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(2) The Contractor also acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification to the Federal Government under a contract connected with a project that is financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance originally awarded by FTA under the authority of 49 U.S.C. § 5307, the Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of 18 U.S.C. § 1001 and 49 U.S.C. § 5307(n)(1) on the Contractor, to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(3) The Contractor agrees to include the above two clauses in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clauses shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to the provisions.

Access to Records

11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS
49 U.S.C. 5325
18 CFR 18.36 (i)
49 CFR 633.17

Applicability to Contracts
Reference Chart "Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Type of Contracts"
Flow Down
FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.
Model Clause/Language
The specified language is not mandated by the statutes or regulations referenced, but the language provided paraphrases the statutory or regulatory language.

Access to Records - The following access to records requirements apply to this Contract:

1. Where the Purchaser is not a State but a local government and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 18.36(i), the Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their authorized representatives access to any books, documents, papers and records of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions. Contractor also agrees, pursuant to 49 C.F.R. 633.17 to provide the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives including any PMO Contractor access to Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311.

2. Where the Purchaser is a State and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 633.17, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives, including any PMO Contractor, access to the Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311. By definition, a major capital project excludes contracts of less than the simplified acquisition threshold currently set at $100,000.

3. Where the Purchaser enters into a negotiated contract for other than a small purchase or under the simplified acquisition threshold and is an institution of higher education, a hospital or other non-profit organization and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 19.48, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their duly authorized representatives with access to any books, documents, papers and record of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions.

4. Where any Purchaser which is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 U.S.C. 5325(a)

enters into a contract for a capital project or improvement (defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1) through other than competitive bidding, the Contractor shall make available records related to the contract to the Purchaser, the Secretary of Transportation and the Comptroller General or any authorized officer or employee of any of them for the purposes of conducting an audit and inspection.

5. The Contractor agrees to permit any of the foregoing parties to reproduce by any means whatsoever or to copy excerpts and transcriptions as reasonably needed.

6. The Contractor agrees to maintain all books, records, accounts and reports required under this contract for a period of not less than three years after the date of termination or expiration of this contract, except in the event of litigation or settlement of claims arising from the performance of this contract, in which case Contractor agrees to maintain same until the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have disposed of all such litigation, appeals, claims or exceptions related thereto. Reference 49 CFR 18.39(i)(11).

7. FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.

Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Types of Contract

Contract Characteristics		Operational Service Contract	Turnkey	Construction	Architectural Engineering	Acquisition of Rolling Stock	Professional Services
I State Grantees							
a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000)		None	Those imposed on state pass thru to Contractor	None	None	None	None
b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		None unless[1] non-competitive award		Yes, if non-competitive award or if funded thru[2] 5307/5309/5311	None unless non-competitive award	None unless non-competitive award	None unless non-competitive award
II Non State Grantees							
a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000)		Yes[3]	Those imposed on non-state Grantee pass thru to Contractor	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		Yes[3]		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Sources of Authority:
[1] 49 USC 5325 (a)
[2] 49 CFR 633.17
[3] 18 CFR 18.36 (i)

Federal Changes

12. FEDERAL CHANGES
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts

The Federal Changes requirement applies to all contracts.

Flow Down

The Federal Changes requirement flows down appropriately to each applicable changed requirement.

Model Clause/Language

No specific language is mandated. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Federal Changes - Contractor shall at all times comply with all applicable FTA regulations, policies, procedures and directives, including without limitation those listed directly or by reference in the Master Agreement between Purchaser and FTA, as they may be amended or promulgated from time to time during the term of this contract. Contractor's failure to so comply shall constitute a material breach of this contract.

Civil Rights Requirements – Mandatory Language

24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS
29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000
42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112
42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332
29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.

Applicability to Contracts

The Civil Rights Requirements apply to all contracts.

Flow Down

The Civil Rights requirements flow down to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

The following clause was predicated on language contained at 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, but FTA has shortened the lengthy text.

Civil Rights - The following requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(1) Nondiscrimination - In accordance with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000d, section 303 of the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 6102, section 202 of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, 42 U.S.C. § 12132, and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees that it will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, age, or disability. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with applicable Federal implementing regulations and other implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(2) Equal Employment Opportunity - The following equal employment opportunity requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(a) Race, Color, Creed, National Origin, Sex - In accordance with Title VII of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000e, and Federal transit laws at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable equal employment opportunity requirements of U.S. Department of Labor (U.S. DOL) regulations, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor," 41 C.F.R. Parts 60 et seq., (which implement Executive Order No. 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order No. 11375, "Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," 42 U.S.C. § 2000e note), and with any applicable Federal statutes, executive orders, regulations, and Federal policies that may in the future affect construction activities undertaken in the course of the Project. The Contractor agrees to take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, color, creed, national origin, sex, or age. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion or transfer, recruitment or recruitment advertising, layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(b) Age - In accordance with section 4 of the Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967, as amended, 29 U.S.C. § § 623 and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to refrain from discrimination against present and prospective employees for reason of age. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(c) Disabilities - In accordance with section 102 of the Americans with Disabilities Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 12112, the Contractor agrees that it will comply with the requirements of U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, "Regulations to Implement the Equal Employment Provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act," 29 C.F.R. Part 1630, pertaining to employment of persons with disabilities. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA

may issue.

(3) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA, modified only if necessary to identify the affected parties.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) – contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs

28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE)

49 CFR Part 26

Background and Applicability

The newest version on the Department of Transportation's Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) program became effective July 16, 2003. The rule provides guidance to grantees on the use of overall and contract goals, requirement to include DBE provisions in subcontracts, evaluating DBE participation where specific contract goals have been set, reporting requirements, and replacement of DBE subcontractors. Additionally, the DBE program dictates payment terms and conditions (including limitations on retainage) applicable to all subcontractors regardless of whether they are DBE firms or not.

The DBE program applies to all DOT-assisted contracting activities. A formal clause such as that below must be included in all contracts above the micro-purchase level. The requirements of clause subsection b flow down to subcontracts.

A substantial change to the payment provisions in this newest version of Part 26 concerns retainage (*see* section 26.29). Grantee choices concerning retainage should be reflected in the language choices in clause subsection d.

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the payment terms and conditions applicable to all subcontractors based in Part 26 as well as those related only to DBE subcontractors. The suggested language allows for the options available to grantees concerning retainage, specific contract goals, and evaluation of DBE subcontracting participation when specific contract goals have been established.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises

a. This contract is subject to the requirements of Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 26, *Participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises in Department of Transportation Financial Assistance Programs.* The national goal for participation of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) is 10%. The agency's overall goal for DBE participation is **__ %.** A separate contract goal **[of __ % DBE participation has] [has not]** been established for this procurement.

b. The contractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of this DOT-assisted contract. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as **{insert agency name}** deems appropriate. Each subcontract the contractor signs with a subcontractor must include the assurance in this paragraph (*see* 49 CFR 26.13(b)).

c. ***{If a separate contract goal has been established, use the following}*** Bidders/offerors are required to document sufficient DBE participation to meet these goals or, alternatively, document adequate good faith efforts to do so, as provided for in 49 CFR 26.53. Award of this contract is conditioned on submission of the following **[concurrent with and accompanying sealed bid] [concurrent with and accompanying an initial proposal] [prior to award]**:

1. The names and addresses of DBE firms that will participate in this contract;

2. A description of the work each DBE will perform;

3. The dollar amount of the participation of each DBE firm participating;

4. Written documentation of the bidder/offeror's commitment to use a DBE subcontractor whose participation it submits to meet the contract goal;

5. Written confirmation from the DBE that it is participating in the contract as provided in the prime contractor's commitment; and

6. If the contract goal is not met, evidence of good faith efforts to do so.

[Bidders][Offerors] must present the information required above **[as a matter of responsiveness] [with initial proposals] [prior to contract award]** (*see* 49 CFR 26.53(3)).

{If no separate contract goal has been established, use the following} The successful bidder/offeror will be required to report its DBE participation obtained through race-neutral means throughout the period of performance.

d. The contractor is required to pay its subcontractors performing work related to this contract for satisfactory performance of that work no later than 30 days after the contractor's receipt of payment for that work from the **{insert agency name}**. In addition, **[the contractor may not hold retainage from its subcontractors.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after the subcontractor's work related to this contract is satisfactorily completed.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after incremental acceptance of the subcontractor's work by the {insert agency name} and contractor's receipt of the partial retainage payment related to the subcontractor's work.]**

e. The contractor must promptly notify **{insert agency name}**, whenever a DBE subcontractor performing work related to this contract is terminated or fails to complete its work, and must make good faith efforts to engage another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work. The contractor may not terminate any DBE subcontractor and perform that work through its own forces or those of an affiliate without prior written consent of **{insert agency name}**.

Incorporation of FTA terms (Per FTA C4220.1F) – Mandatory Language

30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
The incorporation of FTA terms applies to all contracts.
Flow Down
The incorporation of FTA terms has unlimited flow down.
Model Clause/Language
FTA has developed the following incorporation of terms language**:**

Incorporation of Federal Transit Administration (FTA) Terms - The preceding provisions include, in part, certain Standard Terms and Conditions required by DOT, whether or not expressly set forth in the preceding contract provisions. All contractual provisions required by DOT, as set forth in FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions, are hereby incorporated by reference. Anything to the contrary herein notwithstanding, all FTA mandated terms shall be deemed to control in the event of a conflict with other provisions contained in this Agreement. The Contractor shall not perform any act, fail to perform any act, or refuse to comply with any (name of grantee) requests which would cause (name of grantee) to be in violation of the FTA terms and conditions.

Energy Conservation

6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS
42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Energy Conservation requirements are applicable to all contracts.
Flow Down
The Energy Conservation requirements extend to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier and subrecipients and their subagreements at every tier.
Model Clause/Language
No specific clause is recommended in the regulations because the Energy Conservation requirements are so dependent on the state energy conservation plan. The following language has been developed by FTA:

Energy Conservation - The contractor agrees to comply with mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act.

ADA Access

FTA is currently working on a contract clause to incorporate appropriate ADA requirements, but it is not yet available.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000

Termination Provisions

21. TERMINATION
49 U.S.C. Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
All contracts (with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education,) in excess of $10,000 shall contain suitable provisions for termination by the grantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (For contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education the threshold is $100,000.) In addition, such contracts shall describe conditions under which the contract may be terminated for default as well as conditions where the contract may be terminated because of circumstances beyond the control of the contractor.

Flow Down
The termination requirements flow down to all contracts in excess of $10,000, with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher learning.

Model Clause/Language
FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such clauses. The following are suggestions of clauses to be used in different types of contracts:

a. Termination for Convenience (General Provision) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, at any time by written notice to the Contractor when it is in the Government's best interest. The Contractor shall be paid its costs, including contract close-out costs, and profit on work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to (Recipient) to be paid the Contractor. If the Contractor has any property in its possession belonging to the (Recipient), the Contractor will account for the same, and dispose of it in the manner the (Recipient) directs.

b. Termination for Default [Breach or Cause] (General Provision) If the Contractor does not deliver supplies in accordance with the contract delivery schedule, or, if the contract is for services, the Contractor fails to perform in the manner called for in the contract, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of the contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. Termination shall be effected by serving a notice of termination on the contractor setting forth the manner in which the Contractor is in default. The contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in the contract.
If it is later determined by the (Recipient) that the Contractor had an excusable reason for not performing, such as a strike, fire, or flood, events which are not the fault of or are beyond the control of the Contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new delivery of performance schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

c. Opportunity to Cure (General Provision) The (Recipient) in its sole discretion may, in the case of a termination for breach or default, allow the Contractor [an appropriately short period of time] in which to cure the defect. In such case, the notice of termination will state the time period in which cure is permitted and other appropriate conditions

If Contractor fails to remedy to (Recipient)'s satisfaction the breach or default of any of the terms, covenants, or conditions of this Contract within [ten (10) days] after receipt by Contractor of written notice from (Recipient) setting forth the nature of said breach or default, (Recipient) shall have the right to terminate the Contract without any further obligation to Contractor. Any such termination for default shall not in any way operate to preclude (Recipient) from also pursuing all available remedies against Contractor and its sureties for said breach or default.

d. Waiver of Remedies for any Breach In the event that (Recipient) elects to waive its remedies for any breach by Contractor of any covenant, term or condition of this Contract, such waiver by (Recipient) shall not limit (Recipient)'s remedies for any succeeding breach of that or of any other term, covenant, or condition of this Contract.

e. Termination for Convenience (Professional or Transit Service Contracts) The (Recipient), by written notice, may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, when it is in the Government's interest. If this contract is terminated, the Recipient shall be liable only for payment under the payment provisions of this contract for services rendered before the effective date of termination.

f. Termination for Default (Supplies and Service) If the Contractor fails to deliver supplies or to perform the services within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner or performance set forth in this contract.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

g. Termination for Default (Transportation Services) If the Contractor fails to pick up the commodities or to perform the services, including delivery services, within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in this contract.

If this contract is terminated while the Contractor has possession of Recipient goods, the Contractor shall, upon direction of the (Recipient), protect and preserve the goods until surrendered to the Recipient or its agent. The Contractor and (Recipient) shall agree on payment for the preservation and protection of goods. Failure to agree on an amount will be resolved under the Dispute clause.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the (Recipient).

h. Termination for Default (Construction) If the Contractor refuses or fails to prosecute the work or any separable part, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the time specified in this contract or any extension or fails to complete the work within this time, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. In this event, the Recipient may take over the work and compete it by contract or otherwise, and may take possession of and use any materials, appliances, and plant on the work site necessary for completing the work. The Contractor and its sureties shall be liable for any damage to the Recipient resulting from the Contractor's refusal or failure to complete the work within specified time, whether or not the Contractor's right to proceed with the work is terminated. This liability includes any increased costs incurred by the Recipient in completing the work.

The Contractor's right to proceed shall not be terminated nor the Contractor charged with damages under this clause if-

1. the delay in completing the work arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor. Examples of such causes include: acts of God, acts of the Recipient, acts of another Contractor in the performance of a contract with the Recipient, epidemics, quarantine restrictions, strikes, freight embargoes; and

2. the contractor, within [10] days from the beginning of any delay, notifies the (Recipient) in writing of the causes of delay. If in the judgment of the (Recipient), the delay is excusable, the time for completing the work shall be extended. The judgment of the (Recipient) shall be final and conclusive on the parties, but subject to appeal under the Disputes clauses.

If, after termination of the Contractor's right to proceed, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, or that the delay was excusable, the rights and obligations of the parties will be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

i. Termination for Convenience or Default (Architect and Engineering) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract in whole or in part, for the Recipient's convenience or because of the failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature, extent, and effective date of the termination. Upon receipt of the notice, the Contractor shall (1) immediately discontinue all services affected (unless the notice directs otherwise), and (2) deliver to the Contracting Officer all data, drawings, specifications, reports, estimates, summaries, and other information and materials accumulated in performing this contract, whether completed or in process.

If the termination is for the convenience of the Recipient, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment in the contract price but shall allow no anticipated profit on unperformed services.

If the termination is for failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations, the Recipient may complete the work by contact or otherwise and the Contractor shall be liable for any additional cost incurred by the Recipient.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

j. Termination for Convenience of Default (Cost-Type Contracts) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, or any portion of it, by serving a notice or termination on the Contractor. The notice shall state whether the termination is for convenience of the (Recipient) or for the default of the Contractor. If the termination is for default, the notice shall state the manner in which the contractor has failed to perform the requirements of the contract. The Contractor shall account for any property in its possession paid for from funds received from the (Recipient), or property supplied to the Contractor by the (Recipient). If the termination is for default, the (Recipient) may fix the fee, if the contract provides for a fee, to be paid the contractor in proportion to the value, if any, of work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to the (Recipient) and the parties shall negotiate the termination settlement to be paid the Contractor.

If the termination is for the convenience of the (Recipient), the Contractor shall be paid its contract close-out costs, and a fee, if the contract provided for payment of a fee, in proportion to the work performed up to the time of termination.

If, after serving a notice of termination for default, the (Recipient) determines that the Contractor has an excusable reason for not performing, such as strike, fire, flood, events which are not the fault of and are beyond the control of the contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new work schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000

Suspension and Debarment

22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)

Background and Applicability

In conjunction with the Office of Management and Budget and other affected Federal agencies, DOT published an update to 49 CFR Part 29 on November 26, 2003. This government-wide regulation implements Executive Order 12549, *Debarment and Suspension*, Executive Order 12689, *Debarment and Suspension*, and 31 U.S.C. 6101 note (Section 2455, Public Law 103-355, 108 Stat. 3327).

The provisions of Part 29 apply to all grantee contracts and subcontracts at any level expected to equal or exceed $25,000 as well as any contract or subcontract (at any level) for Federally required auditing services. 49 CFR 29.220(b). This represents a change from prior practice in that the dollar threshold for application of these rules has been lowered from $100,000 to $25,000. These are contracts and subcontracts referred to in the regulation as "covered transactions."

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors (at any level) that enter into covered transactions are required to verify that the entity (as well as its principals and affiliates) they propose to contract or subcontract with is not excluded or disqualified. They do this by (a) Checking the Excluded Parties List System, (b) Collecting a certification from that person, or (c) Adding a clause or condition to the contract or subcontract. This represents a change from prior practice in that certification is still acceptable but is no longer required. 49 CFR 29.300.

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors who enter into covered transactions also must require the entities they contract with to comply with 49 CFR 29, subpart C and include this requirement in their own subsequent covered transactions (i.e., the requirement flows down to subcontracts at all levels).

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the optional method of verifying that contractors are not excluded or disqualified by certification.

Suspension and Debarment

This contract is a covered transaction for purposes of 49 CFR Part 29. As such, the contractor is required to verify that none of the contractor, its principals, as defined at 49 CFR 29.995, or affiliates, as defined at 49 CFR 29.905, are excluded or disqualified as defined at 49 CFR 29.940 and 29.945.

The contractor is required to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C and must include the requirement to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C in any lower tier covered transaction it enters into.
By signing and submitting its bid or proposal, the bidder or proposer certifies as follows:

The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact relied upon by **{insert agency name}**. If it is later determined that the bidder or proposer knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to remedies available to **{insert agency name}**, the Federal Government may pursue available remedies, including but not limited to suspension and/or debarment. The bidder or proposer agrees to comply with the requirements of 49 CFR 29, Subpart C while this offer is valid and throughout the period of any contract that may arise from this offer. The bidder or proposer further agrees to include a provision requiring such compliance in its lower tier covered transactions.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000

Buy America (for steel, iron, manufactured products) – Mandatory Language

2. BUY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323(j)
49 CFR Part 661

Applicability to Contracts
The Buy America requirements apply to the following types of contracts: Construction Contracts and Acquisition of Goods or Rolling Stock (valued at more than $100,000).
Flow Down
The Buy America requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors, who are responsible for ensuring that lower tier contractors and subcontractors are in compliance. The $100,000 threshold applies only to the grantee contract, subcontracts under that amount are subject to Buy America.
Mandatory Clause/Language
The Buy America regulation, at 49 CFR 661.13, requires notification of the Buy America requirements in FTA-funded contracts, but does not specify the language to be used. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Buy America - The contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j) and 49 C.F.R. Part 661, which provide that Federal funds may not be obligated unless steel, iron, and manufactured products used in FTA-funded projects are produced in the United States, unless a waiver has been granted by FTA or the product is subject to a general waiver. General waivers are listed in 49 C.F.R. 661.7, and include final assembly in the United States for 15 passenger vans and 15 passenger wagons produced by Chrysler Corporation, and microcomputer equipment and software. Separate requirements for rolling stock are set out at 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and 49 C.F.R. 661.11. Rolling stock must be assembled in the United States and have a 60 percent domestic content.

A bidder or offeror must submit to the FTA recipient the appropriate Buy America certification (below) with all bids or offers on FTA-funded contracts, except those subject to a general waiver. Bids or offers that are not accompanied by a completed Buy America certification must be rejected as nonresponsive. This requirement does not apply to lower tier subcontractors.

Certification requirement for procurement of steel, iron, or manufactured products.

Certificate of Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it will meet the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1) and the applicable regulations in 49 C.F.R. Part 661.5.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title _____

Certificate of Non-Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it cannot comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1) and 49 C.F.R. 661.5, but it may qualify for an exception pursuant to 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(A), 5323(j)(2)(B), or 5323(j)(2)(D), and 49 C.F.R. 661.7.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title _____

Certification requirement for procurement of buses, other rolling stock and associated equipment.

Certificate of Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C).

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it will comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and the regulations at 49 C.F.R. Part 661.11.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title _____

Certificate of Non-Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it cannot comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and 49 C.F.R. 661.11, but may qualify for an exception pursuant to 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(A), 5323(j)(2)(B), or 5323(j)(2)(D), and 49 CFR 661.7.

Date _____
Signature _____
Company Name _____
Title

Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation

25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION
49 CFR Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions

Applicability to Contracts
All contracts in excess of $100,000 shall contain provisions or conditions which will allow for administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. This may include provisions for bonding, penalties for late or inadequate performance, retained earnings, liquidated damages or other appropriate measures.
Flow Down
The Breaches and Dispute Resolutions requirements flow down to all tiers.
Model Clauses/Language
FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such provisions. What provisions are developed will depend on the circumstances and the type of contract. Recipients should consult legal counsel in developing appropriate clauses. The following clauses are examples of provisions from various FTA third party contracts.

Disputes - Disputes arising in the performance of this Contract which are not resolved by agreement of the parties shall be decided in writing by the authorized representative of (Recipient)'s [title of employee]. This decision shall be final and conclusive unless within [ten (10)] days from the date of receipt of its copy, the Contractor mails or otherwise furnishes a written appeal to the [title of employee]. In connection with any such appeal, the Contractor shall be afforded an opportunity to be heard and to offer evidence in support of its position. The decision of the [title of employee] shall be binding upon the Contractor and the Contractor shall abide be the decision.

Performance During Dispute - Unless otherwise directed by (Recipient), Contractor shall continue performance under this

Contract while matters in dispute are being resolved.

Claims for Damages - Should either party to the Contract suffer injury or damage to person or property because of any act or omission of the party or of any of his employees, agents or others for whose acts he is legally liable, a claim for damages therefor shall be made in writing to such other party within a reasonable time after the first observance of such injury of damage.

Remedies - Unless this contract provides otherwise, all claims, counterclaims, disputes and other matters in question between the (Recipient) and the Contractor arising out of or relating to this agreement or its breach will be decided by arbitration if the parties mutually agree, or in a court of competent jurisdiction within the State in which the (Recipient) is located.

Rights and Remedies - The duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and the rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of any duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law. No action or failure to act by the (Recipient), (Architect) or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of any right or duty afforded any of them under the Contract, nor shall any such action or failure to act constitute an approval of or acquiescence in any breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.

Lobbying – Mandatory Language

10. LOBBYING
31 U.S.C. 1352
49 CFR Part 19
49 CFR Part 20

Applicability to Contracts
The Lobbying requirements apply to Construction/Architectural and Engineering/Acquisition of Rolling Stock/Professional Service Contract/Operational Service Contract/Turnkey contracts.
Flow Down
The Lobbying requirements mandate the maximum flow down, pursuant to Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. § 1352(b)(5) and 49 C.F.R. Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7.
Mandatory Clause/Language
Clause and specific language therein are mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Clause pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, *et seq.*]

- Lobbying Certification and Disclosure of Lobbying Activities for third party contractors are mandated by 31 U.S.C. 1352(b)(5), as amended by Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, and DOT implementing regulation, "New Restrictions on Lobbying," at 49 CFR § 20.110(d)

- Language in Lobbying Certification is mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7, which provides that contractors file the certification required by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Lobbying Certification pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995.

- Use of "Disclosure of Lobbying Activities," Standard Form-LLL set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR Part 20, as amended by "Government wide Guidance For New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96) is mandated by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. 1352, as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, et seq.] - Contractors who apply or bid for an award of $100,000 or more shall file the certification required by 49 CFR part 20, "New Restrictions on Lobbying." Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier shall also disclose the name of any registrant under the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 who has made lobbying contacts on its behalf with non-Federal funds with respect to that Federal contract, grant or award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the recipient.

APPENDIX A, 49 CFR PART 20--CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING

Certification for Contracts, Grants, Loans, and Cooperative Agreements

(To be submitted with each bid or offer exceeding $100,000)

The undersigned [Contractor] certifies, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for making lobbying contacts to an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form--LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions [as amended by "Government wide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96). Note: Language in paragraph (2) herein has been modified in accordance with Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 (P.L. 104-65, to be codified at 2 U.S.C. 1601, *et seq.*)]

(3) The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31, U.S.C. § 1352 (as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995). Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such failure.

[Note: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. § 1352(c)(1)-(2)(A), any person who makes a prohibited expenditure or fails to file or amend a required certification or disclosure form shall be subject to
a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such expenditure or failure.]

The Contractor, _____, certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of each statement of its certification and disclosure, if any. In addition, the Contractor understands and agrees that the provisions of 31 U.S.C. A 3801, *et seq.,* apply to this certification and disclosure, if any.
_____ Signature of Contractor's Authorized Official
_____ Name and Title of Contractor's Authorized Official
_____ Date

Clean Air

14. CLEAN AIR
42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq
40 CFR 15.61
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Clean Air requirements apply to all contracts exceeding $100,000, including indefinite quantities where the amount is expected to exceed $100,000 in any year.
Flow Down
The Clean Air requirements flow down to all subcontracts which exceed $100,000.
Model Clauses/Language
No specific language is required. FTA has proposed the following language.

Clean Air - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. §§ 7401 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the
Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Clean Water

7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS
33 U.S.C. 1251

Applicability to Contracts
The Clean Water requirements apply to each contract and subcontract which exceeds $100,000.
Flow Down
The Clean Water requirements flow down to FTA recipients and subrecipients at every tier.
Model Clause/Language
While no mandatory clause is contained in the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, the following language developed by FTA contains all the mandatory requirements:

Clean Water - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, 33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve property that may be transported by ocean vessel

Cargo Preference

4. CARGO PREFERENCE REQUIREMENTS
46 U.S.C. 1241
46 CFR Part 381

Applicability to Contracts
The Cargo Preference requirements apply to all contracts involving equipment, materials, or commodities which may be transported by ocean vessels.
Flow Down
The Cargo Preference requirements apply to all subcontracts when the subcontract may be involved with the transport of equipment, material, or commodities by ocean vessel.
Model Clause/Language
The MARAD regulations at 46 CFR 381.7 contain suggested contract clauses. The following language is proffered by FTA.

Cargo Preference - Use of United States-Flag Vessels - The contractor agrees: a. to use privately owned United States-Flag commercial vessels to ship at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers) involved, whenever shipping any equipment, material, or commodities pursuant to the underlying contract to the extent such vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for United States-Flag commercial vessels; b. to furnish within 20 working days following the date of loading for shipments originating within the United States or within 30 working days following the date of leading for shipments originating outside the United States, a legible copy of a rated, "on-board" commercial ocean bill-of -lading in English for each shipment of cargo described in the preceding paragraph to the Division of National Cargo, Office of Market Development, Maritime Administration, Washington, DC 20590 and to the FTA recipient (through the contractor in the case of a subcontractor's bill-of-lading.) c. to include these requirements in all subcontracts issued pursuant to this contract when the subcontract may involve the transport of equipment, material, or commodities by ocean vessel.

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air

Fly America

13. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. § 40118
41 CFR Part 301-10

Applicability to Contracts
The Fly America requirements apply to the transportation of persons or property, by air, between a place in the U.S. and a place outside the U.S., or between places outside the U.S., when the FTA will participate in the costs of such air transportation. Transportation on a foreign air carrier is permissible when provided by a foreign air carrier under a code share agreement when the ticket identifies the U.S. air carrier's designator code and flight number. Transportation by a foreign air carrier is also permissible if there is a bilateral or multilateral air transportation agreement to which the U.S. Government and a foreign government are parties and which the Federal DOT has determined meets the requirements of the Fly America Act.
Flow Down Requirements
The Fly America requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors, who are responsible for ensuring that lower tier contractors and subcontractors are in compliance.
Model Clause/Language
The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specified clause or language. FTA proposes the following language.

Fly America Requirements
The Contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 40118 (the "Fly America" Act) in accordance with the General Services Administration's regulations at 41 CFR Part 301-10, which provide that recipients and subrecipients of Federal funds and their contractors are required to use U.S. Flag air carriers for U.S Government-financed international air travel and transportation of their personal effects or property, to the extent such service is available, unless travel by foreign air carrier is a matter of necessity, as defined by the Fly America Act. The Contractor shall submit, if a foreign air carrier was used, an appropriate certification or memorandum adequately explaining why service by a U.S. flag air carrier was not available or why it was necessary to use a foreign air carrier and shall, in any event, provide a certificate of compliance with the Fly America requirements. The Contractor agrees to include the requirements of this section in all subcontracts that may involve international air transportation.

Applicable Federal Clauses – Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year

Recycled Products

15. RECYCLED PRODUCTS
42 U.S.C. 6962
40 CFR Part 247
Executive Order 12873

Applicability to Contracts
The Recycled Products requirements apply to all contracts for items designated by the EPA, when the purchaser or contractor procures $10,000 or more of one of these items during the fiscal year, or has procured $10,000 or more of such items in the previous fiscal year, using Federal funds. New requirements for "recovered materials" will become effective May 1, 1996. These new regulations apply to all procurement actions involving items designated by the EPA, where the procuring agency purchases $10,000 or more of one of these items in a fiscal year, or when the cost of such items purchased during the previous fiscal year was $10,000.
Flow Down
These requirements flow down to all to all contractor and subcontractor tiers.
Model Clause/Language
No specific clause is mandated, but FTA has developed the following language.

Recovered Materials - The contractor agrees to comply with all the requirements of Section 6002 of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), as amended (42 U.S.C. 6962), including but not limited to the regulatory provisions of 40 CFR Part 247, and Executive Order 12873, as they apply to the procurement of the items designated in Subpart B of 40 CFR Part 247.

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

Applicable Federal Clauses **Excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000**	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES	
20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS **31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001** **49 U.S.C. 5307**	
11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS **49 U.S.C. 5325** **18 CFR 18.36 (i)** **49 CFR 633.17**	
12. FEDERAL CHANGES **49 CFR Part 18**	
24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS **29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000** **42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112** **42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332** **29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.**	
28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) **49 CFR Part 26**	
30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS **42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.** **49 CFR Part 18**	
Does procurement exhibit Geographic Preference? **For reference purposes: 49 CFR 18.36 (c)(1)(2) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 2.a (4)(g)**	
Has proposed contracted entity been verified that they are not excluded or disqualified through the Excluded Parties List System (EPLS)? **For reference purposes: https://www.sam.gov/portal/public/SAM/**	
Has an adequate number of sources been solicited?	
Has applicable ADA language been included?	
Has an adequate cost analysis been performed? **For reference purposes: 49 CFR 18.36 (f)(1) and FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 6**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $10,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
21. TERMINATION **49 U.S.C. Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	

Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $25,000	Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package
22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurement exceeds $100,000	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
2. BUY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. 5323(j)** **49 CFR Part 661**	
25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION **49 CFR Part 18** **FTA Circular 4220.1E or subsequent revisions**	
10. LOBBYING **31 U.S.C. 1352** **49 CFR Part 19** **49 CFR Part 20**	
14. CLEAN AIR **42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq** **40 CFR 15.61** **49 CFR Part 18**	
7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS **33 U.S.C. 1251**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve property that may be transported by ocean vessel	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
4. CARGO PREFERENCE REQUIREMENTS **46 U.S.C. 1241** **46 CFR Part 381**	
Applicable Federal Clauses when procurements involve foreign transport or travel by air	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
14. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS **49 U.S.C. § 40118** **41 CFR Part 301-10**	
Applicable Federal Clauses – Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year	**Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package**
15. RECYCLED PRODUCTS **42 U.S.C. 6962** **40 CFR Part 247** **Executive Order 12873**	

Approval:
Subrecipient

_____Date:_____

Approval:
Florida Department of Transportation

_____Date:_____

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

(1) The property shall be identified in the grant or otherwise made known to the grantee in writing.

(2) The Federal awarding agency shall issue disposition instruction within 120 calendar days after the end of the Federal support of the project for which it was acquired. If the Federal awarding agency fails to issue disposition instructions within the 120 calendar-day period the grantee shall follow § 18.32(e).

(3) When title to equipment is transferred, the grantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the percentage of participation in the purchase to the current fair market value of the property.

§ 18.33 Supplies.

(a) *Title.* Title to supplies acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest, upon acquisition, in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *Disposition.* If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding $5,000 in total aggregate fair market value upon termination or completion of the award, and if the supplies are not needed for any other federally sponsored programs or projects, the grantee or subgrantee shall compensate the awarding agency for its share.

§ 18.34 Copyrights.

The Federal awarding agency reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive, and irrevocable license to reproduce, publish or otherwise use, and to authorize others to use, for Federal Government purposes:

(a) The copyright in any work developed under a grant, subgrant, or contract under a grant or subgrant; and

(b) Any rights of copyright to which a grantee, subgrantee or a contractor purchases ownership with grant support.

§ 18.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.

Grantees and subgrantees must not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs under Executive Order 12549, "Debarment and Suspension."

§ 18.36 Procurement.

(a) *States.* When procuring property and services under a grant, a State will follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The State will ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by Federal statutes and executive orders and their implementing regulations. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (b) through (i) in this section.

(b) *Procurement standards.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees will use their own procurement procedures which reflect applicable State and local laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable Federal law and the standards identified in this section.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a contract administration system which ensures that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.

(3) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a written code of standards of conduct governing the performance of their employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer or agent of the grantee or subgrantee shall participate in selection, or in the award or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a conflict of interest, real or apparent, would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when:

(i) The employee, officer or agent,

(ii) Any member of his immediate family,

(iii) His or her partner, or

(iv) An organization which employs, or is about to employ, any of the above, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for award. The grantee's or subgrantee's officers, employees or agents will neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors or anything of monetary value from contractors, potential contractors, or parties to subagreements. Grantee and subgrantees may set minimum rules where the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of

nominal intrinsic value. To the extent permitted by State or local law or regulations, such standards or conduct will provide for penalties, sanctions, or other disciplinary actions for violations of such standards by the grantee's and subgrantee's officers, employees, or agents, or by contractors or their agents. The awarding agency may in regulation provide additional prohibitions relative to real, apparent, or potential conflicts of interest.

(4) Grantee and subgrantee procedures will provide for a review of proposed procurements to avoid purchase of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.

(5) To foster greater economy and efficiency, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to enter into State and local intergovernmental agreements for procurement or use of common goods and services.

(6) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.

(7) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative anaylsis of each contract item or task to ensure that its essential function is provided at the overall lower cost.

(8) Grantees and subgrantees will make awards only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

(9) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain records sufficient to detail the significant history of a procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.

(10) Grantees and subgrantees will use time and material type contracts only—

(i) After a determination that no other contract is suitable, and

(ii) If the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk.

(11) Grantees and subgrantees alone will be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the grantee or subgrantee of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. Federal agencies will not substitute their judgment for that of the grantee or subgrantee unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, State, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

(12) Grantees and subgrantees will have protest procedures to handle and resolve disputes relating to their procurements and shall in all instances disclose information regarding the protest to the awarding agency. A protestor must exhaust all administrative remedies with the grantee and subgrantee before pursuing a protest with the Federal agency. Reviews of protests by the Federal agency will be limited to:

(i) Violations of Federal law or regulations and the standards of this section (violations of State or local law will be under the jurisdiction of State or local authorities) and

(ii) Violations of the grantee's or subgrantee's protest procedures for failure to review a complaint or protest. Protests received by the Federal agency other than those specified above will be referred to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) *Competition.* (1) All procurement transactions will be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards

of § 18.36. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

(i) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business,

(ii) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding,

(iii) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies,

(iv) Noncompetitive awards to consultants that are on retainer contracts,

(v) Organizational conflicts of interest,

(vi) Specifying only a "brand name" product instead of allowing "an equal" product to be offered and describing the performance of other relevant requirements of the procurement, and

(vii) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed in-State or local geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts State licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic location may be a selection criteria provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(3) Grantees will have written selection procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures will ensure that all solicitations:

(i) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description shall not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured, and when necessary, shall set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a "brand name or equal" description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of a procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offerors shall be clearly stated; and

(ii) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(4) Grantees and subgrantees will ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, grantees and subgrantees will not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

(d) *Methods of procurement to be followed*—(1) *Procurement by small purchase procedures.* Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for securing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than the simplified acquisition threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403(11) (currently set at $100,000). If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations shall be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(2) Procurement by *sealed bids* (formal advertising). Bids are publicly solicited and a firm-fixed-price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions in § 18.36(d)(2)(i) apply.

(i) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(A) A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(B) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively and for the business; and

(C) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

(ii) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(A) The invitation for bids will be publicly advertised and bids shall be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient time prior to the date set for opening the bids;

(B) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, shall define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(C) All bids will be publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids;

(D) A firm fixed-price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs shall be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(E) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(3) Procurement by *competitive proposals*. The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed-price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

(i) Requests for proposals will be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals shall be honored to the maximum extent practical;

(ii) Proposals will be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees will have a method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting awardees;

(iv) Awards will be made to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and

(v) Grantees and subgrantees may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors' qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(4) Procurement by *noncompetitive proposals* is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source, or after solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(i) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals may be used only when the award of a contract is infeasible under small purchase procedures, sealed bids or competitive proposals and one of the following circumstances applies:

(A) The item is available only from a single source;

(B) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation;

(C) The awarding agency authorizes noncompetitive proposals; or

(D) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(ii) Cost analysis, i.e., verifying the proposed cost data, the projections of the data, and the evaluation of the specific elements of costs and profits, is required.

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees may be required to submit the proposed procurement to the awarding agency for pre-award review in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

(e) *Contracting with small and minority firms, women's business enterprise and labor surplus area firms.* (1) The grantee and subgrantee will take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority firms, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.

(2) Affirmative steps shall include:

(i) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;

(ii) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;

(iii) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(iv) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(v) Using the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration, and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and

(vi) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (e)(2) (i) through (v) of this section.

(f) *Contract cost and price.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, grantees must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals. A cost analysis must be performed when the offeror is required to submit the elements of his estimated cost, e.g., under professional, consulting, and architectural engineering services contracts. A cost analysis will be necessary when adequate price competition is lacking, and for sole source procurements, including contract modifications or change orders, unless price resonableness can be established on the basis of a catalog or market price of a commercial product sold in substantial quantities to the general public or based on prices set by law or regulation. A price analysis will be used in all other instances to determine the reasonableness of the proposed contract price.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration will be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

(3) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under grants will be allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices are consistent with Federal cost principles (see § 18.22). Grantees may reference their own cost principles that comply with the applicable Federal cost principles.

(4) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting shall not be used.

(g) *Awarding agency review.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must make available, upon request of the awarding agency, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the awarding agency believes such review is needed to ensure that the item and/or service specified is the one being proposed for purchase. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the grantee or subgrantee desires to have the review accomplished after a solicitation has been developed, the awarding agency may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees must on request make available for awarding agency pre-award review procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc. when:

(i) A grantee's or subgrantee's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this section; or

(ii) The procurement is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition

threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation; or

(iii) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, specifies a "brand name" product; or

(iv) The proposed award is more than the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(v) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the simplified acquisition threshold.

(3) A grantee or subgrantee will be exempt from the pre-award review in paragraph (g)(2) of this section if the awarding agency determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this section.

(i) A grantee or subgrantee may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the awarding agency to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system to be certified. Generally, these reviews shall occur where there is a continuous high-dollar funding, and third-party contracts are awarded on a regular basis.

(ii) A grantee or subgrantee may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification shall not limit the awarding agency's right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, awarding agencies may wish to rely on written assurances from the grantee or subgrantee that it is complying with these standards. A grantee or subgrantee will cite specific procedures, regulations, standards, etc., as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

(h) *Bonding requirements.* For construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold, the awarding agency may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the grantee or subgrantee provided the awarding agency has made a determination that the awarding agency's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows:

(1) *A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price.* The "bid guarantee" shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(2) *A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(3) *A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A "payment bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(i) *Contract provisions.* A grantee's and subgrantee's contracts must contain provisions in paragraph (i) of this section. Federal agencies are permitted to require changes, remedies, changed conditions, access and records retention, suspension of work, and other clauses approved by the Office of Federal Procurement Policy.

(1) Administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. (Contracts more than the simplified acquisition threshold)

(2) Termination for cause and for convenience by the grantee or subgrantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (All contracts in excess of $10,000)

(3) Compliance with Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, entitled "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order 11375 of October 13, 1967, and as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (41 CFR chapter 60). (All construction contracts awarded in excess of $10,000 by grantees and their contractors or subgrantees)

(4) Compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (18 U.S.C. 874) as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 3). (All contracts and subgrants for construction or repair)

(5) Compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to 276a–7) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). (Construction contracts in excess of $2000 awarded by grantees and subgrantees when required by Federal grant program legislation)

(6) Compliance with Sections 103 and 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327–330) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). (Construction contracts awarded by grantees and subgrantees in excess of $2000, and in excess of $2500 for other contracts which involve the employment of mechanics or laborers)

(7) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to reporting.

(8) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to patent rights with respect to any discovery or invention which arises or is developed in the course of or under such contract.

(9) Awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to copyrights and rights in data.

(10) Access by the grantee, the subgrantee, the Federal grantor agency, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives to any books, documents, papers, and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to that specific contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts, and transcriptions.

(11) Retention of all required records for three years after grantees or subgrantees make final payments and all other pending matters are closed.

(12) Compliance with all applicable standards, orders, or requirements issued under section 306 of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 1857(h)), section 508 of the Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. 1368), Executive Order 11738, and Environmental Protection Agency regulations (40 CFR part 15). (Contracts, subcontracts, and subgrants of amounts in excess of $100,000)

(13) Mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94–163, 89 Stat. 871).

(j) 23 U.S.C. 112(a) directs the Secretary to require recipients of highway construction grants to use bidding methods that are "effective in securing competition." Detailed construction contracting procedures are contained in 23 CFR part 635, subpart A.

(k) Section 3(a)(2)(C) of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended, prohibits the use of grant or loan funds to support procurements utilizing exclusionary or discriminatory specifications.

(l) 46 U.S.C. 1241(b)(1) and 46 CFR part 381 impose cargo preference requirements on the shipment of foreign made goods.

(m) Section 165 of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, 49 U.S.C. 1601, section 337 of the Surface Transportation and Uniform Relocation Assistance Act of 1987, and 49 CFR parts 660 and 661 impose Buy America provisions on the procurement of foreign products and materials.

(n) Section 105(f) of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, section 106(c) of the Surface Transportation and Uniform Relocation Assistance Act of 1987, and 49 CFR part 23 impose requirements for the participation of disadvantaged business enterprises.

(o) Section 308 of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, 49 U.S.C. 1068(b)(2), authorizes the use of competitive negotiation for the purchase of rolling stock as appropriate.

(p) 23 U.S.C. 112(b) provides for an exemption to competitive bidding requirements for highway construction contracts in emergency situations.

(q) 23 U.S.C. 112 requires concurrence by the Secretary before highway construction contracts can be awarded, except for projects authorized under the provisions of 23 U.S.C. 171.

(r) 23 U.S.C. 112(e) requires standardized contract clauses concerning site conditions, suspension or work, and material changes in the scope of the work for highway construction contracts.

(s) 23 U.S.C. 140(b) authorizes the preferential employment of Indians on Indian Reservation road projects and contracts.

(t) FHWA, UMTA, and Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) grantees and subgrantees shall extend the use of qualifications-based (e.g., architectural and engineering services) contract selection procedures to certain other related areas and shall award such contracts in the same manner as Federal contracts for architectural and engineering services are negotiated under Title IX of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, or equivalent State (or airport sponsor for FAA) qualifications-based requirements. For FHWA and UMTA programs, this provision applies except to the extent that a State adopts or has adopted by statute a formal procedure for the procurement of such services.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8087, Mar. 11, 1988; 60 FR 19639, 19647, Apr. 19, 1995]

§ 18.37 Subgrants.

(a) *States.* States shall follow state law and procedures when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. States shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations;

(2) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statute and regulation;

(3) Ensure that a provision for compliance with § 18.42 is placed in every cost reimbursement subgrant; and

(4) Conform any advances of grant funds to subgrantees substantially to the same standards of timing and amount that apply to cash advances by Federal agencies.

(b) *All other grantees.* All other grantees shall follow the provisions of this part which are applicable to awarding agencies when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. Grantees shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes a provision for compliance with this part;

(2) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations; and

(3) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statutes and regulations.

(c) *Exceptions.* By their own terms, certain provisions of this part do not apply to the award and administration of subgrants:

(1) Section 18.10;

(2) Section 18.11;

(3) The letter-of-credit procedures specified in Treasury Regulations at 31 CFR part 205, cited in § 18.21; and

(4) Section 18.50.

Reports, Records, Retention, and Enforcement

§ 18.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) *Monitoring by grantees.* Grantees are responsible for managing the day-to-day operations of grant and subgrant supported activities. Grantees must monitor grant and subgrant supported activities to assure compliance with applicable Federal requirements and that performance goals are being achieved. Grantee monitoring must cover each program, function or activity.

(b) *Nonconstruction performance reports.* The Federal agency may, if it decides that performance information available from subsequent applications contains sufficient information to meet its programmatic needs, require the grantee to submit a performance report only upon expiration or termination of grant support. Unless waived by the Federal agency this report will be due on the same date as the final Financial Status Report.

(1) Grantees shall submit annual performance reports unless the awarding agency requires quarterly or semi-annual reports. However, performance reports will not be required more frequently than quarterly. Annual reports shall be due 90 days after the grant year, quarterly or semi-annual reports

To view the entire Circular, C 4220.1F Third Party Contracting Guidance, use the following link:

http://www.fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12349_8641.html

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

U.S. Department
of Transportation

**Federal Transit
Administration**

CIRCULAR

FTA C 4220.1F

November 1, 2008
Rev. 1, April 14, 2009
Rev. 2, July 1, 2010
Rev. 3, February 15, 2011
Rev. 4, March 18, 2013

Subject: THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING GUIDANCE

1. PURPOSE. This circular provides contracting guidance for recipients of Federal assistance awarded by the Federal Transit Administration (FTA) when using that Federal assistance to finance its procurements (third party contracts). This revision incorporates the new procurement provisions of the Moving Ahead for Progress in the 21st Century Act (MAP 21), Pub. L., 112-141, July 2012, and includes the most current available guidance for the Federal public transportation program as of the date of publication.

2. CANCELLATION. This circular cancels FTA Circular 4220.1E, "Third Party Contracting Requirements," dated 06-19-03.

3. AUTHORITY. Federal Transit Laws, Title 49, United States Code, Chapter 53.

4. WAIVER. FTA reserves the right to waive any provision of this circular to the extent permitted by Federal law or regulation.

5. FEDERAL REGISTER NOTICE. In conjunction with publication of this circular, a *Federal Register* notice was published on September 30, 2008 (73 FR 56896), addressing comments received during the development of the circular.

6. AMENDMENTS TO THE CIRCULAR. FTA reserves the right to update this circular due to changes in other revised or new guidance and regulations that undergo notice and comment, without further notice and comment on this circular. FTA will post updates on our Web site: **http://www.fta.dot.gov/.** The Web site allows the public to register for notification when FTA issues *Federal Register* notices or new guidance; visit the Web site and click on "Sign-up for e-mail updates."

7. ACCESSIBLE FORMATS. This document is available in accessible formats upon request. To obtain paper copies of this circular as well as information regarding these accessible formats; telephone FTA's Administrative Services Help Desk, 202-366-4865. Individuals with hearing impairments may contact the Federal Relay Service, 1-800-877-8339 for assistance with the call.

James S. Simpson
Administrator

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING GUIDANCE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER PAGE

I. INTRODUCTION AND ROLE OF THE FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION 159
1. The Federal Transit Administration (FTA) 159
2. Authorizing Legislation 159
3. How to Contact FTA 159
4. Background 160
5. Definitions 160
6. FTA's Role 165

II. APPLICABILITY 1
1. Legal Effect of the Circular 1
2. Applicability of the Circular 1
3. Federal Laws and Regulations 8
4. State and Local Laws and Regulations 10

III. THE RECIPIENT'S RESPONSIBILITIES 1
1. Written Standards of Conduct 1
2 Self-Certification 1
3. Third Party Contracting Capacity 1
4. Audit 7
5. Fraud 8

IV. THE RECIPIENT'S PROPERTY AND SERVICES NEEDS AND FEDERAL REQUIREMENTS AFFECTING THOSE NEEDS 1
1. Determining the Recipient's Needs 1
2. Federal Requirements That May Affect a Recipient's Acquisitions . 3

V. SOURCES 1
1. Force Account 1
2. Shared Use 1
3. Joint Procurement 1
4. State or Local Government Purchasing Schedules or Purchasing Contracts 2
5. Federal Excess and Surplus Property 3
6. Federal Supply Schedules 3
7. Existing Contracts 5
8. The Open Market 9

CHAPTER PAGE

VI. PROCEDURAL GUIDANCE FOR OPEN MARKET PROCUREMENTS 1
1. Competition Required 1
2. Solicitation Requirements and Restrictions 2
3. Methods of Procurement 7
4. Eligible Costs 20
5. Incentive Costs and Payments 21
6. Cost Analysis and Price Analysis 21
7. Evaluations 22
8. Contract Award 23

VII. PROTESTS, CHANGES AND MODIFICATIONS, DISPUTES, CLAIMS, LITIGATION, AND SETTLEMENTS 1
1. Protests 1
2. Changes and Modifications 4
3. Disputes 5
4. Claims and Litigation 7
5. FTA Participation in Settlements, Arbitration Awards, and Court Awards 8

APPENDICES

APPENDIX A REFERENCES 1
APPENDIX B FTA REGIONAL AND METROPOLITAN OFFICE CONTACT INFORMATION 1
APPENDIX C THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS 1
APPENDIX D PROVISIONS, CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, FORMS, AND OTHER—MATRICES 1

INDEX SUBJECT AND LOCATION IN CIRCULAR

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION AND ROLE OF THE FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION

1. THE FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA). FTA is one of ten modal administrations within the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) and is headed by an Administrator who is appointed by the President of the United States. FTA administers its programs and carries out its other activities through its headquarters office in Washington, DC, ten regional offices, and five metropolitan offices that assist public transportation agencies in all 50 States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, and in federally recognized Indian tribal areas.

   Public transportation includes, but is not limited to, transportation by buses, subways, light rail, commuter rail, monorail, passenger ferry boats, trolleys, inclined railways, people movers, and vans. Public transportation may be either fixed-route or demand-response service. The Federal Government, through FTA, provides financial assistance to develop new public transportation systems and improve, maintain, and operate existing systems. FTA oversees thousands of federally assisted projects to hundreds of State and local public transportation providers, primarily through its ten regional offices. Each FTA recipient is responsible for managing its programs and projects in compliance with applicable Federal requirements, and FTA is responsible for ensuring that recipients comply with those requirements.

2. AUTHORIZING LEGISLATION. Most Federal transit laws are codified at 49 U.S.C. Chapter 53. Authorizing legislation is substantive legislation enacted by Congress that establishes or continues the legal operation of a Federal program or agency. Congress has amended FTA's authorizing legislation every four to six years. FTA's most recent authorizing legislation, in effect for two fiscal years, is the Moving Ahead for Progress in the 21st Century Act (MAP 21) Pub. L. 112-141, July 6, 2012, however, it authorizes FTA programs for two years, from the beginning of Federal Fiscal Year 2013 through the end of Federal Fiscal Year 2014. Revisions to this edition of the circular encompass the MAP-21changes to Federal transit law and changes required by other laws that have become effective since FTA last issued this circular in 2003.

3. HOW TO CONTACT FTA. FTA's regional and metropolitan offices are responsible for providing financial assistance to FTA recipients and overseeing the implementation of most FTA programs. Certain programs, however, are the responsibility of FTA headquarters. You should direct inquiries to either the regional or metropolitan office responsible for the geographic area in which you are located. *See*, Appendix B for contact information.

   For further information, visit the FTA Web site: **http://www.fta.dot.gov** or contact FTA headquarters at the following address and phone number:

   Federal Transit Administration
   Office of Communication and Congressional Affairs
   1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE
   Washington, DC 20590

Phone: 202-366-4043
Fax: 202-366-3472

4. BACKGROUND. Because FTA awards a substantial amount of Federal assistance to support public transportation through its grants and cooperative agreements, Federal laws and regulations require FTA to ensure that its recipients use that Federal assistance prudently and in compliance with all applicable Federal requirements. While FTA's enabling legislation includes several provisions governing recipient procurements financed with FTA assistance (third party contracts), other government-wide Federal requirements seek to ensure fair and economical procurements when Federal assistance is expended.

5. DEFINITIONS. All definitions in 49 U.S.C. Section 5302 apply to this circular. The following additional definitions are provided:

   a. Approval, Authorization, Concurrence, Waiver means a deliberate written statement (transmitted in typewritten hard copy or in an electronic format or medium) of a Federal Government official authorized to permit the recipient to take or omit an action required by the Grant Agreement or Cooperative Agreement for the Project, Master Agreement, or this circular, which action may not be taken or omitted without that permission. Except to the extent that FTA determines otherwise in writing, that approval, authorization, concurrence, or waiver permitting the performance or omission of a specific action does not constitute permission to perform or omit other similar actions. An oral permission or interpretation has no legal force, authority, or effect.

   b. Best Value describes a competitive, negotiated procurement process in which the recipient reserves the right to select the most advantageous offer by evaluating and comparing factors in addition to cost or price such that a recipient may acquire technical superiority even if it must pay a premium price. A "premium" is the difference between the price of the lowest priced proposal and the one that the recipient believes offers the best value. The term "best value" also means the expected outcome of an acquisition that, in the recipient's estimation, provides the greatest overall benefit in response to its material requirements. To achieve best value in the context of acquisitions for public transportation purposes, the evaluation factors for a specific procurement should reflect the subject matter and the elements that are most important to the recipient. While FTA does not mandate any specific evaluation factors, the recipient must disclose those factors in its solicitation. Evaluation factors may include, but are not limited to, technical design, technical approach, length of delivery schedules, quality of proposed personnel, past performance, and management plan. This definition is intended neither to limit nor to dictate qualitative measures a recipient may employ, except that those qualitative measures must support the purposes of the Federal public transportation program.

   c. Cardinal Change means a major deviation from the original purpose of the work or the intended method of achievement, or a revision of contract work so extensive, significant, or cumulative that, in effect, the contractor is required to perform very different work from that described in the original contract.

   d. Change Order means an order authorized by the recipient directing the contractor to make changes, pursuant to contract provisions for such changes, with or without the consent of the contractor.

   e. Common Grant Rules, for purposes of this circular, means:

(1) DOT regulations, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments," 49 CFR Part 18, which apply to Federal grants and cooperative agreements with governmental recipients of Federal assistance including Indian tribal governments, and

(2) DOT regulations, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations," 49 CFR Part 19, which apply to Federal grants and cooperative agreements with non-governmental recipients of Federal assistance.

f. Constructive Change means an act or omission by the recipient that, although not identified by a "change order," does in fact cause a change in the contract work.

g. Contract means a mutually binding legal relationship obligating the seller to furnish the supplies or services (including construction) and the buyer to pay for them. It includes all types of commitments that obligate the recipient to expenditure and that, except as otherwise authorized, are in writing. In addition to bilateral instruments, contracts include (but are not limited to) awards and notices of awards; job orders or task letters issued under basic ordering agreements; letter contracts; orders, such as purchase orders, under which the contract becomes effective by written acceptance or performance; and bilateral contract modifications. Contracts do not include grants and cooperative agreements covered by 31 U.S.C. 6301, *et seq*.

h. Cooperative Agreement means an instrument by which FTA awards Federal assistance to a specific recipient to support a particular project in which FTA takes an active role or retains substantial control, as described in 31 U.S.C. Section 6305.

i. Design-Bid-Build Project means a construction project under which a recipient commissions an architect or engineer to prepare drawings and specifications under a design services contract, and separately contracts for construction, by engaging the services of a contractor through sealed bidding or competitive negotiations to complete delivery of the project.

j. Design-Build Project, as defined in 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(d)(1), means (1) a project under which a recipient enters into a contract with a seller, firm, or consortium of firms to design and build a public transportation system, or an operable segment of such system, that conforms to specific performance criteria; and (2) may include an option to finance, or operate for a period of time, the system or segment or any combination of designing, building, operating, or maintaining such system or segment. Apart from the definition at 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(d)(1), a "design-build project" also means a construction project under which a recipient enters into a contract with a seller, firm, or consortium of firms both to design and construct a public transportation facility that is the subject of the project.

k. Electronic Commerce (E-Commerce) consists of electronic techniques for accomplishing business transactions including electronic mail or messaging, World Wide Web internet technology, electronic bulletin boards, purchase cards, electronic funds transfer, electronic signatures, and electronic data interchange.

l. Force Account means the recipient's own labor forces and equipment, as discussed in this circular in the context of performing project work.

m. FTA means the Federal Transit Administration.

n. Full and Open Competition means that all responsible sources are permitted to compete.

o. Governmental Recipient means a recipient that must comply with the Common Grant Rule at 49 CFR Part 18. This includes a State or local government or a federally recognized Indian tribal government, as defined in this section of this Chapter.

p. Grant means the instrument by which FTA awards Federal assistance to a specific recipient to support a particular project in which FTA does not take an active role or retain substantial control, as described in 31 U.S.C. Section 6304.

q. Indian Tribal Government means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community, including any Native village as defined in Section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 43 U.S.C. Section 1602, certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided by him or her through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

r. Joint Procurement (sometimes informally referred to as "cooperative procurement") means a method of contracting in which two or more purchasers agree from the outset to use a single solicitation document and enter into a single contract with a vendor for delivery of property or services in a fixed quantity, even if expressed as a total minimum and total maximum. Unlike a State or local government purchasing schedule or contract, a joint procurement is not drafted for the purpose of accommodating the needs of other parties that may later choose to participate in the benefits of that contract.

   We recognize that some will use the term "cooperative procurement" informally to refer to arrangements we designate as "joint procurement." We also recognize that this may cause confusion with the very different arrangements for the U.S. General Services Administration's (GSA) "Cooperative Purchasing Program" and with similar State or local government purchasing programs that the State or local government might refer to as "cooperative."

s. Local Government means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority (including any public and Indian housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937) school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under state law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government. This term does not include a local public institution of higher education.

t. Master Agreement means the FTA document incorporated by reference and made part of FTA's standard grant agreements and cooperative agreements, that contains the standard terms and conditions governing the administration of a project supported with Federal assistance awarded by the FTA.

u. Modification means any written change to the terms of a contract.

v. Non-Governmental Recipient means a recipient that must comply with the Common Grant Rule at 49 CFR Part 19. This includes a public and private institution of higher education, a public or private hospital, and any other quasi-public or private non-profit organization such as, but not limited to, a community action agency, research institute, educational association, and health center. FTA reserves the right to apply the requirements of 49 CFR Part 19 to a commercial organization, a for-profit organization, a foreign or international organization (such as an agency of the United Nations), and an individual. The term does not include a government-owned contractor-operated facility or research center providing continued support for mission-oriented, large-scale programs that is government-owned or controlled, or is designated as a federally funded research and development center.

w. Project Labor Agreement (PLA) means an agreement between the contractor, subcontractors, and the union(s) representing workers. Under a PLA, the contractor, subcontractors, and union(s) working on a project agree on terms and conditions of employment for the project, establishing a framework for labor-management cooperation to advance the buyer's procurement interest in cost, efficiency, and quality.

x. Property, as used in this circular, includes real property consisting of land and buildings, structures, or appurtenances on land, equipment, supplies, other expendable property, intellectual property, and intangible property.

y. Public Transportation means transportation by a conveyance that provides regular and continuing general or special transportation to the public, but does not include school bus, charter, sightseeing, or intercity bus transportation, or intercity passenger rail transportation provided by the entity described in 49 U.S.C. Chapter 243, AMTRAK, (or a successor to such entity).

z. Recipient means the public or private entity to which FTA awards Federal assistance through a grant, cooperative agreement, or other agreement. The recipient is the entire legal entity even if only a particular component of the entity is designated in the document through which FTA has awarded the Federal assistance. The term "recipient" includes "grantee," which is a "recipient" of Federal grant assistance. The term "recipient" also includes each member of a consortium, joint venture, team, or partnership awarded FTA assistance through a grant, cooperative agreement, or other agreement.

For the purposes of this circular, "recipient" also includes any subrecipient or subgrantee of the recipient. Furthermore, a recipient is responsible for assuring that each of its subrecipients complies with the applicable requirements and standards of this circular, and that each of its subrecipients is aware of the Federal statutory and regulatory requirements that apply to its actions as a subrecipient.

Neither a third party contractor nor a third party subcontractor is a "recipient" for purposes of this circular.

aa. Revenue Contract means a contract in which the recipient or subrecipient provides access to public transportation assets for the primary purpose of either producing revenues in connection with a public transportation related activity, or creating business opportunities involving the use of FTA assisted property.

bb. State means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Virgin Islands, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments. "State" does not include any public and Indian housing agency under the United States Housing Act.

cc. State or Local Government Purchasing Schedule or Purchasing Contract means an arrangement that a State or local government has established with multiple vendors in which those vendors agree to provide essentially an option to the State or local government, and its subordinate government entities and others it might include in its programs, to acquire specific property or services in the future at established prices. These arrangements are somewhat similar to the GSA's Cooperative Purchasing Program available for Federal Government use. If, at a later date, the State or local government permits others to use its schedules, the State or local government might seek the agreement of the vendor to provide the listed property or services to others with access to the schedules. In the alternative the State or local government establishing the schedules might permit the vendor to determine whether or not it wishes to provide others the same contractual arrangement it affords the State or local government that has established the schedules.

We recognize that some will use the term "cooperative" in reference to these State and local programs, possibly because they are somewhat similar to GSA's "Cooperative Purchasing Program." These programs are distinct from "Joint Procurement" as defined this Chapter.

dd. Third Party Contract refers to a recipient's contract with a vendor or contractor, including procurement by purchase order or purchase by credit card, which is financed with Federal assistance awarded by FTA.

ee. Unsolicited Proposal means a proposal that is:

(1) Innovative and unique,

(2) Independently originated and developed by the offeror,

(3) Prepared without the recipient's supervision, endorsement, direction, or direct involvement,

(4) Sufficiently detailed that its benefits in support of the recipient's mission and responsibilities are apparent,

(5) Not an advance proposal for property or services that a recipient could acquire through competitive methods, and

(6) Not an offer responding to a recipient's previously published expression of need or request for proposals.

ff. Value Engineering means the systematic application of recognized techniques that identify the function of a product or service, establish a value for that function, and provide the necessary function reliably at the lowest overall cost. In all instances, the required function should be achieved at the lowest possible life-cycle cost consistent with requirements for performance, maintainability, safety, security, and aesthetics.

6. FTA'S ROLE. Consistent with the Common Grant Rules' directions to Federal agencies not to substitute their judgment for that of their recipients, FTA does not substitute its judgment for that of its recipients by making third party contract decisions for its recipients. FTA's role in third party procurements complies with the principles of Executive Order No. 13132, "Federalism," August 4, 1999, 5 U.S.C. Section 601 note. The Executive Order directs Federal agencies to refrain from substituting their judgment for that of their State recipients unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern and, to the maximum extent feasible, to permit the States to establish their own standards rather than impose national standards.

   To ensure compliance with Federal procurement requirements applicable to FTA projects, FTA will continue to provide guidance and technical assistance to its recipients consistent with its Federal oversight responsibilities.

   a. Reliance on the Recipient's Self-Certification. FTA recognizes that most FTA recipients have experience with the third party contracting requirements of the Common Grant Rules. Therefore, FTA will rely primarily on the recipient's annual "self-certification" (usually submitted in the first quarter of each Federal fiscal year) that its procurement system complies with FTA requirements and that the recipient has the technical capacity to comply with Federal procurement requirements. FTA requests each recipient to "self-certify" its procurement system as part of its Annual Certifications and Assurances.

      To preclude unnecessary delay of recipient procurements, FTA generally does not conduct preaward reviews of third party contracts or contract specifications as envisioned in the Common Grant Rules, 49 CFR Section 18.36(g)(2) and 49 CFR Section 19.44(e). Instead, FTA relies heavily on the recipient's self-certification of its procurement system.

      FTA, however, will review compliance with this circular as part of its routine oversight responsibilities. If FTA becomes aware of circumstances that might invalidate a recipient's self-certification, FTA will investigate and recommend appropriate measures to correct the recipient's deficiencies.

   b. Third Party Contract Reviews. Although the Common Grant Rules authorizes FTA to conduct preaward reviews, FTA relies on the validity of the recipient's self-certification rather than on preaward review of third party contracts as a whole (except for certain reviews of portions of rolling stock procurements). FTA will rely on periodic, post-award reviews to ensure that the recipient complies with Federal requirements and standards. Should a recipient fail to self-certify its procurement system, however, FTA reserves the right to conduct preaward reviews as provided by the Common Grant Rules. Even if a recipient self-certifies its procurement system, the recipient still may request FTA's preaward review of specific procurements as part of FTA's technical assistance program. Conversely, if FTA seeks to review the record of a particular procurement, the recipient must make its procurement documents available for FTA's preaward or post-award review.

   c. Procurement System Reviews. Under 49 U.S.C. Section 5307(i), a recipient may request the Secretary of Transportation to approve its procurement system, and FTA may approve that procurement system if it complies with Federal requirements. As required by 49 U.S.C. Section 5307(h), FTA must perform reviews and evaluations of the Urbanized Area Formula Program,

including full reviews and evaluations of the performance of each recipient that implement Urbanized Area Formula projects, with specific reference to the recipient's compliance with statutory and administrative requirements.

Accordingly, FTA will perform procurement system reviews as part of its on-going project oversight responsibilities and will perform procurement system reviews for Urbanized Area Formula Program recipients that self-certify their procurement systems. To assist the recipient in improving its procurement practices, FTA may recommend certain "best practices." In those situations, FTA will identify its recommendations as "advisory." For more information, see FTA's "Procurement Reviews," guidance at the FTA Web site: **http://www.fta.dot.gov/funding/oversight/grants_financing_100.html**.

d. Audits. FTA may perform, contract for, or instruct the recipient to obtain specific audits of particular third party contracts to determine whether payments were made in conformance with the terms of the contract, or for other purposes.

e. Training and Technical Assistance. FTA provides procurement training and technical assistance at both regional and national levels by offering various instructional courses, by conducting regional technical assistance conferences, and by providing assistance by a contractor as needed.

f. Master Agreement. From the inception of its electronic award system in Fiscal Year 1995, FTA has incorporated by reference and made part of each FTA grant and FTA cooperative agreement a Master Agreement that FTA issues annually. Along with the standard terms and conditions governing an FTA assisted project, the most recent FTA Master Agreement, typically issued at the beginning of each Federal fiscal year, contains references to substantially all FTA and other cross-cutting Federal laws and regulations that may apply to a federally assisted project. Several of these Federal requirements must be included in third party contracts to the lowest tier necessary, and others will have a direct or indirect effect on the recipient's third party contracts, and therefore should be included in those third party contracts.

g. "Best Practices Procurement Manual" (BPPM). FTA's "Best Practices Procurement Manual" (BPPM) provides suggested procedures, methods, and examples to advise a recipient how it might conduct its third party procurements in compliance with Federal laws and regulations and FTA Circular 4220.1F guidance. These procedures, methods, and examples are based on the Federal acquisition process, U.S. Comptroller General Decisions, and "Best Practices" of recipients of FTA assistance and others in the industry, and FTA encourages recipients to adopt them as needed. Although the BPPM can be a good resource for the recipient to use in conducting FTA assisted procurements, it is not the source of any FTA or Federal requirements and, as such, is not binding on FTA recipients although the underlying Federal laws and regulations from which the BPPM's advice and recommendations are derived will apply. As such, the text of the BPPM is not and should not be treated as an official description of any FTA or Federal requirement. Moreover, although FTA does revise and update the BPPM periodically, FTA cautions each recipient that relying solely on the BPPM may not ensure compliance with all applicable FTA and Federal requirements. You can obtain access to the BPPM at the FTA Web site: **http://www.fta.dot.gov/funding/thirdpartyprocurement/grants_financing_6037.html.**

h. Third Party Procurement Helpline. This Helpline at the FTA Web site provides another resource through which you may submit your third party contracting questions to FTA. To do so, access the FTA Web site: **http://www.fta.dot.gov/funding/thirdpartyprocurement/grants_financing_6040.html**.

i. "Frequently Asked Questions." To review the Frequently Asked Questions pertaining to third party contracting, access the FTA Web site: **http://www.fta.dot.gov/funding/thirdpartyprocurement/grants_financing_6039.html**.

j. FTA Offices. You may also contact your FTA regional or metropolitan office or FTA's Office of Administration for assistance. You can find a list of FTA's regional and metropolitan offices in Appendix B of this document.

CHAPTER II

APPLICABILITY

1. LEGAL EFFECT OF THE CIRCULAR. The Federal Transit Administration (FTA) has developed this circular to assist its recipients and their subrecipients in complying with the various Federal laws and regulations that affect their FTA assisted procurements. FTA considers this circular, in its entirety, to be a guidance document. While this guidance itself does not have the force and effect of Federal law or regulation, it does contain information about Federal laws and regulations for which compliance is mandatory when applicable.

   As guidance, this circular attempts to describe how a recipient or subrecipient of FTA assistance can comply with those Federal requirements. In some cases, this guidance describes the single method by which an FTA recipient or subrecipient can comply with a specific Federal legal or regulatory requirement. In other cases, Federal laws, regulations, and this guidance provide more flexibility. As guidance, this circular also expresses FTA's preferences about how the procurements it supports should be undertaken. FTA's Master Agreement reflects FTA and the recipient's agreement that FTA's third party contracting circular will apply to its third party contracts. As a guidance document, this circular does not waive any requirements of Federal statutes or regulations restated herein except as permitted by their terms.

   Because this circular is guidance, FTA is willing to consider methods of compliance with Federal laws and regulations other than those described therein. If a recipient identifies an alternative method for complying with an applicable Federal statute and regulation, it may contact FTA before employing that method to ensure that FTA agrees with the alternative proposed. While FTA's prior concurrence is not required, FTA reserves the right to decline to participate in the costs of third party procurements that fail to comply with Federal laws, regulations, or the terms of the recipient's underlying grant or cooperative agreement.

2. APPLICABILITY OF THE CIRCULAR. Unless FTA determines otherwise in writing, this guidance applies when the recipient uses FTA assistance to support its procurements.

   a. Participants in FTA Assisted Procurements. Whether and how the circular applies to a specific participant in an FTA assisted project depends on its relationship to the particular FTA assisted procurement:

      (1) Recipients of FTA Grants or Cooperative Agreements. The circular applies to each FTA recipient of Federal assistance, including each grantee and recipient of Federal assistance under a cooperative agreement or an "other agreement"

(whether an individual entity or member of a consortium, joint venture, team, or partnership) when it uses FTA assistance for third party contracts. The extent to which the provisions of this circular apply to a recipient depends on whether the recipient is a State or other than a State.

(a) States. When procuring property and services under a grant or cooperative agreement, a State may use the same procurement policies and procedures that it uses for acquisitions not financed with Federal assistance. At a minimum, the State must comply with the federally mandated requirements on contract term limitations for revenue vehicle purchases, competition, prohibitions against geographic preferences, procurement of architectural engineering (A&E) services, and awards to responsible contractors. The State must also ensure that each purchase order and contract financed with FTA assistance includes all provisions required by Federal statutes and their implementing regulations.

1 Governmental Subrecipients of the State. Each State and its governmental subrecipients may use State procurement procedures for their third party contracts. Only those provisions of this circular and the sections of the Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients, 49 CFR Part 18, applicable to the State will apply to procurements by the State's governmental subrecipients.

2 Private Non-Profit Subrecipients of the State. In contrast, the provisions of this circular and the Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients, 49 CFR Part 19, will apply to a private non-profit subrecipient of a State.

(b) Recipients and Subrecipients that are not States. This circular applies to third party contractors and subcontractors of all other FTA recipients and their subrecipients, including regional public transportation authorities that are not a State. Even though a recipient or subrecipient is not a State, it may use its own procurement procedures, if those procedures conform to applicable Federal law and regulations, including the applicable Common Grant Rule.

(2) Subrecipients of FTA Assistance. This circular also applies to each subrecipient, including each subgrantee (a type of subrecipient), under an FTA grant or cooperative agreement) that enters into contracts with other parties financed with FTA assistance.

(3) Recipients of Both Federal Assistance Awarded by FTA and Funds Provided by Another Federal Agency. An FTA recipient that also uses funding provided by another Federal agency or agencies for a third party procurement also supported

with FTA assistance must comply with the third party contracting requirements of both FTA and each additional Federal agency providing Federal assistance. If compliance with all Federal requirements is impossible, the recipient should notify the FTA Chief Counsel for resolution. If an FTA recipient finances an acquisition with funding provided by another Federal agency but not with FTA assistance, this circular would not apply to that procurement.

(4) Recipients of "Other Agreement" Assistance. For "other agreements" authorized by 49 U.S.C. Section 5312(a) for research, development, demonstration, and deployment projects or by 49 U.S.C. Section 5312(b) for joint partnership projects for the deployment of public transportation innovation, this circular may be used as an initial starting point from which to consider the Federal requirements and other provisions that should be adopted for the project, and the other standard Federal requirements that should be modified or waived to achieve FTA's and the recipient's objectives.

(5) Third Party Contractors and Subcontractors.

(a) Status. Neither third party contractors nor third party subcontractors are "recipients" or "subrecipients" for purposes of this circular. Consequently, third party contractors are not directly covered by this circular, the Common Grant Rules at 49 CFR Parts 18 and 19, or FTA's "Best Practices Procurement Manual" (BPPM) in awarding their subcontracts.

(b) Effect of Federal Requirements. However, each third party contractor and subcontractor is required to comply with the terms of its third party contract or subcontract, including requirements to extend those federally required clauses and provisions to its subcontractors at the lowest tier required. For that reason, this circular, the Common Grant Rules at 49 CFR Parts 18 and 19, and the BPPM do provide useful information to a third party contractor and third party subcontractor about the constraints under which a recipient may enter into a third party contract financed with FTA assistance.

b. Project Types and Third Party Contracts. With limited exceptions, FTA's Master Agreement reflects FTA and the recipient's agreement that FTA's third party contracting circular will apply to its third party contracts. The extent to which this circular applies to a recipient's contract depends on the character of that contract and the project which it supports.

(1) Capital Contracts. The provisions of this circular apply to most third party capital contracts except as listed below:

(a) Capital Contracts Financed Entirely Without Federal Assistance. Generally, the provisions of this circular do not apply to a recipient's capital contracts

that are unrelated to an FTA assisted capital project and can be demonstrated to be entirely financed without FTA assistance or other Federal funds.

(b) Art. Procurements of art works and the services of artists are now included in this circular at Chapter IV, Subsection 4.g. These procedures are consistent with the procurement procedures of FTA Circular 9400.1A, "Federal Transit Administration Design and Art in Transit Projects," dated 06-09-95. FTA's "Best Practices Procurement Manual" still includes extensive non-binding suggestions and advice on procuring art works and the services of artists. FTA also has a Web site dedicated to art issues at **http://www.fta.dot.gov/publications/reports/other_reports/about_FTA_10641.html.**

(c) Over-the-Road Bus Accessibility Program. Section 3038 of the Transportation Equity Act for the 21st Century 1998 (TEA-21), as amended by Section 3039 of SAFETEA-LU, 49 U.S.C. Section 5310 note, authorizes the Over-the-Road Bus Accessibility Program to provide Federal assistance to private for-profit companies for the incremental costs of wheelchair lift equipment and the necessary training to implement DOT's accessibility requirements for over-the-road buses. FTA has determined that the provisions of this circular and the Common Grant Rules do not apply to the acquisition of FTA assisted property or services under that program. As a result, FTA's annual notice of availability of funds for that program does not refer to Common Grant Rule procurement requirements or this circular. The provisions of this circular and the Common Grant Rule at 49 CFR Part 19, however, apply to any over-the-road buses and related equipment for them acquired under another FTA program.

(d) Real Property. Procurements of real property consisting of land and any existing buildings and structures on that land are generally beyond the scope of this circular. Real property acquisition is addressed in DOT regulations, "Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition for Federal and Federally Assisted Programs," 49 CFR Part 24, implementing the Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, as amended, 42 U.S.C. Sections 4601 *et seq.*, which provide protections for owners and lessees of real property to be acquired as part of an FTA assisted project. More guidance is included in the most recent edition of FTA Circular 5010.1, providing "Grant Management" guidance

The third party contracting provisions of this circular, however, do apply to FTA assisted construction of buildings, structures, or appurtenances that were not on land to be used for the project when that land was acquired. The third party contracting provisions of this circular also apply to any alterations or

repairs to buildings or structures existing on that land when that land was acquired or made available for the FTA assisted project.

(2) Operations Contracts. FTA has reviewed its policies with respect to operations procurements undertaken by FTA recipients and their subrecipients and has adopted the following policies:

(a) Operations Contracts Financed With FTA Assistance. The provisions of this circular continue to apply to contracts in support of a recipient's or subrecipient's operations financed with FTA assistance.

(b) Operations Contracts Financed Entirely Without FTA Assistance. FTA has determined that its third party contracting requirements will not apply to operations contracts that recipients and their subrecipients finance entirely without FTA assistance. Notwithstanding any other provision of this circular, however, a recipient that enters into third party contracts for operations or planning must comply with the requirements of DOT regulations, "Participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises in Department of Transportation Financial Assistance Programs," 49 CFR Part 26, applicable to those contracts, regardless of how or whether it intends to use its FTA assistance for contracts or other purposes. Specifically, a recipient required to have a Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) program may not structure its operations expenditures so that an unreasonable proportion of contracts that could be performed by DBEs are removed from its DBE program. Other Federal regulations issued by FTA, DOT, or other Federal agencies may also apply to a third party contractor, either directly as a covered entity or when the third party contractor is expected to perform activities on behalf of another entity or the Federal Government.

(3) Preventive Maintenance Contracts. Third party contracts for preventive maintenance are eligible for FTA capital assistance. This circular applies to a recipient's preventive maintenance contracts financed with FTA assistance. If a recipient uses its FTA assistance to support specific preventive maintenance contracts that are separate and distinct from its other maintenance or operations contracts, and if, through its accounting procedures, a recipient can allocate and trace all its Federal assistance for capital preventive maintenance to those separate and distinct preventive maintenance contracts, this circular applies only to those specific FTA assisted contracts. If, however, the recipient applies its Federal capital assistance for preventive maintenance as a percentage of its total maintenance costs, and the recipient cannot allocate all of its Federal assistance for capital maintenance to specific preventive maintenance contracts that are separate and distinct from its other maintenance or operations contracts, this circular

applies to all the recipient's preventive maintenance contracts, even if specific maintenance or operations contracts were financed wholly without FTA assistance.

(4) Revenue Contracts. A revenue contract is a contract in which the recipient or subrecipient provides access to public transportation assets for the primary purpose of either producing revenues in connection with an activity related to public transportation, or creating business opportunities with the use of FTA assisted property. The recipient has broad latitude in determining the extent and type of competition appropriate for a particular revenue contract. Nevertheless, to ensure fair and equal access to FTA assisted property and to maximize revenue derived from such property, the recipient should conduct its revenue contracting as follows:

(a) Limited Contract Opportunities. If there are several potential competitors for a limited opportunity (such as advertising space on the side of a bus), then the recipient should use a competitive process to permit interested parties an equal chance to obtain that limited opportunity.

(b) Open Contract Opportunities. If, however, one party seeks access to a public transportation asset (such as a utility that might seek cable access in a subway system), and the recipient is willing and able to provide contracts or licenses to other parties similarly situated (since there is room for a substantial number of such cables without interfering with transit operations), then competition would not be necessary because the opportunity to obtain contracts or licenses is open to all similar parties.

In the case of joint development, as explained below, FTA will work with the recipient to determine appropriate procedures, as necessary.

(5) Joint Development. Many public transportation agencies form partnerships with the private sector in order to promote real estate development in and around transit facilities, which is often referred to as "joint development." Although FTA joint development projects are primarily a means to provide private capital to transit projects, joint development projects combine aspects of federally assisted construction and revenue contracting. FTA has published joint development guidance, including third party contracting guidance in a "Notice of Final Agency Guidance on the Eligibility of Joint Development Improvements under Federal Transit Law," 72 FR 5788, February 7, 2007. Section VI of the Joint Development guidance addresses FTA's third party contracting requirements.

(a) Construction Contracts. This circular applies to FTA assisted construction aspects of a joint development project.

(b) Revenue Contracts. FTA will work with the recipient on a case-by-case basis to craft approaches suitable for revenue contracts as defined in this circular. FTA's concern is that procedures used satisfy Federal statutory and regulatory requirements for competition while preserving the benefits of joint development to the maximum possible extent.

(c) Other Contracts. If a contract between a recipient and a third party involving a joint development project is not a construction contract or a revenue contract as defined in this circular, then that contract is not covered by FTA's third party contracting provisions. For example, third party contracts to manage, operate, or maintain intercity bus or intercity rail terminals, or tenancy agreements with third party intercity bus or intercity rail operators are the types of operations contracts not covered by FTA's third party contracting provisions. Nevertheless, even in situations not covered by the third party contracting provisions, FTA generally favors full and open competition.

(6) Public-Private Partnerships. A Public-Private Partnership (PPP) is a formal contractual arrangement between a public recipient and one or more private partners establishing a mechanism for procuring property and services under which the private sector assumes some of the public sector's customary role in the planning, financing, design, construction, operation, and maintenance of a transportation facility compared to traditional procurement methods, many of which activities are generally controlled by the public sector partner. As part of FTA's interest in fostering PPPs, FTA is considering which procurement and other requirements may be modified to simplify project implementation, including procurement requirements that are redundant with private sector safeguards, incentives, and obligations. While a recipient that has not formed a PPP may use some of the contract delivery arrangements or project delivery systems listed below, FTA is considering the implications for PPPs that use the following types of contracting delivery arrangements or project delivery systems, including, but not limited to:

(a) Design-Build,

(b) Design-Build with a Warranty,

(c) Construction Manager at Risk,

(d) Design-Build-Operate-Maintain,

(e) Design-Build-Finance-Operate,

(f) Build-Operate-Transfer,

(g) Build-Own-Operate, and

(h) Full Delivery or Program Management.

For a description of these types of PPPs, see FTA "Notice of establishment of Public-Private Partnership Pilot Program; solicitation of applications," 72 FR 2583, esp. 2584, 2585-2591, January 19, 2007.

As a starting point, FTA expects the parties to the PPP to apply the requirements of this circular to FTA assisted projects they undertake. A PPP recipient seeking an exception from specific provisions of this circular should contact the FTA Project Manager. FTA will work with the recipient to craft processes as necessary to satisfy the statutory and regulatory requirements for competition when FTA assistance is used while preserving the benefits of the innovative contracting strategy proposed to the maximum possible extent.

(7) Transactions Involving Complex Financial Arrangements. If a public transportation project involves the services of an "arranger" or similar facilitator, and those services will be financed with Federal assistance or the proceeds from the use of property supported with FTA assistance, FTA expects the recipient to use competitive procedures to select the "arranger." If, however, a public transportation project involves the services of an "arranger" or similar facilitator whose services will not be financed with Federal assistance or the proceeds from the use of property acquired with FTA assistance, FTA encourages, but does not require, competition in the selection of that arranger.

FTA also encourages the recipient to impose whatever conflict of interest provisions in its contract with the arranger the recipient may believe desirable. After the arranger is selected and then develops a transaction involving FTA assisted assets, FTA requires competition to the extent permissible in view of the limitations of securities regulations.

(8) Force Account. FTA third party contracting guidance does not apply to a recipient's use of its own forces to perform project work.

3. FEDERAL LAWS AND REGULATIONS. Each recipient and subrecipient must comply with applicable Federal laws and regulations including, but not limited to, Federal transit laws at 49 U.S.C. Chapter 53, FTA regulations, and other Federal laws and regulations that contain requirements applicable to FTA recipients and their FTA assisted procurements.

a. Common Grant Rules. The following government-wide regulations (frequently referred to as the "Common Grant Rules") contain the most comprehensive Federal requirements applicable to FTA's assistance programs:

(1) Governmental Recipients. DOT regulations, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments," 49 CFR Part 18, apply to governmental recipients (apart from institutions of higher education) and Indian tribes, and

(2) Non-Governmental Recipients. DOT regulations, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations," 49 CFR Part 19, apply to private non-profit entities, institutions of higher education and, if FTA so determines, to private for-profit organizations.

b. Federal Acquisition Regulation. The Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), 48 CFR Chapter 1, does not apply to federally assisted procurements, absent Federal laws or regulations to the contrary. In the case of FTA programs, FAR Part 31 cost principles apply to grants and cooperative agreements with private for-profit entities. Audits of A&E services listed in 49 U.S.C. Section 5325 must be carried out under FAR Part 31 cost principles. In other circumstances, in the absence of specific guidance for federally assisted projects, other FAR standards might prove useful if the recipient's circumstances are suitable for application of a specific FAR provision under consideration. One major exception concerns at this time concerns the "simplified acquisition threshold." In this matter, FTA is taking the position that the FAR clause 2.101 definition of "simplified acquisition threshold," which was increased from $100,000 to $150,000, does not apply to FTA's federally assisted programs absent specific guidance from the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) or DOT, which we have not received as of February 2011. Instead FTA is continuing to use the dollar standard of the underlying original statute, establishing the simplified acquisition threshold, 41 U.S.C. Section 403(11), referred to in the Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients. But when Federal regulations or guidance is issued, FTA will implement it appropriately.

c. Other Federal Requirements. In addition to the Common Grant Rules, each FTA recipient must comply with applicable Federal transit laws and implementing regulations not addressed in the Common Grant Rules, and with other Federal cross cutting statutes and regulations that affect what a recipient may acquire.

(1) Compilation in the Master Agreement. Citations to most Federal requirements are included in the latest edition of FTA's Master Agreement, typically issued at the beginning of each Federal fiscal year, which includes comprehensive information about Federal laws and regulations that may apply to an FTA assisted project. FTA strongly encourages participants in FTA assisted projects to review the Master Agreement when making its procurement decisions. *See*, Chapter I, subsection 6.f of this circular for additional information about the Master Agreement.

(2) Conflicting Federal Requirements. Requirements of the various Federal agencies that may be involved in the project will sometimes differ, with the result that FTA expects the recipient to comply with all those differences. If compliance with all applicable Federal requirements is impossible, the recipient should notify the FTA Chief Counsel for resolution.

d. Waivers. Requests for waivers of Federal requirements should be addressed to the Federal Transit Administrator

4. STATE AND LOCAL LAWS AND REGULATIONS. The Common Grant Rules provide that recipients and subrecipients will use their own procurement procedures that comply with applicable State and local laws and regulations, and also comply with applicable Federal laws and regulations.

a. Inadequate State and Local Requirements. If State or local laws or regulations do not address a particular aspect of procurement adequately, Federal direct procurement principles may often (but not always) provide useful guidance.

b. Conflicts between Federal Requirements and State or Local Requirements. If Federal requirements conflict with State or local requirements, the recipient should provide written notification promptly to either the FTA Regional Counsel for the region in which the project takes place or the FTA Assistant Chief Counsel for General Law in the case of projects administered by FTA headquarters staff. FTA will then work with the recipient to make appropriate arrangements to proceed with the project. If unsuccessful, then FTA reserves the right to amend or terminate Federal assistance for the underlying Project.

CHAPTER III

THE RECIPIENT'S RESPONSIBILITIES

1. WRITTEN STANDARDS OF CONDUCT. The Common Grant Rules require each recipient to maintain written standards of conduct governing the performance of its employees that are engaged in or otherwise involved in the award or administration of third party contracts.

   a. Personal Conflicts of Interest. As provided in the Common Grant Rules and in the Federal Transit Administration (FTA) Master Agreement, no employee, officer, agent, or board member, or his or her immediate family member, partner, or organization that employs or is about to employ any of the foregoing individuals may participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported with FTA assistance if a conflict of interest, real or apparent, would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when any of those individuals previously listed has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for award.

   b. Gifts. The recipient's officers, employees, agents, or board members may neither solicit nor accept gifts, gratuities, favors, or anything of monetary value from contractors, potential contractors, or parties to subcontracts. The recipient may set minimum rules when the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal intrinsic value.

   c. Violations. To the extent permitted by State or local law or regulations, such standards of conduct will provide for penalties, sanctions, or other disciplinary action for violation of such standards by the recipient's officers, employees, agents, board members, or by contractors, subcontractors, or subrecipients or their agents.

2. SELF-CERTIFICATION. FTA expects each recipient to self-certify that its procurement system complies with Federal requirements for any FTA assisted third party contract the recipient undertakes and administers.

3. THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CAPACITY. As part of an FTA recipient's obligation to maintain adequate technical capacity to carry out its project and comply with the Common Grant Rules, the recipient's third party contracting capability must be adequate to undertake its procurements effectively and efficiently in compliance with applicable Federal, State, and local requirements. The Common Grant Rules require the recipient to maintain a contract administration system to ensure that it and its third party contractors comply with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders and applicable Federal, State and local requirements. Many FTA recipients assign

contracting duties to technical, financial or management personnel. If the recipient lacks qualified personnel within its organization to undertake the various procurement tasks, such as drafting specifications, evaluating contracts, or performing internal audits for the recipient, FTA expects the recipient to acquire the necessary services from sources outside the recipient's organization. When using outside sources, the recipient should take appropriate steps to prevent or mitigate organizational conflicts of interest that would result in conflicting roles that might bias a contractor's judgment or would result in unfair competitive advantage.

a. Written Procurement Procedures. The Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients requires the recipient to have written procurement procedures, and by implication, the Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients requires written procurement procedures as a condition of self-certification. The recipient's procurement procedures are expected to address:

(1) Solicitations. The following standards apply to solicitations:

(a) Clear Descriptions. A clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured is required (discussed further in Chapter VI of this circular).

(b) Nonrestrictive Specifications. In competitive procurements, the description may not contain features that unduly restrict competition. Notably, FTA may not finance procurements that use exclusionary or discriminatory specifications (discussed further in Chapter VI of this circular).

(c) Quality Requirements. A description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product, or service to be procured and, when necessary, describe minimum essential characteristics and standards to which the property or services must conform if it is to satisfy the recipient's intended use (discussed further in Chapter VI of this circular).

(d) Preference for Performance Specifications. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients advises the recipient that "[d]etailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible." The Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients advises the recipient to describe technical requirements in terms of "functions to be performed or performance required, including the range of acceptable characteristics or minimum acceptable standards" (discussed further in Chapter VI of this circular).

(e) Brand Name or Equal. When it is impractical or uneconomical to write a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements of the property or services to be acquired, a "brand name or equal" description may be used to

define the performance or other salient characteristics of the property or services sought. The specific features or salient characteristics of the named brand which must be met by offerors of "an equal" proposal must be clearly stated (discussed further in Chapter VI of this circular).

The Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients further requires (and governmental recipients should have) written procurement procedures that address:

(2) Necessity. The recipient's need for the property or services (discussed further in Chapter VI of this circular).

(3) Lease versus Purchase. The use of lease or purchase alternatives to achieve an economical and practical procurement (discussed further in Chapter IV of this circular).

(4) Metric Usage. The acceptance, to the extent practicable and economically feasible, of products and services dimensioned in the metric system of measurement (discussed further in Chapter IV of this circular).

(5) Environmental and Energy Efficiency Preferences. A preference, to the extent practicable and economically feasible, for products and services that conserve natural resources, protect the environment, and are energy efficient (discussed further in Chapter IV of this circular).

The recipient's procurement procedures should also address the following matters:

(6) Procurement Methods. What procurement methods may be used (discussed further in Chapter VI of this circular).

(7) Legal Restrictions. Any Federal, State, or local restrictions on the recipient's acquisitions (discussed further in Chapter IV of this circular).

(8) Third Party Contract Provisions. The specific third party contract provisions required for each third party contract including requirements that each third party contractor extend those provisions to its subcontractors to the extent required (discussed further in Chapter IV of this circular).

(9) Sources. The availability and use of various sources of property and services (discussed further in Chapter V of this circular).

(10) Resolution of Third Party Contracting Issues. Procedures to resolve third party contracting issues (discussed further in Chapter VII of this circular).

b. Adequate Third Party Contract Provisions. The Common Grant Rules requires that all third party contracts include provisions adequate to form a sound and complete agreement. Compliance with Federal laws and regulations will usually result in the addition of many other contract provisions to ensure compliance with those laws and regulations. *See*, Chapter IV of this circular for requirements applicable to third party contractors and the property and services those third party contractors agree to provide. Because bid and offers can at times be ambiguous, in its solicitation documents, the Recipient reserves the right to request additional information before making an award. The Recipient also reserves the right to seek clarification from any bidder or offeror about any statement in its bid or proposal that the Recipient finds ambiguous.

c. Industry Contracts. The recipient should take special care when using an industry developed contract or contract that may be provided by a bidder or offeror. Not only may that contract lack the required Federal provisions, but its terms may also be unfavorable to the recipient. FTA does not intend to prohibit the use of industry forms, specifications, or contract terms when their use would benefit the recipient and would accommodate Federal requirements. Instead, FTA intends to remind the recipient to use industry developed forms, specifications, or contract terms cautiously.

d. Record Keeping. The Common Grant Rules require the recipient to prepare and maintain adequate and readily accessible project performance and financial records, covering procurement transactions as well as other aspects of project implementation. The Common Grant Rules require the recipient to maintain these records for three years after the recipient and subrecipients, if any, have made final payment and all other pending matters are closed. The recipient must also prepare, maintain, and distribute the following documents as necessary:

(1) Procurement History. The Common Grant Rules require the recipient to maintain and make available to FTA written records detailing the history of each procurement, as follows:

(a) Procurement Method. A governmental recipient must (and a non-governmental recipient should) provide its rationale for the method of procurement it used for each contract, including a sole source justification for any acquisition that does not qualify as competitive, while a non-governmental recipient need only provide a justification for lack of competition when it does not obtain competitive bids or proposals for contracts exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold. *See*, Chapter II, Subsection 3.b for discussion of amount of simplified acquisition threshold;

(b) Contract Type. A governmental recipient must (and a non-governmental recipient should) state the reasons for selecting the contract type it used (fixed price, cost reimbursement, and so forth);

(c) Contractor Selection. A governmental recipient must state its reasons for contractor selection or rejection. FTA expects the recipient to include a justification for each noncompetitive award. For procurements exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold (formerly the small purchase threshold – *see*, Chapter II, Subsection 3.b.), a non-governmental recipient must state its reasons for contractor selection, but need not state its reasons for contractor rejection. Each recipient should include a written responsibility determination for the successful contractor; and

(d) Cost or Price. Each recipient must evaluate and state its justification for the contract cost or price.

(e) Reasonable Documentation. The extent of documentation should be reasonable. Documents included in a procurement history should be commensurate with the size and complexity of the procurement itself. FTA recognizes that these written records will vary greatly for different procurements. For example, a receipt or bill accompanying a $100 credit card purchase might contain all of the required information to support that procurement. Procurements that are more substantial may require extensive documentation.

(2) Access to Records. Apart from the more limited record access provisions of the Common Grant Rules, 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(g) provides FTA and DOT officials, the U.S. Comptroller General, or any of their representatives, access to and the right to examine and inspect all records, documents, and papers, including contracts, related to any FTA project financed with Federal assistance authorized by 49 U.S.C. Chapter 53.

e. Special Notification Requirements for States. For many years, various Federal appropriations laws imposed notification requirements on all recipients of Federal assistance awards exceeding $500,000. Currently, notification requirements have been limited to States, but the $500,000 threshold has been removed. Therefore, each State must include provisions in all its requests for proposals, solicitations, Federal assistance applications, forms, notifications, press releases, or other publications involving FTA assistance, stating that FTA is or will be providing Federal assistance for the project, the amount of Federal assistance FTA has provided or expects to provide, and the Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) Number of the program that authorizes the Federal assistance. FTA interprets the statute to require that

subrecipients, lessees, or third party contractors of the State at any tier also comply with those notification requirements. Because appropriations laws expire annually and these provisions have not been enacted as permanent legislation or even appear consistently in the same appropriations acts, it is necessary to review the various Federal appropriations acts for the applicable fiscal year to determine the required level of notification. FTA's Master Agreement incorporates the notification requirements in effect when that Master Agreement is issued.

f. Use of Technology/Electronic Commerce. Along with other technology the recipient may choose to employ, the recipient may use a well-structured Electronic Commerce system to conduct third party procurements.

(1) Sufficient System Capacity. The recipient's electronic system must have sufficient system capacity necessary to accommodate all Federal requirements, including applicable accessibility requirements, for full and open competition.

(2) Written Procedures. The recipient must establish adequate written procedures before any solicitation takes place. Those procedures must be sufficient to ensure that all the information FTA requires for project administration is entered into the recipient's electronic system and can be made readily available to FTA as needed.

(3) Uses. The recipient may undertake third party procurements through:

(a) Standard Bidding and Proposal Procedures. Standard procurement procedures may be implemented through an electronic medium or resource to the extent of the system's capacity.

(b) Electronic Bidding and Reverse Auctions. FTA recipients may use electronic bidding and reverse auctions.

1 Value. Procurements with a value of $100,000 or less may be conducted through electronic bidding or reverse auctions. If permitted under State or local law, procurements with a greater value may also be conducted through electronic bidding or reverse auctions. The recipient may acquire the services of a contractor to manage electronic bidding and conduct reverse auctions.

2 Procedures. Although neither FTA nor the Office of Federal Procurement Policy have established a formal definition of "reverse auction" or formal procedures for reverse auctions for Federal Government or Federal assistance purposes, the U.S. Comptroller General has approved the following procedures for reverse auctions of less than $100,000:

a Notification. The buyer "will notify potential participants of an upcoming auction, specifying the time that the auction will start and close."

b Bid or Quote Submission. Those who choose to participate will submit bids or quotations to the online auction Web site.

c Information Displayed During the Auction. During the auction, the Web site will display the property to be inspected, the current lowest quotation, and the time remaining in the auction.

d Information Not Displayed During the Auction. The Web site will not display the names of vendors, any other identifying information, or the time at which quotations were submitted.

e Information Displayed at the End of the Auction. At the close of the auction, competing vendors will be able to view all submitted quotations, as well as the winning quotation, and a purchase order will be sent to the winning vendor.

f Information Provided at the End of the Auction. The buyer will provide the name of the winning vendor and its quotation to unsuccessful vendors, but not the identity of the unsuccessful vendors.

4. AUDIT. A third party contract audit can be an important tool for managing procurements. In addition to special audits FTA may initiate, the recipient may find it desirable to perform an audit of one or more specific third party contracts as part of its own management process. The firm performing the recipient's federally required single annual audit may also recommend the audit of a specific third party contract.

   a. The Recipient's Auditors. In some cases, the recipient has sufficient qualified personnel to perform the third party contract audits it needs. In the alternative, the recipient may engage a qualified independent accountant or accounting firm to perform its audit responsibilities.

   b. Independent Auditors. The recipient's personnel will not be able to perform certain audits required by the Federal Government, such as audits required by the Single Audit Act of 1984, as amended, 31 U.S.C. Sections 7501 *et seq*. and OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations" as revised. If the Federal Government requires additional audits, it may also be necessary for the recipient to engage independent auditors not performing other work for the recipient. See also Chapter IV, subparagraph 2.b(19)(a) of this circular.

c. Federal Audit Agencies. The Federal Government maintains a continuing Federal audit capability at certain contractor locations. On occasion, these auditors may be used to audit an FTA recipient's third party contracts. In other circumstances, an audit by a Federal agency may best serve the interests of the Federal Government and the recipient. This can be true of audits to determine a contractor's provisional overhead (burden) and General & Administrative (G&A) rates that need to be verified by audit for specific contract periods. Federal audit services, however, might not be available when needed; then the recipient will need to obtain the services of an independent private auditing firm that can perform the audit soon after an audit is requested.

5. FRAUD. As a reminder, 49 U.S.C. Section 5323(l) extends the criminal fraud provisions of 18 U.S.C. Section 1001 to all certificates, submissions, or statements made in connection with any program financed under the Federal transit program. In addition, the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986, as amended, 31 U.S.C. Sections 3801 *et seq*., and DOT regulations, "Program Fraud Civil Remedies," 49 CFR Part 31, apply to any false or fraudulent statement or claim made under the Federal transit program.

CHAPTER IV

THE RECIPIENT'S PROPERTY AND SERVICES NEEDS AND FEDERAL REQUIREMENTS AFFECTING THOSE NEEDS

1. DETERMINING THE RECIPIENT'S NEEDS. To support a third party contract with Federal assistance awarded by the Federal Transit Administration (FTA), the Common Grant Rules require the recipient to adopt adequate procedures for determining the type and amount of property and services it needs to acquire:

   a. Eligibility. The property and services to be acquired must be eligible under the Federal law authorizing the FTA assistance award and any regulations thereunder. For example, FTA prohibits the use of capital assistance for the recipient's operations expenses. If FTA assistance will be used to finance the cost of property or services, the property or services must be within the scope of the specific project from which that FTA assistance will be derived.

   b. Necessity. The Common Grant Rules requires the recipient to establish procedures to avoid the purchase of unnecessary property and services (including duplicative items and quantities or options it does not intend to use or whose use is unlikely). In monitoring whether a recipient has complied with its procedures to determine what property or services are unnecessary, FTA bases its determinations on what would have been a recipient's reasonable expectations at the time the recipient entered into the contract.

      (1) Unnecessary Reserves. FTA expects the recipient to limit the acquisition of federally assisted property and services to the amount it needs to support its public transportation system. In particular, FTA seeks information about the recipient's fleet to ensure that the recipient does not acquire more vehicles than it needs for public transportation service in its service area. Further guidance on spare ratios is contained in the most recent versions of FTA Circular 5010.1 providing Grant Management guidance, FTA Circular 9030.1 providing Urbanized Area Formula Program guidance, and FTA Circular 9300.1 providing Capital Investment Program guidance.

      (2) Acquisition for Assignment Purposes. The recipient may contract only for its current and reasonably expected public transportation needs and may not add quantities or options to third party contracts solely to permit assignment to another party at a later date. These limits on assignments, however, do not preclude joint procurements that are entered into simultaneously by two or more parties to obtain advantages unavailable for small procurements.

(a) General Prohibition. The recipient may contract only for its current and reasonably expected public transportation needs, and may not add quantities or options to third party contracts solely to permit assignment to another party at a later date.

(b) Changes in the Recipient's Needs. FTA recognizes that the quantity of property or services a recipient reasonably believes it may need at the time of contract award may change. A recipient's later needs might decrease due to changed circumstances or honest mistakes. In those situations, the recipient may assign its unneeded contract authority to another entity that would like to acquire the property or services.

(c) Exceptions. These limits on assignments, however, do not preclude:

1 Joint Procurements. Two or more recipients may enter into a single procurement at the same time to obtain advantages unavailable for smaller procurements, as discussed more fully in Chapter V, section 3 of this circular.

2 State or Local Government Purchasing Schedules or Purchasing Contracts. A State or local government may enter into contracts that support its purchasing schedules or purchasing contracts established as discussed more fully in Chapter V, section 4 of this circular.

c. Procurement Size. The recipient should consider whether to consolidate or break out the procurement to obtain a more economical purchase.

(1) Joint Procurements. It may be economically advantageous for a recipient to enter into a joint procurement with others that have similar needs. The recipient responsible for undertaking the joint procurement may, upon contract award, assign to the other participants responsibilities for administering those parts of the contract affecting their property or services. Participation in a joint procurement, however, does not relieve any participating recipient from the requirements and responsibilities it would have if it were procuring the property or services itself, and does not relinquish responsibility for the actions of other participants merely because the primary administrative responsibility for a particular action resides in an entity other than in itself.

(2) Small Procurements. In other circumstances, breaking out procurements may provide greater opportunities for Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBEs), small and minority firms, and women's business enterprises to participate. As stated in paragraph 1.b(2) of this Chapter, the FTA expects the recipient to ensure that it contracts only for its current and reasonably expected needs. Absent efforts

to foster greater opportunities for DBEs, small and minority firms, and women's business enterprises, the recipient should not split a large procurement merely to gain the advantages of small purchase available for federally assisted procurements of $100,000 or less identified in 41 U.S.C. Section 403(11).

d. Options. The recipient's contracts may include options to ensure the future availability of property or services, so long as the recipient is able to justify those options as needed for its public transportation or project purposes. An option is a unilateral right in a contract by which, for a specified time, a recipient may acquire additional equipment, supplies, or services than originally procured. An option may also extend the term of the contract. Chapter VI of this circular contains procedures for evaluating options.

e. Lease versus Purchase. To obtain the best value, the recipient should review lease versus purchase alternatives for acquiring property and, if necessary, should obtain an analysis to determine the more economical alternative. The recipient may use FTA capital assistance to finance the costs of leasing eligible property if leasing is more cost effective than full ownership. Before the recipient may lease an asset, FTA regulations, "Capital Leases," 49 CFR Part 639, Subpart C, require the recipient to make a written comparison of the cost of leasing the asset compared with the cost of purchasing or constructing the asset. Costs used in the comparison must be reasonable, based on realistic current market conditions, and based on the expected useful service life of the asset.

f. Specifications. Typically, the recipient is responsible for preparing specifications that describe its needs while assuring that those specifications are not exclusionary, discriminatory, unreasonably restrictive, or otherwise violate Federal laws or regulations. In general, specifications should clearly describe the property or services to be procured and state how the bids or proposals will be evaluated. For additional guidance, see section 2 of this Chapter, and Chapter VI, section 3 of this circular.

2. FEDERAL REQUIREMENTS THAT MAY AFFECT A RECIPIENT'S ACQUISITIONS. Before a recipient may use FTA assistance to support the acquisition of property or services, it must comply with all applicable Federal laws and regulations, whether or not addressed in the Common Grant Rules. Some of those laws and regulations will affect the third party contractor providing the property or services, or even determine which entities may qualify as a third party contractor. Other laws and regulations will affect the nature of the property or services to be acquired or the terms under which the property or services must be acquired. A recipient may not use FTA assistance to support acquisitions that do not comply with all applicable Federal requirements.

FTA's Master Agreement contains a current, but not all-inclusive, description of statutory and regulatory requirements that may affect a recipient's procurement (such as

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) and Clean Air requirements). The Master Agreement states that applicable Federal requirements will apply to project participants to the lowest tier necessary to ensure compliance with those requirements. A recipient will also need to include applicable Federal requirements in each subagreement, lease, third party contract, or other document as necessary. For specific guidance on cross-cutting requirements administered by other Federal agencies, FTA recommends that the recipient contact those agencies.

The recipient may also use the checklists in Appendix C of this circular as a reminder of Federal requirements, and the matrices in Appendix D of this circular for a list of clauses and provisions required by Federal laws and regulations. The recipient may also refer to the Model Clauses in FTA's "Best Practices Procurement Manual" but cautions the recipient also to check the latest edition of FTA's Master Agreement to determine which provisions have been added, changed, or rescinded.

Some of the more typical requirements and restrictions that will affect the use of FTA assistance to finance a recipient's third party contracts include:

a. Contractor Qualifications. The following Federal laws and regulations may affect contractor selection:

(1) "Responsibility" Requirements. In addition to the Common Grant Rules that require contract awards be made only to responsible contractors, Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(j) limits third party contractor awards to those contractors capable of successfully performing under the terms and conditions of the proposed contract. Before selecting a contractor for award, the recipient must consider such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

(2) Debarment and Suspension. Debarment and suspension regulations and guidance include the following:

(a) DOT Debarment and Suspension Regulations. Department of Transportation (DOT) regulations, "Nonprocurement Suspension and Debarment," 2 CFR Part 1200 apply to each third party contract at any tier of $25,000 or more, to each third party contract at any tier for a federally required audit (irrespective of the contract amount), and to each third party contract at any tier that must be approved by an FTA official irrespective of the contract amount. *See*, 2 CFR Part 1200. Thus, the recipient must apply DOT's debarment and suspension requirements to itself and each third party contractor at every tier to the extent required by DOT's regulations that incorporate the requirements of Office of Management and Budget (OMB),

"Guidelines to Agencies on Governmentwide Debarment and Suspension (Nonprocurement)," 2 CFR Part 180.

(b) General Services Administration (GSA) Excluded Parties List System. Even though the recipient may collect a debarment and suspension certification from the prospective third party contractor, or include a clause in the third party contract requiring disclosure, FTA strongly recommends that the recipient check the Excluded Parties List System (EPLS). Now a part of the System for Awards Management (SAM), the EPLS is an electronic, web-based system that identifies those parties excluded from receiving Federal contracts, certain subcontracts, and certain types of Federal financial and non-financial assistance and benefits. The EPLS keeps its user community aware of administrative and statutory exclusions across the entire government, and individuals barred from entering the United States. Go to www.sam.gov and the Extracts and Data Access area and click on the Public Data Access box to find the individual firm, individual or vessel you may seek.

(c) State Debarment and Suspension Lists. A recipient may also treat any prospective contractor or subcontractor listed on a centralized State government debarment and suspension list as nonresponsible and ineligible for contract award.

(3) Conflict of Interest. The Common Grant Rules require the recipient to be aware of conflict of interest issues a prospective contractor might have, including lack of impartiality, impaired objectivity, or unfair competitive advantage, as discussed more fully in Chapter VI, paragraph 2.a(4)(h).

(4) Lobbying Certification and Disclosure. If the third party contract will exceed $100,000, the recipient must obtain a lobbying certification before awarding the contract, and if applicable, a lobbying disclosure from a prospective third party contractor. *See*, DOT regulations, "New Restrictions on Lobbying" 49 CFR Part 20, modified as necessary by 31 U.S.C. Section 1352, which implement the Byrd "Anti-Lobbying" Amendment, 31 U.S.C. Section 1352.

(5) Federal Civil Rights Laws and Regulations. Each FTA recipient has agreed that it and its third party contractors at each tier will comply with:

(a) Federal Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Requirements. These include, but are not limited to:

1 Nondiscrimination in Federal Public Transportation Programs. 49 U.S.C. Section 5332, covering projects, programs, and activities financed under 49 U.S.C. Chapter 53 prohibits discrimination on the basis

of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, or age, and prohibits discrimination in employment or business opportunity.

2 Prohibition Against Employment Discrimination. Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, 42 U.S.C. Section 2000e, and Executive Order No. 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity," September 24, 1965, as amended by Executive Order No. 11375, October 13, 1967, that prohibit discrimination in employment on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin.

(b) Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Sex. Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended, 20 U.S.C. Sections 1681 *et seq*. and implementing Federal regulations, "Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Sex in Education Programs or Activities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance," 49 CFR Part 25 prohibit discrimination on the basis of sex.

(c) Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Age. The "Age Discrimination Act of 1974, as amended, 42 U.S.C. Sections 6101 *et seq*., and Department of Health and Human Services implementing regulations, "Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Age in Programs or Activities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance, 45 CFR Part 90, prohibit discrimination by participants in federally assisted programs against individuals on the basis of age. The Age Discrimination in Employment Act (ADEA), 29 U.S.C. Sections 621 *et seq*., and Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC) implementing regulations, "Age Discrimination in Employment Act," 29 CFR Part 1625, also prohibit employment discrimination against individuals on the basis of age.

(d) Federal Protections for Individuals with Disabilities. The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, as amended (ADA), 42 U.S.C. Sections 12101 *et seq*., prohibits discrimination against qualified individuals with disabilities in programs, activities, and services, and imposes specific requirements on public and private public and private entities. Third party contractors must comply with their responsibilities under Titles I, II, III, IV, and V of the ADA in employment, public services, public accommodations, telecommunications, and other provisions, many of which are subject to regulations issued by other Federal agencies.

(6) Socio-Economic Development. Each FTA recipient must comply with applicable Federal laws and regulations that provide competitive opportunities for a contractor that qualifies as a disadvantaged business enterprise (DBE), minority owned firm, women's business enterprise, or small business.

(a) Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBES). Section 1101 (b) of MAP-21, 23 U.S.C. Section 101 note, extends the Federal statutory requirements that FTA make available at least 10 percent of its funding under that Act for contracts with small business concerns owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged people. Each FTA recipient and subrecipient of FTA funding assists FTA in meeting this national goal. To receive FTA assistance, each FTA recipient and subrecipient of FTA funding must comply with applicable requirements of DOT regulations, "Participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises in Department of Transportation Financial Assistance Programs," 49 CFR Part 26. If the recipient is required to have a DBE program, the third party contracts that the recipient has included in its DBE program determine whether the recipient meets the DBE threshold for goal setting, and the goal if the threshold is met.

(b) Small and Minority Firms and Women's Business Enterprises. The Common Grant Rules require each recipient and subrecipient to take steps to ensure that it uses small and minority firms and women's business enterprises (irrespective of whether they qualify as DBEs) to the fullest extent practicable. Notably, some potential contractors may have established their home office in a Historically Underutilized Business Zone (HUBZone). A HUBZone small business is determined, qualified, and certified by the Small Business Administration (SBA) and then added to the List of Qualified HUBZone Small Business Concerns at SBA's website at **http://www.sba.gov/hubzone**. Although the Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients includes labor surplus area firms in the category of firms authorized for special treatment, this circular does not include them because Section 7101(a) of the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994, 15 U.S.C. Section 644 note, enacted after publication of the Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients removed nearly all labor surplus area preferences.

1 Notice. The Common Grant Rules requires each recipient to make information about procurement opportunities available to potentially qualified firms. Each governmental recipient is directed to include these contractors on solicitation lists and request their participation when they are potential sources.

2 Contract Size. To foster greater participation of small and minority firms and women's business enterprises, the Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients directs the governmental recipient to divide its total contracting requirements into small tasks or quantities, when economically feasible. The Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients encourages the non-governmental recipient to contract with

consortia when a contract is too large for one of these firms to handle individually.

3 Delivery Schedule. The Common Grant Rules requires the recipient to specify delivery schedules that encourage their participation.

4 Small Business Administration and the Department of Commerce Minority Business Development Agency. The Common Grant Rules instructs the recipient to use the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration and the Department of Commerce's Minority Business Development Agency.

5 Subcontracting Opportunities. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients directs each governmental recipient to require its prime third party contractors to include the preceding provisions in FTA assisted subcontracts. The Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients directs each non-governmental recipient to consider whether firms competing for larger contracts intend to subcontract with small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises. In addition, DOT's "Disadvantaged Business Enterprise: Program Improvements" amendments to its DBE regulations, effective February 28, 2011, now state that recipients may use race-neutral (and gender-neutral) small business set-asides for prime contracts under a stated amount, although set-asides restricted to DBEs continue to be prohibited except in limited and extreme circumstances.

(7) Sensitive Security Information. Each third party contractor must protect, and take measures to ensure that its subcontractors at each tier protect, "sensitive security information" made available during the administration of a third party contract or subcontract to ensure compliance with 49 U.S.C. Section 40119(b) and implementing DOT regulations, "Protection of Sensitive Security Information," 49 CFR Part 15, and with 49 U.S.C. Section 114(r) and implementing Department of Homeland Security regulations, "Protection of Sensitive Security Information," 49 CFR Part 1520.

(8) Seat Belt Use. In compliance with Federal Executive Order No. 13043, "Increasing Seat Belt Use in the United States," April 16, 1997, 23 U.S.C. Section 402 note, FTA encourages each third party contractor to adopt and promote on-the-job seat belt use policies and programs for its employees and other personnel that operate company owned, rented, or personally operated vehicles, and to include this provision in each third party subcontract involving the project.

(9) Texting While Driving and Distracted Driving. Consistent with Executive Order No. 13513, "Federal Leadership on Reducing Text Messaging While Driving," October 1, 2009, 23 U.S.C. Section 402 note, and DOT Order 3902.10, "Text Messaging While Driving," December 30, 2009, FTA encourages each third party contractor to promote policies and initiatives for its employees and other personnel that adopt and promote safety policies that to decrease crashes by distracted drivers, including policies to ban text messaging while driving, and to include this provision in each third party subcontract involving the project.

b. Administrative Restrictions on the Acquisition of Property and Services. The following Federal laws and regulations impose administrative requirements, many of which will affect specific third party procurements.

(1) Legal Eligibility. The property or services acquired must be eligible for support under the restrictions accompanying the Federal statute authorizing the Federal assistance to be used.

(2) Scope of the Project. The property or services acquired must be eligible for support within the scope of the underlying grant or cooperative agreement from which the Federal assistance to be used is derived.

(3) Period of Performance. FTA expects the recipient to use sound business judgment and be judicious in establishing and extending a contract's period of performance.

(a) General Standards. The period of performance generally should not exceed the time necessary to accomplish the purpose of the contract. The recipient should also consider competition, pricing, fairness, and public perception. The recipient's procurement files should document its rationale for determining the performance period designated for each contract.

(b) Federal Restrictions. Except for procurements of rolling stock and replacement part contracts, which are limited by law to five (5) or seven (7) years as discussed in subsection 2.e of this Chapter, the recipient's other third party contracts (such as property, services, leases, construction, revenue, and so forth) are not encumbered by Federal requirements restricting the maximum periods of performance. Nevertheless, the duration of the recipient's other contracts must be reasonable.

(c) Time Extensions. Consistent with the general tone of the circular, contract time extensions will be considered in light of whether they are permissible changes or impermissible cardinal changes. Once the recipient awards the third party contract, an extension of the contract term length that amounts to a cardinal change will require a sole source justification.

(4) Federal Cost Principles. The Common Grant Rules require project costs to conform to applicable Federal cost principles for allowable costs. In general, costs must be necessary and reasonable, allocable to the project, authorized or not prohibited by Federal law or regulation, and must comply with Federal cost principles applicable to the recipient. Separate cost principles apply to the following four categories of recipients:

(a) Governmental Entities. OMB Guidance for Grants and Agreements, "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87)," 2 CFR Part 225, applies to project costs incurred by a recipient that is a State, local, or Indian tribal government.

(b) Educational Institutions. OMB Guidance for Grants and Agreements, "Cost Principles for Educational Institutions (OMB Circular A-21)," 2 CFR Part 220, applies to project costs incurred by a recipient that is a public or private institution of higher education.

(c) Non-Profit Entities. OMB Guidance for Grants and Agreements "Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations (OMB Circular A-122)," 2 CFR Part 230, applies to project costs incurred by a recipient that is a private non-profit entity.

(d) For-Profit Entities. FAR at 48 CFR Chapter 1, Subpart 31.2, "Contracts with Commercial Organizations," applies to project costs incurred by a recipient that is a for-profit entity.

(5) Payment Provisions. The recipient may use its own funds to finance its contracts. However, if the recipient intends to use FTA assistance, expects to be reimbursed with FTA assistance, or dedicates its local share funds to support contract costs it has financed, then it must structure its payment provisions carefully.

(a) FTA Support for the Project. FTA must indicate its general interest in the project before a recipient may use FTA assistance to finance or reimburse project costs, or use local share funds for project costs. FTA expresses its general interest in the project when it has taken one of the following actions:

1 Award Made. FTA has awarded Federal assistance to the recipient through a grant or cooperative agreement for the underlying project,

2 Preaward Authority. FTA has provided preaward authority for the underlying project through a *Federal Register* notice, or

3 Letter of No Prejudice. FTA has issued a letter of no prejudice for the underlying project.

(b) Advance Payments. Advance payments are payments made to a contractor before the contractor incurs contract costs. The recipient may use its local share funds for advance payments. However, if there is no automatic preaward authority for its project, then advance payments made with local share funds before FTA assistance has been awarded, or before a letter of no prejudice has been issued or other preaward authority has been provided, or before FTA approval for the specific advance payment has been obtained, are ineligible for reimbursement. The following principles and restrictions apply:

1 Use of FTA Assistance Prohibited. The recipient may not use FTA assistance to make payments to a third party contractor before the contractor has incurred the costs for which the payments would be attributable.

2 Exceptions for Sound Business Reasons. Apart from advance payments that are customary, as discussed further, FTA does occasionally make exceptions to its advance payment prohibitions, if the recipient can provide sound business reasons for doing so and has obtained FTA's advance written concurrence. A recipient that seeks to use FTA assistance to support advance payments should contact the regional office administering its project to obtain FTA concurrence.

a Adequate Security for Advance Payments. FTA recognizes that advance payments may be needed for certain costs supported by sound business judgment. Adequate security for the advance payment is an essential pre-condition to FTA's concurrence in the use of FTA or local share funds.

b Customary Advance Payments. FTA recognizes that advance payments are typically required for, but are not limited to, public utility connections and services, rent, tuition, insurance premiums, subscriptions to publications, software licenses, construction mobilization costs, transportation, hotel reservations, and conference and convention registrations. Accordingly, the recipient may use FTA assistance to support or reimburse the costs of such acquisitions. FTA concurrence is required only when such advance payment or payments customarily required in the marketplace exceed $100,000.

In summary, if there are sound business reasons justifying the advance payment and adequate security for the payment, FTA will generally concur in a written request for an exception.

(c) Progress Payments. Progress payments are payments for contract work that has not been completed. The recipient may use FTA assistance to support progress payments provided the recipient obtains adequate security for those payments and has sufficient written documentation to substantiate the work for which payment is requested.

1 Adequate Security for Progress Payments. Adequate security for progress payments may include taking title or obtaining a letter of credit or taking equivalent measures to protect the recipient's financial interest in the progress payment. Adequate security should reflect the practical realities of different procurement scenarios and factual circumstances. FTA acknowledges the practical reality that taking title to work in progress may not be desirable in some circumstances. The recipient should always consider the costs associated with providing security (for example, the recipient may need to acquire bonds or letters of credit in the commercial marketplace) and the impact of those costs on the contract price, as well as the consequences of incomplete performance.

2 Adequate Documentation. Sufficient documentation is required to demonstrate completion of the amount of work for which progress payments are made.

3 Percentage of Completion Method. The Common Grant Rules requires that any progress payments for construction contracts be made on a percentage of completion method described therein. The recipient, however, may not make progress payments for other than construction contracts based on this percentage method.

(6) Protections Against Performance Difficulties. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients authorizes FTA to require each governmental recipient to include contract provisions that would reduce potential problems that might occur during contract performance. In addition to other clauses that may be approved by the Office of Federal Procurement Policy, FTA expects the governmental recipient to include provisions as described below:

(a) Changes. FTA expects a governmental recipient to include changes and changed conditions provisions or clauses in most contracts, except for routine supply contracts.

(b) Remedies. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients authorizes FTA to require remedies. Accordingly, FTA expectations are as follows:

1 Liquidated Damages. FTA has determined that a recipient may use liquidated damages if the recipient reasonably expects to suffer damages through delayed contract completion, or if weight requirements are exceeded, and the extent or amount of such damages are uncertain and would be difficult or impossible to determine. The rate and measurement standards must be calculated to reasonably reflect the recipient's costs should the standards not be met, and must be specified in the solicitation and contract. The assessment for damages is often established at a specific rate per day for each day beyond the contract's delivery date or performance period. A measurement other than a day or another period of time, however, may be established if that measurement is appropriate, such as weight requirements in a rolling stock purchase. The procurement file should include a record of the calculation and rationale for the amount of damages established. Any liquidated damages recovered must be credited to the project account involved unless FTA permits otherwise. We also refer you to Chapter V, paragraph 5(a)(1) for a discussion of how liquidated damages can be used to encourage settlements.

2 Violation or Breach. Third party contracts exceeding $100,000 must include administrative, contractual, or legal remedies for violations or breach of the contract by the third party contractor.

3 Suspension of Work. FTA may require provisions pertaining to suspension of work.

4 Termination. Termination for cause and termination for convenience provisions must be included in contracts exceeding $10,000.

The Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients requires administrative, contractual, or legal contract remedies in instances in which a contractor violates or breaches terms of a contract that exceeds the small purchase threshold, which FTA recognizes as the simplified acquisition threshold. *See*, Chapter II, Subsection 3.b. The Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients also requires termination clauses for non-governmental recipients when procurements exceed the small purchase threshold, which FTA recognizes as the simplified acquisition threshold. *See*, Chapter II, Subsection 3.b. FTA strongly encourages care in developing appropriate performance remedies in all third party contracts.

c. Socio-Economic Requirements for the Acquisition of Property and Services. The following Federal laws and regulations imposing socio-economic requirements may affect a specific procurement:

(1) Labor. The following Federal labor protection laws and regulations may affect the types of property and services that may be acquired with FTA assistance:

(a) Wage and Hour Requirements. The Common Grant Rules direct the recipient to include provisions in its third party contracts requiring the contractor to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer based on a standard workweek of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard workweek is permitted if the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the workweek. The Common Grant Rules require these provisions for compliance with Sections 102 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, 40 U.S.C. Section 3702, and Department of Labor (DOL) regulations, "Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Governing Federally Financed and Assisted Construction (also Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Nonconstruction Contracts Subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act)," 29 CFR Part 5. Section 4104(c) of the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994, 40 U.S.C. Section 3701(b)(3)(A)(iii), increased the wage and hour thresholds of $2,000 for construction work and $2,500 for nonconstruction work set forth in the Common Grant Rules to $100,000. A federally assisted contract must exceed $100,000 before these wage and hour requirements apply to that contract.

(b) Fair Labor Standards. The Fair Labor Standards Act, 29 U.S.C. Sections 201 *et seq.* applies to employees performing work involving commerce.

(c) Veterans Employment. Recipients and subrecipients of Federal financial assistance under this chapter shall ensure that contractors working on a capital project funded using such assistance give a hiring preference, to the extent practicable, to veterans (as defined in section 2108 of title 5) who have the requisite skills and abilities to perform the construction work required under the contract. This subsection shall not be understood, construed or enforced in any manner that would require an employer to give preference to any veteran over any equally qualified applicant who is a member of any racial or ethnic minority, female, an individual with a disability, or former employee.

(2) Civil Rights. The following Federal civil rights laws and regulations may affect the types of property and services that may be acquired with FTA assistance:

(a) Nondiscrimination in Federal Public Transportation Programs. Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. Section 5332, covering projects, programs, and activities financed under 49 U.S.C. Chapter 53 prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, or age, and prohibits discrimination in employment or business opportunity.

(b) Title VI of the Civil Rights Act. In determining the types of property or services to acquire, no person in the United States shall, on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity receiving Federal financial assistance in violation of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, 42 U.S.C. Sections 2000d *et seq*. and DOT regulations, "Nondiscrimination in Federally Assisted Programs of the Department of Transportation—Effectuation of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964," 49 CFR Part 21. In addition, FTA Circular 4702.1, "Title VI and Title VI-Dependent Guidelines for FTA Recipients," 05-13-07, provides FTA guidance and instructions for implementing DOT's Title VI0020 regulations.

(c) Environmental Justice. Executive Order No. 12898, "Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations," February 11, 1994, 42 U.S.C. Section 4321 note, and DOT Order 5610.2, "Department of Transportation (DOT) Order To Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations," 62 FR 18377, April 15, 1997, protect minority populations and low-income populations against disproportionately high and adverse effects of federally assisted programs. FTA Circular 4702.1, "Title VI and Title VI-Dependent Guidelines for FTA Recipients," 05-13-07, also provides FTA guidance and instructions for implementing the DOT Order on Environmental Justice.

(d) Limited English Proficiency (LEP). Executive Order No. 13166, "Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency," August 11, 2000, 42 U.S.C. Section 2000d-1 note, and DOT, "Policy Guidance Concerning Recipients' Responsibilities to Limited English Proficient (LEP) Persons," December 14, 2005, clarifies the responsibilities of recipients of Federal financial assistance from DOT and assists them in fulfilling their responsibilities to LEP persons, pursuant to Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 and implementing regulations. FTA Circular 4702.1, "Title VI and Title VI-Dependent Guidelines for FTA Recipients," 05-13-07, also provides FTA guidance and instructions for implementing the DOT Policy Guidance.

(e) Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Disability. The recipient agrees to comply, and assures the compliance of each third party contractor and each subrecipient at any tier of the project, with the applicable laws and regulations, discussed below, for nondiscrimination on the basis of disability.

1 Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (Section 504), 29 U.S.C. Section 794, prohibits discrimination on the basis of disability by recipients of Federal financial assistance.

2 The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, as amended (ADA), 42 U.S.C. Sections 12101 *et seq*., prohibits discrimination against qualified individuals with disabilities in all programs, activities, and services of public entities, as well as imposes specific requirements on public and private providers of transportation.

3 DOT Public Transportation Regulations implementing Section 504 and the ADA. These regulations include DOT regulations, "Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Handicap in Programs and Activities Receiving or Benefiting from Federal Financial Assistance," 49 CFR Part 27, DOT regulations, "Transportation Services for Individuals with Disabilities (ADA)," 49 CFR Part 37, and Joint Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (ATBCB)/DOT regulations, "Americans With Disabilities (ADA) Accessibility Specifications for Transportation Vehicles," 36 CFR Part 1192 and 49 CFR Part 38. Examples of requirements include, but are not limited to, the following:

a Design and Construction. Accessibility requirements for the design and construction of new transportation facilities;

b Accessibility and Usability. Requirements that vehicles acquired (with limited exceptions) be accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, including individuals using wheelchairs;

c Complementary Paratransit Service. Requirements that public entities providing fixed-route service, (including a private non-profit entity providing public transportation service on behalf of the State or designated recipient as a subrecipient providing fixed-route service), provide complementary paratransit service to individuals with disabilities who cannot use the fixed-route service;

d Equal Opportunity. Requirements for compliance with service requirements intended to ensure that individuals with disabilities are afforded equal opportunity to use transportation systems and services.

(f) Electronic Reports and Information. Reports and other information prepared in electronic format developed in connection with a third party contract that the recipient intends to provide to FTA, among others, whether as a contract end item or in compliance with contract administration provisions, must comply with the accessibility standards of Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, 29 U.S.C. Section 794d, and ATBCB regulations, "Electronic and Information Technology Accessibility Standards," 36 CFR Part 1194.

(3) Environmental Protections. Federal laws and regulations require the recipient to comply with applicable environmental requirements and implement them as necessary through third party contracts.

(a) Environmental Mitigation. FTA expects the recipient to include adequate third party contract provisions to facilitate compliance with environmental mitigation measures it has agreed to implement.

(b) National Environmental Policy Act. Certain acquisitions and the timing of certain acquisitions can adversely affect the environmental review process for a project constituting a major Federal action, and may result in a violation of the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), 42 U.S.C. Sections 4321 through 4335, and joint FHWA/FTA regulations, "Environmental Impact and Related Procedures," 23 C.F.R. Part 771 and 49 C.F.R. Part 622.

1 Property. The recipient may not enter into binding arrangements for the acquisition of property that may or would affect environmental impact determinations with respect to the underlying project or otherwise interfere with any required environmental impact reviews until applicable environmental impact determinations have been made.

2 Services. Council on Environmental Quality regulations, "Other Requirements of NEPA," 40 CFR Part 1506, at Section 1506.5(c), require the recipient to obtain a disclosure statement from the contractor selected to prepare an environmental impact statement specifying that the contractor has no financial or other interest in the outcome of the project.

(c) Parks, Recreation Areas, Wildlife and Waterfowl Refuges, and Historic Sites. DOT's enabling legislation has special requirements designed to protect publicly owned parks, recreation areas, wildlife and waterfowl refuges, and historic sites, at 49 U.S.C. Sections 303(b) and 303(c) (often referred to as "Section 4(f)"), that may affect the timing and methods of recipient procurements. The Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) and FTA have published implementing regulations, "Parks, Recreation Areas, Wildlife and

Waterfowl Refuges, and Historic Sites," 23 CFR Parts 771 and 774, and 49 CFR Part 622.

(d) Clean Air. The Common Grant Rules specifically prohibit the use of facilities included in the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) "List of Violating Facilities," in the performance of any third party contract at any tier exceeding $100,000. The contractor must also comply with all applicable standards, orders, or regulations issued under Section 306 of the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. Section 7414, and other applicable provisions of the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. Sections 7401 through 7671q.

(e) Clean Water. The Common Grant Rules specifically prohibit the use of facilities included in the EPA "List of Violating Facilities," in the performance of any third party contract at any tier exceeding $100,000. The contractor must also comply with all applicable standards, orders, or regulations issued under Section 508 of the Clean Water Act, as amended, 33 U.S.C. Section 1368, and other applicable requirements of the Clean Water Act, as amended, 33 U.S.C. Sections 1251 through 1377.

(f) Recycled Products. The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976, 42 U.S.C. Section 6962, requires governmental recipients to provide a competitive preference to products and services that conserve natural resources, protect the environment, and are energy efficient. EPA guidelines, "Comprehensive Procurement Guideline for Products Containing Recovered Materials," 40 CFR Part 247, direct that third party contracts of $10,000 or more with governmental recipients specify a competitive preference for products containing recycled materials identified in those EPA guidelines. For information about EPA's recovered materials advisory notices, see EPA's Web site: **http://www.epa.gov/cpg/backgrnd.htm.**

(g) Other Federal Environmental Protection Requirements. Additional third party contract provisions may be needed for compliance with other Federal laws and regulations. FTA's Master Agreement includes environmental laws and regulations that may affect the acquisition of property or services with FTA assistance such as various provisions to protect wild and scenic rivers, manage coastal zones, protect wetlands, conserve endangered species, and protect fisheries, archeological sites, and Indian sacred sites.

(4) Energy Conservation. The Common Grant Rules require third party contract provisions as necessary for compliance with applicable energy efficiency standards and policies of State energy conservation plans issued under the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. Sections 6321 *et seq*.

(5) Preference for U.S. Property—Buy America. FTA's "Buy America" law and regulations apply to projects that involve the purchase of more than $100,000 of iron, steel, manufactured goods, or rolling stock to be delivered to the recipient to be used in the FTA assisted project. If FTA funds are used for the project, Buy America requirements apply to all procurement contracts under the project irrespective of whether a recipient decides to fund a discrete part of the project without FTA funds. Only if an activity is outside the FTA project and is financed entirely without funds to which FTA's Buy America regulations would apply may the recipient disregard FTA's Buy America requirements. Property that the contractor acquires to fabricate a deliverable for the recipient, such as tools, machinery, and other equipment or facilities, is not subject to FTA's Buy America requirements unless the recipient intends to take possession of that property upon completion of the project. Thus, if a third party contractor is acquiring property for its general inventory of equipment or facilities to conduct its overall business affairs, the recipient may enter the cost of that acquisition into its calculations of overhead amounts applicable to the FTA assisted project irrespective of whether the property acquired would comply with FTA's Buy America regulations. FTA's Buy America statute does not pre-empt State laws with stricter requirements on the use of foreign articles, materials, and supplies.

FTA cautions that its Buy America regulations that apply to FTA assisted third party procurements, published at 49 CFR Part 661, differ from Federal "Buy American Act" regulations that apply to direct Federal procurements, published in the FAR at 48 CFR Chapter 1, Subparts 25.1 and 25.2. FTA strongly recommends that the recipient review FTA's Buy America regulations before undertaking any FTA assisted procurement.

(6) Shipments of Property—U.S. Flag Requirements.

(a) Shipments by Ocean Vessel. The Common Grant Rules require third party contract provisions to ensure compliance with 46 U.S.C. Section 55303 and Maritime Administration regulations, "Cargo Preference-U.S. Flag Vessels," 46 CFR Part 381, implementing the codified Cargo Preference Act. With few exceptions, the regulations require that U.S. Flag vessels be used to transport at least 50 percent of any federally assisted property.

(b) Shipments by Air Carrier. Third party contracts involving shipments of federally assisted property by air carrier will require provisions to ensure compliance with Section 5 of the International Air Transportation Fair Competitive Practices Act of 1974, as amended ("Fly America" Act), 49 U.S.C. Section 40118, and GSA regulations, "Use of United States Flag Air Carriers," 41 CFR Sections 301-10.131 through 301-10.143. The

regulations require shipment by U.S. flag air carriers unless such carriers are not reasonably available within the standards of GSA's implementing regulations.

(7) Project Travel—Use of U.S. Flag Air Carriers. Third party contracts to acquire transportation by air carrier needed by people participating in a federally assisted project require provisions to ensure compliance with Section 5 of the International Air Transportation Fair Competitive Practices Act of 1974, as amended ("Fly America" Act), 49 U.S.C. Section 40118, and GSA regulations, "Use of United States Flag Air Carriers," 41 CFR Sections 301-10.131 through 301-10.143. The regulations require transportation by U.S. flag air carriers unless U.S. flag air carriers are not reasonably available within the standards of the GSA's implementing regulations.

d. Technical Restrictions on the Acquisition of Property and Services. The following Federal laws and regulations imposing technical requirements may affect a specific procurement:

(1) Intelligent Transportation Systems. Intelligent transportation system (ITS) property and services must comply with the National ITS Architecture and Standards to the extent required by 23 U.S.C. Section 517(d) and FTA Notice, "FTA National ITS Architecture Policy on Transit Projects," 66 FR 1455 *et seq*., January 8, 2001, and later published policies or implementing directives FTA may issue. Consequently, third party contracts involving ITS are likely to require provisions to ensure compliance with Federal requirements.

(2) Metric Measurements. The Common Grant Rules require the recipient to accept property and services with dimensions expressed in metric measurements, to the extent practicable and feasible, in compliance with the Metric Conversion Act, as amended by the Omnibus Trade and Competitiveness Act, 15 U.S.C. Sections 205a *et seq*.; Executive Order No. 12770, "Metric Usage in Federal Government Programs," July 25, 1991, 15 U.S.C. Section 205a note; and applicable Federal regulations.

(3) Use of $1 Coins. To comply with Section 104 of the Presidential $1 Coin Act of 2005, 31 U.S.C. Section 5312(p), FTA assisted property that requires the use of coins or currency in public transportation service or supporting service must be fully capable of accepting and dispensing $1 coins.

e. Rolling Stock—Special Requirements. The following Federal laws and regulations impose requirements that may affect rolling stock procurements:

(1) Accessibility. Rolling stock must comply with the accessibility requirements of DOT regulations, "Transportation Services for Individuals with Disabilities (ADA)," 49 CFR Part 37, and Joint ATBCB/DOT regulations, "Americans with Disabilities (ADA) Accessibility Specifications for Transportation Vehicles," 36 CFR Part 1192 and 49 CFR Part 38.

(2) Transit Vehicle Manufacturer Compliance with DBE Requirements. Before a transit vehicle manufacturer (TVM) may submit a bid or proposal to provide vehicles to be financed with FTA assistance, 49 CFR Section 26.49 requires the TVM to submit a certification that it has complied with FTA's DBE requirements.

(3) Minimum Service Life. FTA requires each recipient to maintain satisfactory continuing control of FTA assisted property. For buses and certain other vehicles, FTA has established minimum service life policies that may affect the quantity of vehicles that the recipient may acquire. *See*, the most recent versions of FTA Circular 5010.1, "Grant Management Requirements," FTA Circular 9030.1, "Urbanized Area Formula Program: Grant Application Instructions," and FTA Circular 9300.1, "Capital Program: Grant Application Instructions," that addresses minimum service life for vehicles.

(4) Spare Ratios. While all FTA assistance for third party procurements must be limited to property and services the recipient will use in the near future, FTA is concerned that the recipient does not acquire an excessive number of spare vehicles not regularly used in public transportation service.

(5) Air Pollution and Fuel Economy. Each third party contract to acquire rolling stock must include provisions to ensure compliance with applicable Federal air pollution control and fuel economy regulations, such as EPA regulations, "Control of Air Pollution from Mobile Sources," 40 CFR Part 85; EPA regulations, "Control of Air Pollution from New and In-Use Motor Vehicles and New and In-Use Motor Vehicle Engines," 40 CFR Part 86; and EPA regulations, "Fuel Economy of Motor Vehicles," 40 CFR Part 600.

(6) Preaward Review and Post Delivery Review. Each third party contract to acquire rolling stock must include provisions for compliance with applicable requirements of 49 U.S.C. Section 5323(m) and those provisions of FTA regulations, "Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits of Rolling Stock Purchases," 49 CFR Part 663, that do not conflict with 49 U.S.C. Section 5323(m).

(7) Bus Testing. Each third party contract to acquire a new bus model or a bus with significant alterations to an existing model must include provisions to assure compliance with applicable requirements of 49 U.S.C. Section 5318, as amended by MAP-21, and FTA regulations, "Bus Testing," 49 CFR Part 665.

(8) In-State Dealers. The recipient may not limit its third party bus procurements to its in-State dealers, 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(i). Although FTA respects State licensing requirements, FTA is prohibited by law from providing FTA assistance to support bus procurements that have the result of limiting competition to entities that have been able to obtain a State license.

(9) Basis for Contract Award. As permitted by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(f), the recipient may award a third party contract for rolling stock based on initial capital costs, or based on performance, standardization, life cycle costs, and other factors, or by selection through a competitive procurement process.

(10) Time Limits for Options on Rolling Stock Contracts. MAP-21 amended 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(e)(1) by adding subsections (A) and (B), retaining the five (5) year option for the procurement of buses, while extending the option for rail procurements to seven (7) years. Consequently:

(a) Buses. A recipient:

1 May enter into a multi-year contract to acquire buses or replacement parts, with an option not exceeding five(5) years to buy additional buses or replacement parts, 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(e)(1)(A), but

2 May not exercise the option to acquire buses or replacement parts later than five (5) years after the date of its original contract.

(b) Rail. A recipient:

1 May enter into a multi-year contract to acquire railcars or replacement parts, with an option not exceeding five(5) years to buy additional railcars or replacement parts, 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(e)(1)(B), but

2 May not exercise the option to acquire railcars or replacement parts later than seven (7) years after the date of its original contract.

FTA interprets these five and seven-year periods as covering the recipient‘s “material requirements” for rolling stock and replacement needs from the first day when the contract becomes effective to its “material requirements” at the end of the fifth or seventh year, as applicable. In the case of rolling stock, which frequently cannot be delivered expeditiously, FTA recognizes that a recipient‘s “material requirements” for rolling stock will necessarily precede its actual need to put that rolling stock to use in public transportation service. This means that the contract may not have options for more rolling stock and replacement parts than a

recipient‘s material requirements for the applicable five or seven-year period. This does not mean the recipient must obtain delivery, acceptance, or even fabrication in five or seven years. Instead it means only that FTA limits a contract to purchasing no more than the recipient‘s material requirements for rolling stock or replacement parts for five or seven years based on the effective date of the contract.

f. Public Transportation Services—Special Requirements. Although the Common Grant Rules refer to the following Federal requirements in the context of federally assisted procurements, these requirements will affect how a third party contractor implements its contract to provide public transportation services financed with Federal assistance. Consequently, the recipient must include provisions in its third party contract ensuring compliance with the following requirements, or the recipient must obtain the third party contractor’s agreement in another form, as a matter of contractor responsibility, to ensure compliance with the following:

(1) Protections for Public Transportation Employees. When the recipient acquires public transportation services from a third party contractor, the terms of the recipient’s DOL certification of public transportation employee protective arrangements will apply to work under the contract provided by those employees covered by the certification. That certification is required by 49 U.S.C. Section 5333(b) (often referred to as “13(c)”) and implementing DOL guidelines, “Section 5333(b), Federal Transit Law,” 29 CFR Part 215. Consequently, the third party contractor must comply with the terms of that DOL certification.

The Fair Labor Standards Act, 29 U.S.C. Sections 201 *et seq.*, also applies to public transportation employees performing work involving commerce.

(2) Drug Use and Testing and Alcohol Misuse and Testing. A third party contractor providing services involving the performance of safety sensitive activities must comply with 49 U.S.C. Section 5331 and FTA regulations, “Prevention of Alcohol Misuse and Prohibited Drug Use in Transit Operations,” 49 CFR Part 655.

(3) Accessibility. A third party contractor providing public transportation services must operate its services in compliance with 42 U.S.C. Sections 12101 *et seq.*; DOT regulations, “Transportation Services for Individuals with Disabilities (ADA)” using facilities and equipment that comply with 49 CFR Part 37; and Joint ATBCB/DOT regulations, “Americans with Disabilities (ADA) Accessibility Specifications for Transportation Vehicles,” 36 CFR Part 1192 and 49 CFR Part 38. Private entities must comply with the requirements of 49 CFR Part 37 applicable to public entities with which they contract to provide public transportation services. The recipient should advise its third party

contractors operating public transportation services to review the requirements for public entities in this context.

(4) Protection of Animals. A third party contractor providing services involving the use of animals must comply with the Animal Welfare Act, 7 U.S.C. Sections 2131 *et seq*. and Department of Agriculture regulations, "Animal Welfare," 9 CFR Subchapter A, Parts 1, 2, 3, and 4.

(5) Charter Service Restrictions. A third party contractor performing services using FTA assisted facilities or equipment may not use those facilities or that equipment to support any charter service operations except as permitted by 49 U.S.C. Section 5323(d) and FTA regulations, "Charter Service," 49 CFR Part 604.

(6) School Bus Restrictions. A third party contractor performing services using FTA assisted facilities or equipment may not use those facilities or that equipment to support exclusive school bus operations except as permitted by 49 U.S.C. Sections 5323(f) or (g) and FTA regulations, "School Bus Operations," 49 CFR Part 605, to the extent consistent with 49 U.S.C. Sections 5323(f) or (g).

g. Art. FTA recommends the following principles be used in procuring art works or the services of artists:

(1) Choosing Art Works and Services of Artists. The appropriate selection process should vary among projects, depending upon the nature and scope of the project, characteristics of the site, resources of the community, and State and local laws and regulations. The recipient's procedures should consist of the following:

(a) Process. A justifiable process demonstrating appropriate use of public funds that gives serious consideration to a variety of artists available and capable of working on the project.

(b) Nondiscrimination. Artists, regardless of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, or age, are eligible for consideration.

(c) Community Participation. The community surrounding the future facility participates in the selection process. This could include all levels of participation, including supplying information, attending panel meetings, and being voting members of the panel. The extent and type of participation should be determined by the commissioning entity and be appropriate to both the project and the community.

(d) Selection. Selection of art works or artists, or both, recommended to the recipient is determined by a panel of art and design professionals that may

include, but need not be limited to, art administrators, artists, curators, and architects, and may include members of the community.

(2) Criteria for Art in Federally Assisted Transit Projects. When artists are involved in the planning and design of transit projects and/or when individual works of art are commissioned, the following should be considered:

(a) Quality. Quality of the art or design,

(b) Effect. Impact on the public,

(c) Relationship. Connection to the site or the adjacent community, or both; art that relates, in form or substance, to the cultures, people, natural or built surroundings, or history of the area in which the project is located,

(d) Suitability. Appropriateness for the site, including safety and scale,

(e) Resilience. Durability of materials and fabrication,

(f) Indestructibility. Resistance to vandalism, and

(g) Preservation. Minimum maintenance.

(3) Compensation of Artists. Artists may be paid a fixed fee or an hourly wage with a cap, similar to other FTA standard fees or wages for procurement of design professional services, in addition to other federally approved costs that may be recognized under the contract.

(4) Prohibition. Artistic undertakings that promote specific private or corporate business interests are ineligible for FTA funding.

h. Architectural Engineering (A&E) and Related Services—Special Requirements. Federal laws and regulations impose the following requirements on A&E and related procurements:

(1) Qualifications-Based Requirements. For projects related to or leading to construction, an FTA recipient must use the qualifications-based procurement procedures of 40 U.S.C. Chapter 11 ("Brooks Act" procedures) when contracting for A&E services and other services described in 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b), which include program management, construction management, feasibility studies, preliminary engineering, design, architectural, engineering, surveying, mapping, or related services.

(2) Relation to Construction. The nature of the services to be performed and its relationship to construction, not the nature of the prospective contractor, determines whether qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used.

(a) Purpose of Services. FTA has long administered the requirement for using qualifications-based procurement procedures for selection of contractors that perform A&E services, generally associated with the construction, alteration, or repair of real property. FTA interprets 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b) to authorize the use of qualifications-based procurement procedures only for those services that directly support or are directly connected or related to construction, alteration, or repair of real property. FTA's interpretation of 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b) is consistent with typical Federal policies implementing the "Brooks Act," 40 U.S.C. Section 1102, which limits qualifications-based procurement procedures to research, planning, development, design, construction, alteration, or repair of real property. Thus if services, such as program management, feasibility studies, or mapping, are not directly in support of, directly connected to, or directly related to, or lead to construction, alteration, or repair of real property, then the recipient may not use qualifications-based procurement procedures to select the contractor that will perform those services.

(b) Requirements in the Context of a Construction Project. A project involving construction (including an ITS project) does not always require the use of qualifications-based procurement procedures. Whether qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used depends on the actual services to be performed in connection with the construction project. For example:

1 End Products Used in Construction. The design or fabrication of message signs, signals, and movable barriers that will become off-the-shelf items or will be fabricated and delivered as final end products for installation in an FTA assisted construction project, including an (ITS) construction project, are not services for which qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used.

2 Services Related to Design of Construction Projects. In contrast, services of a program manager, project designer, construction manager, or engineer in which the contractor would select the finished products to be acquired for an FTA assisted construction project are services for which qualifications-based procurement procedures must be used.

3 Actual Construction. The actual construction or improvement to the real property to be used in an FTA assisted construction project, however, are

not services for which qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used.

(c) Type of Contractor Not Determinative. The nature of the firm performing the services does not determine whether it will be selected through the use of qualifications-based procurement procedures. For example, if a well-known A&E firm offers to provide mapping services not related to construction, alteration, or repair of real property, the recipient may not use qualifications-based procurement procedures to evaluate that contractor's offer. In contrast, if a firm that does not generally provide A&E services offers to provide mapping services that are directly in support of, directly connected to, or directly related to or lead to construction, alteration, or repair of real property, the recipient must evaluate that offer using qualifications-based procurement procedures.

(3) Equivalent State Law. SAFETEA-LU also divided the former 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b) by separating procurement requirements for FTA assisted A&E services from audit requirements for FTA assisted A&E services. As amended by the SAFETEA-LU Technical Corrections Act, 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(1) requires A&E services to be procured using either "Brooks Act" procedures or an equivalent qualifications-based requirement adopted by a State before August 10, 2005.

(4) Special Requirements for Indirect Cost Rates. In addition, SAFETEA-LU amended 49 U.S.C. Section 5325 to require the acceptance of FAR indirect cost rates for applicable one-year accounting periods if those rates are not currently in dispute. After the indirect cost rates are accepted as required, the recipient must use those indirect cost rates for contract estimates, negotiation, administration, reporting, and payments, with administrative or de facto ceiling limitations. *See*, 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(2) and subparagraph 2.j(2)(c) of this Chapter.

i. Construction—Special Requirements. The following Federal laws and regulations impose requirements that may affect FTA assisted construction projects:

(1) Bonding. The Common Grant Rules require bonds for all construction contracts exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold (*see*, Chapter II, Subsection 3.b)unless FTA determines that other arrangements adequately protect the Federal interest. FTA's bonding policies are as follows:

(a) Bid Guarantee. Both FTA and the Common Grant Rules generally require each bidder to provide a bid guarantee equivalent to 5 percent of its bid price. The "bid guarantee" must consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond,

certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid to ensure that the bidder will honor its bid upon acceptance.

(b) Performance Bond. Both FTA and the Common Grant Rules generally require the third party contractor to obtain a performance bond for 100 percent of the contract price. A "performance bond" is obtained to ensure completion of the obligations under the third party contract.

(c) Payment Bond. The Common Grant Rules generally require the third party contractor to obtain a standard payment bond for 100 percent of the contract price. A "payment bond" is obtained to ensure that the contractor will pay all people supplying labor and material for the third party contract as required by law. FTA, however, has determined that payment bonds in the following amounts are adequate to protect FTA's interest and will accept a local bonding policy that meets the following minimums:

1 Less Than $1 Million. Fifty percent of the contract price if the contract price is not more than $1 million,

2 More Than $1 Million but Less Than $5 Million. Forty percent of the contract price if the contract price is more than $1 million but not more than $5 million, or

3 More Than $5 Million. Two and one half million dollars if the contract price is more than $5 million.

(d) Acceptable Sureties. The Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients requires the non-governmental recipient to obtain construction bonds from companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable sureties under Department of the Treasury regulations, "Surety Companies Doing Business with the United States," 31 CFR Part 223. For a current list of approved sureties, see Department of the Treasury's Listing of Approved Sureties (Department Circular 570), **http://fms.treas.gov/c570/c570.html**. FTA encourages each governmental recipient to require similarly acceptable sureties.

(e) Reduced Bonding. FTA recognizes that bonding costs can be expensive. FTA will accept a local bonding policy that conforms to the minimums described in this subparagraph 2.h(1) of this Chapter. FTA reserves the right to approve bonding amounts that do not conform to these minimums if the local bonding policy adequately protects the Federal interest. A recipient that wishes to adopt less stringent bonding requirements, for a specific class of

projects, or for a particular project should submit its policy and rationale to the Regional Administrator for the region administering the project.

(f) Excessive Bonding. Compliance with State and local bonding policies that are greater than FTA's bonding requirements do not require FTA approval. FTA recognizes that in some situations bond requirements can be useful if the recipient has a material risk of loss because of a failure of the prospective contractor. This is particularly so if the risk results from the likelihood of the contractor's bankruptcy or financial failure when the work is partially completed. Nevertheless, if the recipient's "excessive bonding" requirements would violate the Common Grant Rules as restrictive of competition, FTA will not provide Federal assistance for procurements encumbered by those requirements. Consequently, if the recipient's bonding policies far exceed those described in this subsection; FTA reminds the recipient that it may find it useful to submit its policy and rationale to the Regional Administrator for the region administering the project.

(2) Seismic Safety. The recipient must include seismic safety provisions in its third party contracts for the construction of new buildings or additions to existing buildings as required by 42 U.S.C. Sections 7701 *et seq*., and DOT regulations, "Seismic Safety," 49 CFR Part 41 at Sections 41.117 and 41.120, implementing the Earthquake Hazards Reduction Act of 1977, as amended, 42 U.S.C. Sections 7701 *et seq*.

(3) Value Engineering. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients encourages them to use value engineering provisions in contracts for construction projects, and cautions that value engineering can be a pre-requisite for some Federal assistance awards. FTA generally will not approve a New Starts grant application for final design funding or a full funding grant agreement until value engineering is complete. It is important to note that some contractual arrangements (for example, design-build contracts) may inherently include value engineering. When this is the case, FTA does not require separate value engineering proposals, contract changes, or other processes. From a procurement view, the concept of value engineering is more important than the form it takes.

(4) Equal Employment Opportunity. The Common Grant Rules require that third party construction contracts include provisions ensuring compliance with DOL regulations, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor," 41 CFR Chapter 60, which implement Executive Order No. 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity," September 24, 1965, as amended by Executive Order No. 11375, "Amending

Executive Order No. 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," October 13, 1967.

(5) Prevailing Wages. Under 49 U.S.C. Section 5333(a), Davis-Bacon Act prevailing wage protections apply to laborers and mechanics employed on FTA assisted construction, alteration, or repair projects. The Common Grant Rules require third party contracts for construction, alteration, or repair at any contract tier exceeding $2,000 to include provisions requiring compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act, 40 U.S.C. Sections 3141 *et seq*., and implementing DOL regulations "Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Governing Federally Financed and Assisted Construction," 29 CFR Part 5. The Davis-Bacon Act requires that contractors pay wages to laborers and mechanics at a rate not less than the minimum wages specified in the wage determination made by the Secretary of Labor. The Davis-Bacon Act also requires contractors to pay wages not less than once a week. The recipient must include a copy of the current prevailing wage determination issued by DOL in each contract solicitation and must condition contract award upon the acceptance of that wage determination. These requirements are in addition to the separate Wage and Hour Requirements addressed in paragraph 2.c(1) of this Chapter IV.

(6) Anti-Kickback. Section 1 of the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act, at 18 U.S.C. Section 874, prohibits anyone from inducing, by any means, any person employed on construction, prosecution, completion, or repair of a federally assisted building or work, to give up any part of his or her compensation to which he or she is otherwise entitled. Section 2 of that Act, at 40 U.S.C. Section 3145, as amended, and implementing DOL regulations, "Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in part by Loans or Grants from the United States," 29 CFR Part 3, impose record keeping requirement on all third party contracts for construction, alteration, or repair exceeding $2,000. The Common Grant Rules also requires provisions for compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act, as amended, and implementing DOL regulations.

(7) Construction Safety. The Common Grant Rules require provisions to ensure safety at construction sites so that no laborer or mechanic shall be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions that are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous as prohibited by the safety requirements of Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, 40 U.S.C. Section 3704, and its implementing DOL regulations, "Safety and Health Regulations for Construction," 29 CFR Part 1926. Notably, Section 4104(c) of the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994, 40 U.S.C. Section 3701(b)(3)(A)(iii), increased the threshold for construction safety protections to $100,000 from $2,000 as set forth in the Common Grant Rules, so that a federally assisted construction contract must

exceed $100,000 before these construction safety requirements apply to that contract.

(8) Labor Neutrality. Executive Order No. 13502, "Use of Project Labor Agreements for Federal Construction Projects," February 6, 2009, rescinds Executive Order No. 13202, "Preservation of Open Competition and Government Neutrality Towards Government Contractors' Labor Relations on Federal and Federally Funded Construction Projects," February 17, 2001, as amended by Executive Order No. 13208, April 6, 2001, 41 U.S.C. Section 251 note. Consequently, a recipient may now require the use of a project labor agreement (PLA) in its third party contract, and a third party contractor or subcontractor may continue to use a PLA should it choose to do so.

(9) Preference for U.S. Property—Buy America. For any FTA assisted project having third party construction contracts exceeding $100,000, FTA's Buy America law and regulations require the third party contractor to provide property produced or manufactured in the United States for use in the construction project that the recipient acquires, unless FTA has granted a waiver authorized by those regulations. If FTA funds are used for the project, Buy America requirements apply to all third party procurement contracts under the project irrespective of whether a recipient decides to fund a discrete part of the project without FTA funds. Only if an activity is outside the FTA project and is financed entirely without funds to which FTA's Buy America regulations would apply may the recipient disregard FTA's Buy America requirements. FTA cautions that its Buy America regulations are complex and different from the Federal "Buy American Act" regulations in the Federal Acquisition Regulation(FAR) at 48 CFR Chapter 1, Subchapter D, Part 25, Subparts 25.1 and 25.2.

Property that the contractor acquires to perform its construction activities for the recipient, such as tools, machinery, and other equipment or facilities, is not covered by FTA's Buy America requirements unless the recipient intends to take possession of that property upon completion of the project. Thus, if a third party contractor is acquiring property for its general inventory of equipment or facilities to conduct its overall business affairs, the recipient may enter the cost of that acquisition into its calculations of overhead amounts applicable to the FTA assisted project irrespective of whether that property would comply with FTA's Buy America regulations.

(10) Accessibility. Facilities to be used in public transportation service must comply with 42 U.S.C. Sections 12101 *et seq.*; DOT regulations, "Transportation Services for Individuals with Disabilities (ADA)," 49 CFR Part 37; and Joint ATBCBDOT regulations, "Americans with Disabilities (ADA) Accessibility Specifications for

Transportation Vehicles," 36 CFR Part 1192 and 49 CFR Part 38. Notably, DOT incorporated by reference into Appendix A of its regulations at 49 CFR Part 37 the ATBCB's "Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines" (ADAAG), revised July 2004, which include accessibility guidelines for buildings and facilities. DOT also added specific provisions to Appendix A of 49 CFR Part 37 modifying the ADAAG, with the result that buildings and facilities must comply with both the ADAAG and the DOT amendments.

j. Research, Development, Demonstration, Deployment, and Special Studies—Special Requirements. Procurements of research-type services can involve circumstances that bring special Federal requirements into effect. Among these are:

(1) Patent Rights. Irrespective of the status of the recipient, subrecipient, or third party contractor (for example, a large business, small business, State government, State instrumentality, local government, Indian tribe, non-profit organization, institution of higher education, individual, and so forth) the Common Grant Rules require provisions consistent with Department of Commerce regulations, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms," 37 CFR Part 401 (implementing the Bayh-Dole Act, 35 U.S.C. Sections 200 *et seq*.), unless the Federal Government requires otherwise. Except in the case of an "other agreement" in which the Federal Government has agreed to take more limited rights, the Federal Government is entitled to a non-exclusive, royalty free license to use the resulting invention, or patent to the invention, for Federal Government purposes.

(2) Rights in Data. In general, FTA does not seek greater rights in data or copyright than described in the Common Grant Rules when it provides FTA capital assistance to support acquisitions. But when FTA provides Federal assistance to support the costs of a research, development, demonstration, or a special studies project, FTA generally seeks sufficient rights in the data developed so that the resulting data can be made available to any FTA recipient, subrecipient, third party contractor, or third party subcontractor. FTA's general purpose in providing Federal assistance for a research, development, demonstration, or special studies project is to increase transportation knowledge, rather than limit the benefits of the project to project participants. Therefore, unless FTA determines otherwise in writing, FTA expects the following conditions to apply to rights in data requirements for FTA assisted research, development, demonstration, or special studies projects.

(a) Publication Restrictions. Except for its own internal use, the FTA Master Agreement provides that neither the recipient nor the third party contractor may publish or reproduce subject data in whole or in part, or in any manner or

form, without the advance written consent of the Federal Government, unless the Federal Government has released or approved the release of that data to the public. These restrictions do not apply to an institution of higher education.

(b) Distribution of Data. Except for contracts for adaptation of automatic data processing equipment or data provided in support of an FTA capital project, each recipient and third party contractor must agree that, in addition to the rights in data and copyrights that it must provide to FTA under the Common Grant Rules, FTA may make available to any FTA recipient, subrecipient, third party contractor, or third party subcontractor, either FTA's license in the copyright to the subject data or a copy of the subject data. If, for any reason, the project is not completed, all data developed under the project is expected to be delivered as FTA may direct.

In certain circumstances, however, FTA may determine that it is in the public interest to take only those rights in data identified in the Common Grant Rules.

(3) Export Control. If data developed in the course of a third party contract is subject directly or indirectly to U.S. Export Control regulations, that data may not be exported to any countries or any foreign persons, without first obtaining the necessary Federal license or licenses and complying with any applicable Department of Commerce, Export Administration Regulations, 15 CFR Part 730.

(4) Protection of Human Subjects. A third party contractor providing services involving the use of human subjects must comply with the National Research Act at 42 U.S.C. Sections 289 *et seq*., and DOT regulations, "Protection of Human Subjects," 49 CFR Part 11.

(5) Protection of Animals. A third party contractor providing services involving the use of animals must comply with the Animal Welfare Act, 7 U.S.C. Sections 2131 *et seq*., and Department of Agriculture regulations, "Animal Welfare," 9 CFR Subchapter A, Parts 1, 2, 3, and 4.

k. Audit Services. In general, the procedures of this circular apply to the acquisition of audit services financed with FTA assistance. The following considerations, however, are especially important in procurements of audit services:

(1) Single Audit Act. Each recipient that spends $500,000 or more in Federal awards in a single year must obtain an audit as required by the Single Audit Act of 1984, as amended, 31 U.S.C. Sections 7501 *et seq*., and must ensure compliance with OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations," as revised.

(a) Organizational Conflicts of Interest. The auditor selected must be independent of the recipient.

(b) Eligibility of Costs. The recipient may charge the costs for audits required by the Single Audit Act to its project as direct or indirect costs as permitted by applicable Federal Cost Principles. A recipient that spends less than $500,000 in Federal awards in a single year is not required to obtain this audit. Nor may a recipient spending less than $500,000 in Federal awards in a single year finance the costs of such an audit with Federal assistance.

(2) Other Project Audits. Before procuring audit services for a specific contract or project, the recipient should be aware of the following:

(a) Organizational Conflicts of Interest. In general, the recipient must select an auditor that is independent of the third party contractor to be audited.

(b) Verification of Indirect Costs. Federal verification of a contractor's indirect cost rates, such as provisional overhead (burden) and General & Administrative (G&A) rates may be required. To the extent possible, relevant information available through undisputed audits of the contractor by other recipients should be used.

(c) Duplication of Services. To prevent duplication and ensure the eligibility of particular audit services for Federal participation, a recipient seeking a third party contract audit should contact FTA before undertaking or contracting for the audit. This is particularly important in connection with the procurement of A&E services, because 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(2) requires that FAR Part 31 cost principles be used to audit A&E contracts. In addition, 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(2) requires the recipient and its A&E contractors and subcontractors to accept indirect cost rates established under FAR cost principles if those rates are not under dispute. Thus, the recipient should not obtain duplicative audits because they are likely to produce disparate indirect cost rates and the costs of those audits may be ineligible for Federal assistance. Accordingly, FTA recommends that the recipient seek guidance from the cognizant Federal auditor or agency that approved the third party contractor's indirect cost rates before entering into contracts for audits.

(d) Obtaining Indirect Cost Rates. Recipients and third party contractors may obtain indirect cost rates based on FAR cost principles from the following sources:

1 Governmental Entities. Government entities may obtain indirect cost rates through negotiations with OMB. *See*, OMB Guidance for Grants and

Agreements, "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87)," 2 CFR Part 225, App. E, "State and Local Indirect Cost Rate Proposals."

2 Indian Tribes. Indian tribes may obtain indirect cost rates with the Department of the Interior. *See*, OMB Guidance for Grants and Agreements, "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87)," 2 CFR Part 225, App. E, "State and Local Indirect Cost Rate Proposals."

3 Educational Institutions. Educational institutions may obtain facilities and administrative rates (indirect cost rates) from the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) or the Department of Defense's Office of Naval Research (DOD), usually depending on which of the two agencies (HHS or DOD) has provided more funds to the educational institution for the most recent three years. *See*, OMB Guidance for Grants and Agreements, "Cost Principles for Educational Institutions (OMB Circular A-21)," 2 CFR Part 220, App. A, "Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Grants, Contracts, and Other Agreements With Educational Institutions."

4 Non-Profit Entities. Non-profit entities may obtain indirect cost rates from the Federal agency with the largest dollar value of awards with an organization, unless different arrangements are agreed to by the agencies concerned. *See*, OMB Guidance for Grants and Agreements, "Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations (OMB Circular A-122)," 2 CFR Part 230, App. A, "General Principles."

5 Private For-Profit Entities. Private for-profit entities may obtain indirect cost rates from the Defense Contract Audit Agency. *See*, the DCAA Web site: **http://www.dcaa.mil**.

(e) Eligibility of Costs. Costs of third party contract audits and proposal evaluations are eligible for reimbursement by FTA as a direct or indirect charge as permitted by applicable Federal cost principles. FTA reserves the right to disallow payments for duplicative audit charges.

CHAPTER V

SOURCES

A recipient will often have several sources from which to acquire the property and services it needs as described below:

1. FORCE ACCOUNT. As used in this circular, "force account" means the recipient's own labor forces and equipment. The use of force account labor is a project management function, rather than a procurement and contract administration function, except in the general sense of the recipient's ability to perform work with its own forces rather than contracting with another entity to acquire the property or services it needs, and the cost implications of the recipient's decision. Although rarely exercised, FTA's grant or cooperative agreement secures FTA the right to determine the extent to which Federal assistance may be used to participate in force account costs. FTA's concern is to assure that the recipient will have adequate technical capacity to perform the work it undertakes reasonably economically and prudently. The third party contracting guidance of this circular does not apply to a recipient's use of its own forces to perform project work.

2. SHARED USE. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients encourages recipients and subrecipients to enter into agreements for shared use of property and services. FTA encourages non-governmental recipients to consider shared use if economical and feasible.

3. JOINT PROCUREMENTS. FTA uses the term "joint procurement" to mean a method of contracting in which two or more purchasers agree from the outset to use a single solicitation document and enter into a single contract with a vendor for delivery of property or services in a fixed quantity, even if expressed as a total minimum and total maximum. Unlike a State or local government purchasing schedule, a joint procurement is not drafted for the purpose of accommodating the needs of other parties that may later want to participate in the benefits of that contract.

    a. Use Encouraged. The Common Grant Rules and FTA encourage recipients to procure goods and services jointly with other recipients to obtain better pricing through larger purchases. Joint procurements offer the advantage of being able to obtain goods and services that may match each participating recipient's requirements better than those likely to be available through an assignment of another recipient's contract rights. If economical and feasible, FTA also participates in the costs of joint procurements by non-governmental recipients.

    b. All FTA and Federal Requirements Apply. When obtaining goods or services in this manner, recipients participating in the joint procurement must ensure compliance with

all applicable FTA and Federal requirements and include all required clauses and certifications in the joint solicitation and contract documents.

4. STATE OR LOCAL GOVERNMENT PURCHASING SCHEDULES OR PURCHASING CONTRACTS. FTA uses the term "state or local government purchasing schedule" to mean an arrangement that a State or local government has established with several or many vendors in which those vendors agree to provide essentially an option to the State or local government, and its subordinate government entities, to acquire specific property or services in the future at established prices. These arrangements are somewhat similar to the General Services Administration's (GSA) Cooperative Purchasing Program available for Federal Government use. If the State or local government wishes to permit others to use its schedules, the State or local government might seek the agreement of the vendor to provide the listed property or services to others with access to the schedules, or it may permit the vendor to determine whether or not it wishes to do so. **CAUTION:** The term "State or local government purchasing schedule" does not include intergovernmental purchasing schedules to be the type of State or local intergovernmental agreements.

a. Use.

(1) Use Permitted. FTA's policies are as follows:

(a) General. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients encourages recipients and subrecipients to enter into State and local intergovernmental agreements for procurements of property or services, and.

(b) State or Local Government Permission Required. If so permitted by State or local authorities, a non-governmental recipient may also use State and local sources of property and services. This is because 49 C.F.R.§ 18.36(a) permits States to use their own policies and procedures they use for their own purchases, not because those schedules are "State intergovernmental agreements," and

b. Use Restricted. Although the Common Grant Rule for government recipients, 49 C.F.R. § 18.36(b)(5), provides that "grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to enter into State and local intergovernmental agreements for procurements of common goods and services":

(1) Prohibited. FTA does not authorize grantees to consider intergovernmental purchasing schedules to be the type of State or local intergovernmental agreement to which that Common Grant Rule is referring, but

(2) Permitted. FTA recognizes joint purchases to be the only type of intergovernmental agreement suitable for use by its grantees and subgrantees.

c. All FTA and Federal Requirements Apply. When obtaining property or services in this manner, the recipient must ensure all Federal requirements, required clauses, and certifications (including Buy America) are properly followed and included, whether in the master intergovernmental contract or in the recipient's purchase document. One way of achieving compliance with FTA requirements is for all parties to agree to append the required Federal clauses in the purchase order or other document that effects the recipient's procurement. When buying from these schedules, the recipient should obtain Buy America certification before entering into the purchase order. If the product to be purchased is Buy America compliant, there is no problem. If the product is not Buy America compliant, the recipient will need to obtain a waiver from FTA before proceeding.

5. FEDERAL EXCESS AND SURPLUS PROPERTY. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients encourages recipients to use Federal excess and surplus property managed by GSA when feasible and economical rather than procuring new property. The GSA Federal Property Management Regulations, 41 CFR Parts 101-42 through 101-46, 101-48, and 101-49 govern the eligibility of recipients and subrecipients, as well as others, to acquire supplies and services through GSA's personal property utilization and disposal programs.

6. FEDERAL SUPPLY SCHEDULES. A recipient must be specifically authorized by Federal law before it may use a GSA Federal Supply Schedule.

a. Full Use of Federal Supply Schedules. Appendix B of GSA Order ADM 4800.2E, "Eligibility to Use GSA Sources of Supply and Services," explains that FTA recipients eligible for full use of GSA Schedules are limited by the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended, at 40 U.S.C. Section 502(a)(3) to the Washington Metropolitan Area Transit Authority and the District of Columbia Department of Mass Transportation. The Government of American Samoa, the Government of Guam, Virgin Islands Department of Public Works, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Marianas are similarly authorized access to GSA schedules by 48 U.S.C. Section 1469e.

b. Limited Use of Federal Supply Schedules. Federal laws authorize State and Local Governments (including institutions of higher education) to use Federal Supply Schedules to acquire information technology (IT) and to purchase products and services to facilitate recovery from a major disaster. In both circumstances, GSA defines the term "State and Local Government" broadly to include many FTA governmental recipients and others as follows:

> The States of the United States, counties, municipalities, cities, towns, townships, tribal governments, public authorities (including public or Indian housing agencies under the United States Housing Act of 1937), school districts, colleges, and other institutions of higher education, council of governments (incorporated or not), regional or interstate government entities, or any agency or instrumentality of the preceding entities (including any local educational agency or institution of higher education), and including legislative and judicial departments.

GSA has determined that the term "State and Local Government" does not include "contractors, or grantees, of State or local governments." Nevertheless, under the GSA Cooperative Purchasing Program, State and local governmental entities (including institutions of higher education) receiving Federal assistance, either as an FTA recipient or subrecipient, are eligible users by virtue of conforming to the definition of State or local government entities; the source of funding for these entities is irrelevant.

(1) Information Technology. Section 211 of the E-Government Act of 2002, 40 U.S.C. Section 502(c)(1), authorizes "State and local governments," within limits established by law, to acquire IT of various types through GSA's Cooperative Purchasing Program, Federal Supply Schedule 70.

(2) Major Disaster or Emergency Recovery. Since February 1, 2007, Section 833 of the John Warner National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2007, Public Law 109-364, amended 40 U.S.C. Section 502(d), to authorize State and local government entities to use any GSA Federal Supply Schedule to acquire property and services in advance of a major disaster declared by the President of the United States, as well as in the aftermath of an emergency event. The State or local government is then responsible for ensuring that the property or services acquired will be used for recovery. More information about major disaster and emergency recovery acquisition is available at GSA's Web site: **http://www.gsa.gov/Portal/gsa/ep/contentView.do?faq=yes&pageTypeId=8199&contentId=22410&contentType=GSA_OVERVIEW.**

(3) Local Preparedness Acquisition. Section 2 of the Local Preparedness Acquisition Act, Pub. L. 110-248, June 26, 2008, amended 40 U.S.C. Section 502(c) by adding paragraph (2) authorizing "State and local governments" within limits established by law, to acquire law enforcement, security and certain related items of various types through GSA's Cooperative Purchasing Program Federal Supply Schedule 84 or any amended or later version of that Federal supply classification group. Information about cooperative purchasing is available at GSA's Web site: **http://www.gsa.gov/Portal/gsa/ep/channelView.do?pageTypeId=8199&channelPage=%252Fep%252Fchannel%252FgsaOverview.jsp&channelId=-13528**.

c. All FTA and Federal Requirements Apply. When using GSA schedules to acquire property or services in this manner, the recipient must ensure all Federal requirements, required clauses, and certifications (including FTA's Buy America requirements) are properly followed and included, whether in the master intergovernmental contract or in the recipient's purchase document. One way of achieving compliance with FTA requirements is for all parties to agree to append the required Federal clauses in the purchase order or other document that effects the recipient's procurement. When buying from these schedules, the recipient should obtain an FTA Buy America certification before entering into the purchase order. If the property to be purchased is Buy America compliant under FTA regulations, the recipient may proceed with its acquisition. If the property is not Buy America compliant under FTA standards, the recipient will need to obtain a waiver from FTA before proceeding.

d. Competition and Price Reasonableness. When using GSA schedules to acquire property or services, a recipient will have fulfilled the Common Grant Rules' competition requirements if it seeks offers from at least three sources. FTA expects a recipient using a price published on a GSA schedule to consider whether the GSA price is reasonable. The recipient may also seek a lower price than that published on the GSA schedules.

7. EXISTING CONTRACTS. Occasionally, a recipient may find it advantageous to use existing contract rights. As used in this circular, "existing contract" means a contract that, when formed, was intended to be limited to the original parties thereto, and does not include State or local government purchasing schedules or purchasing contracts as discussed in sections 4, 5, and 6 of this Chapter.

a. Permissible Actions. Within the conditions set forth below, FTA permits a recipient to use existing contract rights held by another recipient:

(1) Exercise of Options. A recipient may use contract options held by another recipient with the following limitations:

(a) Consistency with the Underlying Contract. FTA expects the recipient to ensure that the terms and conditions of the option it seeks to exercise are substantially similar to the terms and conditions of the option as stated in the original contract at the time it was awarded.

(b) Price. The recipient may not exercise an option unless it has determined that the option price is better than prices available in the market, or that when it intends to exercise the option, the option is more advantageous.

(c) Awards Treated as Sole Source Procurements. The following actions constitute sole source awards:

1 Failure to Evaluate Options Before Awarding the Underlying Contract. If a contract has one or more options and those options were not evaluated as part of the original contract award, exercising those options after contract award will result in a sole source award.

2 Negotiating a Lower Option Price. Exercising an option after the recipient has negotiated a lower or higher price will also result in a sole source award unless that price can be reasonably determined from the terms of the original contract, or that price results from Federal actions that can be reliably measured, such as changes in Federal prevailing labor rates, for example.

In the circumstances described in this paragraph, FTA assistance may be used to support a sole source award only if that award can be justified under FTA's third party contract standards for sole source awards.

(2) Assignment of Contract Rights. FTA expects the recipient to limit its procurements to the amount of property and services required to meet its reasonably expected needs without adding excess capacity simply for the purpose of assigning contract rights to others at a later date. FTA expects the recipient to be able to justify the quantities it procures. Having written statements of its anticipated material requirements in the recipient's contract files may prove helpful.

For example, if the supplies or services were solicited, competed, and awarded through the use of an indefinite-delivery-indefinite-quantity (IDIQ) contract, the solicitation and also the contract award are expected to contain both a minimum and maximum quantity that represent the recipient's reasonably foreseeable needs. The establishment of State or local government purchasing schedules intended to be available for future use as discussed in section 4 of this Chapter, however, are not usually financed with FTA assistance. FTA assistance would be used to acquire property or services listed on such a contract only to the extent needed for public transportation purposes.

Nevertheless, a recipient may find that it has inadvertently acquired contract rights in excess of its needs. The recipient may assign those contract rights to other recipients if the original contract contains an assignability provision that permits the assignment of all or a portion of the specified deliverables under the terms originally advertised, competed, evaluated, and awarded, or contains other appropriate assignment provisions. Some refer to this process as "piggybacking."

(a) Acquisition Through Assigned Contract Rights. Although FTA does not encourage the practice, a recipient may find it useful to acquire contract rights through assignment by another recipient. A recipient that obtains contractual

rights through assignment may use them after first determining that the original contract price remains fair and reasonable, and the original contract provisions are adequate for compliance with all Federal requirements. The recipient need not perform a second price analysis if a price analysis was performed for the original contract. However, FTA expects the recipient to determine whether the contract price or prices originally established are still fair and reasonable before using those rights. *See*, FTA's "Best Practices Procurement Manual" for further information about procurements through assignment of another's contract rights. The recipient using assigned contract rights is responsible for ensuring the contractor's compliance with FTA's Buy America requirements and execution of all the required Buy America preaward review and post-delivery review certifications. For further details, please refer to FTA's Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Handbook for buses and railcars, which contain copies of those certifications. The recipient seeking to use assigned contract rights will not usually be able to determine whether the assigning recipient originally procured unreasonably large quantities. Before proceeding with the assignment, however, FTA does expect the recipient seeking the assignment to review the original contract to be sure that the quantities the assigning recipient acquired, coupled with the quantities the acquiring recipient seeks, do not exceed the amounts available under the assigning recipient's contract.

(b) Alternatives to Assigned Contract Rights. Assignments limit a recipient's choices to specific property and services acquired to meet another recipient's particular needs, and may be less suited to the needs of the recipient seeking the assignment. More desirable approaches may include:

1 Joint Procurements. Recipients should consider combining or "pooling" their procurements to obtain better pricing. In general, joint procurements are often more desirable than procurements through assignment because an assignment does not represent the combined buying power of more than one purchaser at the time when prices are established. A joint procurement may also offer the advantage of permitting the parties to acquire property and services more closely responsive to each purchaser's material requirements than would be available through assignment of existing contract rights. FTA cautions, however, that if two or more parties jointly solicit and award an IDIQ contract, total minimum and maximum quantities are expected to be stated in the solicitation and contract.

2 Intergovernmental Procurements. As discussed in sections 4, 5, and 6 of this Chapter, Federal, State, and local governmental resources may provide attractive procurement opportunities.

b. Impermissible Actions. A recipient may not use Federal assistance to finance:

(1) Improper Contract Expansion. A contract has been improperly expanded when it includes a larger scope, greater quantities, or options beyond the original recipient's reasonably anticipated needs. A contract has also been improperly expanded when excess capacity has been added primarily to permit assignment of those contract rights to another entity. The Common Grant Rules requires the recipient to have procurement procedures that preclude the recipient from acquiring property or services it does not need.

(2) Cardinal Changes. A significant change in contract work (property or services) that causes a major deviation from the original purpose of the work or the intended method of achievement, or causes a revision of contract work so extensive, significant, or cumulative that, in effect, the contractor is required to perform very different work from that described in the original contract, is a cardinal change. Such practices are sometimes informally referred to as "tag-ons." A change within the scope of the contract (sometimes referred to as an "in-scope" change) is not a "tag-on" or cardinal change.

(a) Identifying Cardinal Changes. Although FTA has provided additional guidance in its Best Practices Procurement Manual, FTA has not developed a finite list of acceptable contract changes. Recognizing a cardinal change to a third party contract can be difficult. A cardinal change cannot be identified easily by assigning a specific percentage, dollar value, number of changes, or other objective measure that would apply to all cases.

(b) Changes in Quantity. To categorize virtually any change in quantity as a prohibited cardinal change (sometimes referred to as an "out-of-scope" change) fails to account for the realities of the marketplace and unnecessarily restricts a recipient from exercising reasonable freedom to make minor adjustments contemplated fairly and reasonably by the parties when they entered into the contract. The U.S. Supreme Court decision in *Freund v. United States*, 260 U.S. 60 (1922) supports FTA's policy.

(c) Tests. Among other things, customary marketing practices can influence the determination of which changes will be "cardinal." Other tests involve the nature and extent of the work to be performed, the amount of effort involved, whether the change was originally contemplated at the time the original contract was entered into, or the cumulative impact on the contract's quantity, quality, costs, and delivery terms.

(d) Rolling Stock. In the case of rolling stock, a major change in quantity or a substitution of major end items not contemplated when competition for the

original award took place would generally be a cardinal change. Another cardinal change would, at this time, include a change from a high-floor to a low-floor vehicle. Changing an engine might result in a cardinal change depending on the circumstances surrounding the project and whether a compatible replacement could be obtained through competition. FTA, however, considers changes to seating, fabrics, and colors, exterior paint schemes, signage, and floor covering, and other similar changes to be permissible changes.

(e) Federal Procurement Standards. The broader standards applied in Federal contracting practice reflected in Federal court decisions, Federal Boards of Contract Appeals decisions, and U.S. Comptroller General Decisions provide guidance in determining whether a change would be treated as a cardinal change. FTA does not imply that these Federal procurement decisions are controlling. FTA intends to consider the collective wisdom within these decisions in determining the nature of third party contract changes along the broad spectrum between permissible changes and impermissible cardinal changes. Other guidance can be found in FTA's Best Practices Procurement Manual and "Frequently Asked Questions" at the FTA Web site: **http://www.fta.dot.gov/funding/thirdpartyprocurement/grants_financing_6039.html.**

FTA intends to monitor its recipients and oversight contractors to ensure that this concept is well understood and uniformly applied. This approach permits greater latitude but, because it requires analysis, it can sometimes require a greater knowledge of Federal contracting practices. In any event, before attempting to change the terms of its contract, the recipient should review the contract's provisions to ensure that the contract permits the change sought.

8. THE OPEN MARKET. The recipient will probably acquire most of the property and services it needs through procurements in the open market. The next two chapters of this circular will address proper procedures for conducting and administering such procurements.

CHAPTER VI

PROCEDURAL GUIDANCE FOR OPEN MARKET PROCUREMENTS

1. COMPETITION REQUIRED. Except as permitted by Federal law or regulations, the Common Grant Rules require a recipient of Federal assistance to use third party procurement procedures that provide full and open competition. The Federal Transit Administration's (FTA) enabling legislation at 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(a), also requires an FTA recipient to conduct all third party procurements financed under 49 U.S.C. Chapter 53 in a manner that provides full and open competition as determined by FTA. The recipient may make third party contract awards on the basis of:

   a. Solicitation by the Recipient. Compliance with the solicitation procedures described in this Chapter will fulfill FTA requirements for "full and open competition."

   b. Unsolicited Proposals. A recipient may also enter into a third party contract based on an unsolicited proposal, as defined in Chapter I of this circular, when authorized by applicable State or local law or regulation. Receipt of an unsolicited proposal does not, by itself, justify contract award without providing for full and open competition. Unless the unsolicited proposal offers a proprietary concept that is essential to contract performance, FTA expects the recipient to seek competition. To satisfy the requirement for full and open competition, FTA expects the recipient to take the following actions before entering into a contract resulting from an unsolicited proposal:

      (1) Receipt. Publicize its receipt of the unsolicited proposal,

      (2) Adequate Description. Publicize an adequate description of the property or services offered without improperly disclosing proprietary information or disclosing the originality of thought or innovativeness of the property or services sought,

      (3) Interest in the Property or Services. Publicize its interest in acquiring the property or services described in the proposal,

      (4) Adequate Opportunity to Compete. Provide an adequate opportunity for interested parties to comment or submit competing proposals, and

      (5) Contract Award Based on Proposals Received. Publicize its intention to award a contract based on the unsolicited proposal or another proposal submitted in response to the publication.

      If it is impossible to describe the property or services offered without revealing proprietary information or disclosing the originality of thought or innovativeness of the

property or services sought, the recipient may make a sole source award to the offeror. A sole source award may not be based solely on the unique capability of the offeror to provide the specific property or services proposed.

c. Prequalification. Prequalification lists are most commonly used in procurements of property involving lengthy evaluations needed to determine whether it satisfies the recipient's standards. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients permits a recipient to prequalify people, firms, and property for procurement purposes under the following standards:

(1) Lists. The recipient ensures that all prequalification lists it uses are current.

(2) Sources. The recipient ensures that all prequalification lists it uses include enough qualified sources to provide maximum full and open competition.

(3) Qualification Periods. The recipient permits potential bidders or offerors to qualify during the solicitation period (from the issuance of the solicitation to its closing date). FTA, however, does not require a recipient to hold a particular solicitation open to accommodate a potential supplier that submits property for approval before or during that solicitation. Nor must a recipient expedite or shorten prequalification evaluations of bidders, offerors, or property presented for review during the solicitation period.

Prequalification should not be confused with reviews of technical qualifications that are an essential process in two-step procurements and qualifications-based procurements, as discussed further in subsections 3.e and 3.f of this Chapter, respectively.

2. SOLICITATION REQUIREMENTS AND RESTRICTIONS. The Common Grant Rules require that each solicitation provide the following information:

a. Description of the Property or Services. The solicitation and the contract awarded must include a clear and accurate description of the recipient's technical requirements for the property or services to be acquired in a manner that provides for full and open competition.

(1) What to Include. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the property or services to be acquired. When practicable, the recipient should describe its requirements in terms of functions to be performed or level of performance required, including the range of acceptable characteristics or minimum acceptable standards. The Common Grant Rules for governmental recipients states that "Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible." Both Common Grant Rules express a preference for performance or

functional specifications, but do not prohibit the use of detailed technical specifications when appropriate.

(2) Quantities Limited to the Recipient's Actual Needs. FTA limits Federal assistance to the amount necessary to support the quantity of property or extent of services the recipient actually needs at the time of acquisition. The recipient may not add quantities or options to contracts solely to allow assignments at a later date. FTA will not knowingly support the additional cost of contract rights to property or services excess to the recipient's immediate needs, even though the recipient may assign its excess contract rights to others.

(3) Brand Name or Equal. When it is impractical or uneconomical to provide a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements of the property to be acquired, a "brand name or equal" description may be used to define the performance or other salient characteristics of a specific type of property. The recipient must identify the salient characteristics of the named brand that offerors must provide. When using a "brand name" specification, the recipient does not need to reverse-engineer a complicated part to identify precise measurements or specifications in order to describe its salient characteristics. FTA's "Best Practices Procurement Manual," (BPPM) contains additional information on preparation of specifications including examples with specific language.

(4) Prohibitions. The Common Grant Rules prohibits solicitation requirements that contain features that unduly restrict competition. FTA recipients are also prohibited by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(h) from using FTA assistance to support an exclusionary or discriminatory specification. Some situations considered to be impermissibly restrictive of competition include, but are not limited to, the following, all of which are identified in one or both Common Grant Rules:

(a) Excessive Qualifications. Imposing unreasonable business requirements for bidders or offerors.

(b) Unnecessary Experience. Imposing unnecessary experience requirements for bidders and offerors.

(c) Improper Prequalification. Using prequalification procedures that conflict with the prequalification standards described in subsection 1.c of this Chapter.

(d) Retainer Contracts. Making a noncompetitive award to any person or firm on a retainer contract with the recipient if that award is not for the property or services specified for delivery under the retainer contract.

(e) Excessive Bonding. To encourage greater contractor participation in FTA assisted projects, FTA does not require the recipient to impose bonding requirements on its third party contractors other than construction bonding specified by the Common Grant Rules and this circular for construction. FTA discourages unnecessary bonding because it increases the cost of the contract and restricts competition, particularly by disadvantaged business enterprises. Bond companies exercise their discretion and assure their profits primarily by declining to undertake excessive risks. Consequently many bidders have limited "bonding capacity." Unnecessary performance bonding requirements reduce a prospective bidder's or offeror's capability to bid or offer a proposal on bonded work. Small businesses with short histories may have particular difficulty obtaining bonds as may be specified.

Nevertheless, even though bonding can be expensive, FTA recognizes that a recipient might find bid, performance, or payment bonds to be desirable. Because bonding requirements can limit contractor participation, FTA expects the recipient's bonding requirements to be reasonable and not unduly restrictive. FTA, however, will not challenge State or local bonding requirements as unreasonably restrictive of competition, even though they might exceed Federal requirements. Nevertheless, if the recipient's bonding policies result in such "excessive bonding" that it would violate the Common Grant Rules as restrictive of competition. FTA will not provide Federal assistance for those procurements. Thus if the recipient's bonding policies far exceed those described in this subparagraph or are permissible under State or local law, the recipient should obtain FTA's written concurrence to ensure the availability of Federal assistance for the project.

(f) Brand Name Only. Specifying only a "brand name" product without allowing offers of "an equal" product, or allowing "an equal" product without listing the salient characteristics that the "equal" product must meet to be acceptable for award.

(g) In-State or Local Geographic Restrictions. Specifying in-State or local geographical preferences, or evaluating bids or proposals in light of in-State or local geographic preferences, even if those preferences are imposed by State or local laws or regulations. In particular, 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(i) prohibits an FTA recipient from limiting its bus purchases to in-State dealers. Exceptions expressly mandated or encouraged by Federal law include the following:

1 Architectural Engineering (A&E) Services. Geographic location may be a selection criterion if an appropriate number of qualified firms are eligible to compete for the contract in view of the nature and size of the project.

2 Licensing. A State may enforce its licensing requirements, provided that those State requirements do not conflict with Federal law.

3 Major Disaster or Emergency Relief. Federal assistance awarded under the Stafford Act, 42 U.S.C. Section 5150, to support contracts and agreements for debris clearance, distribution of supplies, reconstruction, and other major disaster or emergency assistance activities permits a preference, to the extent feasible and practicable, for organizations, firms, and individuals residing or doing business primarily in the area affected by a major disaster or emergency.

(h) Organizational Conflicts of Interest. Engaging in practices that result in organizational conflicts of interest as prohibited by the Common Grant Rules:

1 Occurrence. An organizational conflict of interest occurs when any of the following circumstances arise:

a Lack of Impartiality or Impaired Objectivity. When the contractor is unable, or potentially unable, to provide impartial and objective assistance or advice to the recipient due to other activities, relationships, contracts, or circumstances.

b Unequal Access to Information. The contractor has an unfair competitive advantage through obtaining access to nonpublic information during the performance of an earlier contract.

c Biased Ground Rules. During the conduct of an earlier procurement, the contractor has established the ground rules for a future procurement by developing specifications, evaluation factors, or similar documents.

2 Remedies. FTA expects the recipient to analyze each planned acquisition in order to identify and evaluate potential organizational conflicts of interest as early in the acquisition process as possible, and avoid, neutralize, or mitigate potential conflicts before contract award.

(i) Restraint of Trade. Supporting or acquiescing in noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies. Questionable practices would include, but not be limited to submissions of identical bid

prices for the same products by the same group of firms, or an unnatural pattern of awards that had the cumulative effect of apportioning work among a fixed group of bidders or offerors.

(j) Arbitrary Action. Taking any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

b. Evaluation Factors. The solicitation must identify all factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

c. Contract Type Specified. The recipient's specifications should state the type of contract that will be awarded.

(1) Typical Contract Types. Contract types may include, but are not limited to, the following:

(a) Firm Fixed Price. A firm fixed price contract includes a price that remains fixed irrespective of the contractor's cost experience in performing the contract. A firm fixed price contract may include an economic price adjustment provision, incentives, or both.

(b) Cost Reimbursement. A cost-reimbursement contract provides for payment of the contractor's allowable incurred costs, to the extent prescribed in the contract. Allowable costs may include incentives if the recipient believes they can prove helpful. Cost-reimbursement contracts are suitable for use only when the uncertainties involved in contract performance do not permit costs to be estimated with sufficient accuracy to use any type of fixed price contract.

(2) Prohibited or Restricted Contract Types. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients provides more guidance on contract type than does the Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients, which merely authorizes the recipient to select the type of contract it will use (for example, fixed price, cost reimbursement, purchase order, or incentive contract) if it is appropriate for the particular procurement and promotes the best interests of the program or project involved.

The following contract types are restricted or prohibited:

(a) Cost Plus a Percentage of Cost—Prohibited. The Common Grant Rules expressly prohibits the use of the cost plus a percentage of cost method of contracting.

(b) Percentage of Construction Cost—Prohibited. The Common Grant Rules expressly prohibits the use of the percentage of construction cost method of contracting.

(c) Time and Materials—Restricted. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients permits the use of time and material contracts only:

1 When to Use. After determining that no other contract type is suitable; and

2 Firm Ceiling Price. If the contract specifies a ceiling price that the contractor may not exceed except at its own risk.

FTA strongly encourages non-governmental recipients to use similar procedures.

d. Other Federal Requirements Affecting the Property or Services to be Acquired. The solicitation and resulting contract must identify those Federal requirements that will affect contract scope and performance. *See*, Chapter IV, subsection 2.b of this circular, and FTA's latest Master Agreement for references to Federal requirements established following publication of this circular.

e. Other Federal Requirements Affecting the Bidder or Offeror and the Contractor. The solicitation and resulting contract must identify all Federal requirements that a bidder or offeror must fulfill before and during contract performance. *See*, Chapter IV, subsection 2.a of this circular and FTA's latest Master Agreement that may reference more Federal requirements.

f. Award to Other Than the Low Bidder. If the recipient intends to reserve its right to award to other than the low bidder or offeror, that information should be stated in the solicitation document.

g. Rejection of All Bids or Offers. If the recipient intends to reserve its right to reject all bids or offers, that information should be stated in the solicitation document.

3. METHODS OF PROCUREMENT. The recipient should use competitive procedure(s) appropriate for the acquisition undertaken. The procedures used must comply with State and local law as well as with Federal requirements. Federal restrictions vary with the type of procurement method used. The following guidance is based on the requirements of the Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients, supplemented by FTA policies that address the needs of FTA recipients.

a. Micro-Purchases. Consistent with the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), FTA considers micro-purchases to be those purchases of $3,000 or less.

(1) When Appropriate. If permitted by State and local law, the recipient may acquire property and services valued at $3,000 or less without obtaining competitive quotations. These purchases are exempt from FTA's Buy America requirements Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, however, will apply to construction contracts exceeding $2,000, even though the recipient uses micro-purchase procurement procedures. FTA does not intend to imply that the recipient must treat any purchase of $3,000 or less as a micro-purchase. The recipient may set lower thresholds for micro-purchases in compliance with State and local law, or otherwise as it considers appropriate.

(2) Procedures. The following procedures apply to micro-purchases:

(a) Competition. The recipient should distribute micro-purchases equitably among qualified suppliers.

(b) Prohibited Divisions. The recipient may not divide or reduce the size of its procurement merely to come within the micro-purchase limit.

(c) Documentation. FTA's only documentation requirement for micro-purchases is a determination that the price is fair and reasonable and a description of how the recipient made its determination. FTA does not require the recipient to provide its rationale for the procurement method used, selection of contract type, or reasons for contractor selection or rejection.

b. Small Purchases. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients authorizes governmental recipients to use relatively simple and informal small purchase procedures as follows:

(1) When Appropriate. Small purchase procedures may be used to acquire services, supplies, or other property valued at more than the micro-purchase threshold (currently, $3,000) but less than the Federal simplified acquisition threshold at 41 U.S.C. Section 403(11), currently $100,000. (FTA recognizes the small purchase threshold to be the same as the simplified acquisition threshold.) *Also see*, Chapter II, Subsection 3.b. These purchases are also exempt from FTA's Buy America requirements. FTA does not intend to imply that any purchase of $100,000 or less must be treated as a small purchase. The recipient may set lower thresholds for small purchases in compliance with State and local law, or otherwise as it considers appropriate.

(2) Procedures. When using small purchase procedures:

(a) Competition. The recipient must obtain price or rate quotations from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(b) Prohibited Divisions. The recipient may not divide or reduce the size of its procurement to avoid the additional procurement requirements applicable to larger acquisitions.

c. Sealed Bids (Formal Advertising). The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients acknowledges sealed bidding to be a generally accepted procurement method in which bids are publicly solicited, and a firm fixed price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming to all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is lowest in price.

(1) When Appropriate. The Common Grant Rule for government recipients states a preference for the sealed bids procurement method for acquiring property, construction, and other services. Sealed bid procurements should be used when the following circumstances are present:

(a) Precise Specifications. A complete, adequate, precise, and realistic specification or purchase description is available.

(b) Adequate Sources. Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively for the business.

(c) Fixed Price Contract. The procurement generally lends itself to a firm fixed price contract.

(d) Price Determinative. The successful bidder can be selected on the basis of price and those price-related factors listed in the solicitation including, but not limited to, transportation costs, life cycle costs, and discounts expected to be taken. Apart from responsibility determinations discussed in later sections of this Chapter, contractor selection may not be determined on the basis of other factors whose costs cannot be measured at the time of award.

(e) Discussions Unnecessary. Discussions with one or more bidders after bids have been submitted are expected to be unnecessary as award of the contract will be made based on price and price-related factors alone. This contrasts with Competitive Proposal procedures in which discussions with individual offerors are expected to be necessary and may take place at any time after receipt of proposals. However, a pre-bid conference with prospective bidders before bids have been received can be useful.

(2) Procurement Procedures. The following procedures apply to sealed bid procurements:

(a) Publicity. The invitation for bids is publicly advertised.

(b) Adequate Sources. Bids are solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers.

(c) Adequate Specifications. The invitation for bids, including any specifications and pertinent attachments, describes the property or services sought in sufficient detail that a prospective bidder will be able to submit a proper bid.

(d) Sufficient Time. Bidders are allowed sufficient time to prepare bids before the date of bid opening.

(e) Public Opening. All bids are publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids.

(f) Fixed Price Contract. A firm fixed price contract is usually awarded in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder, but a fixed price incentive contract or inclusion of an economic price adjustment provision can sometimes be appropriate. When specified in the bidding documents, factors such as transportation costs and life cycle costs affect the determination of the lowest bid; payment discounts are used to determine the low bid only when prior experience indicates that such discounts are typically taken.

(g) Rejection of Bids. Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound, documented business reason.

FTA strongly encourages non-governmental recipients to use similar procedures.

d. Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals). The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients acknowledges the use of competitive proposals to be a generally accepted procurement method when the nature of the procurement does not lend itself to sealed bidding and the recipient expects that more than one source will be willing and able to submit an offer or proposal.

(1) When Appropriate. Competitive proposals should be used when any of the following circumstances are present:

(a) Type of Specifications. The property or services to be acquired are described in a performance or functional specification; or if described in detailed technical specifications, other circumstances such as the need for discussions or the importance of basing the contract award on factors other than price alone are present.

(b) Uncertain Number of Sources. Uncertainty about whether more than one bid will be submitted in response to an invitation for bids and the recipient lacks

the authority or flexibility under State or local law to negotiate the contract price if it receives only a single bid.

(c) Price Alone Not Determinative. Due to the nature of the procurement, contract award need not be based exclusively on price or price-related factors. In different types of negotiated acquisitions, the relative importance of cost or price may vary. When the recipient's material requirements are clearly definable and the risk of unsuccessful contract performance is minimal, cost or price may play a dominant role in source selection. The less definitive the requirements, the more development work required, or the greater the performance risk, the more technical or past performance considerations may play a dominant role in source selection and supersede low price.

(d) Discussions Expected. Separate discussions with individual offeror(s) are expected to be necessary after they have submitted their proposals. This contrasts with Sealed Bids (Formal Advertising) procedures in which discussions with individual bidders are not likely to be necessary, as award of the contract will be made based on price and price-related factors alone.

(2) Procurement Procedures. The following procedures apply to procurements by competitive proposals:

(a) Publicity. The request for proposals is publicly advertised.

(b) Evaluation Factors. All evaluation factors and their relative importance are specified in the solicitation; but numerical or percentage ratings or weights need not be disclosed.

(c) Adequate Sources. Proposals are solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(d) Evaluation Method. A specific method is established and used to conduct technical evaluations of the proposals received and to determine the most qualified offeror.

(e) Price and Other Factors. An award is made to the responsible offeror whose proposal is most advantageous to the recipient's program with price and other factors considered.

(f) Best Value. If permitted under its State or local law, the recipient may award the contract to the offeror whose proposal provides the greatest value to the recipient. To do so, the recipient's solicitation must inform potential offerors that the award will be made on a "best value" basis and identify what factors

will form the basis for award. The evaluation factors for a specific procurement should reflect the subject matter and the elements that are most important to the recipient. Those evaluation factors may include, but need not be limited to, technical design, technical approach, length of delivery schedules, quality of proposed personnel, past performance, and management plan. The recipient should base its determination of which proposal represents the "best value" on an analysis of the tradeoff of qualitative technical factors and price or cost factors. Apart from the statutory requirement that the contract must support the recipient's public transportation project consistent with applicable Federal laws and regulations, FTA does not require any specific factors or analytic process.

FTA strongly encourages non-governmental recipients to use similar procedures.

e. Two-Step Procurement Procedures. If permitted by State and local law, the recipient may use two-step procurement procedures in both sealed bid and competitively negotiated procurements, provided the opportunity for full and open competition is retained.

(1) Review of Technical Qualifications and Approach. The first step is a review of the prospective contractors' technical approach to the recipient's request and technical qualifications to carry out that approach. The recipient then may narrow the competitive range to prospective contractors that demonstrate a technically satisfactory approach and have satisfactory qualifications.

(2) Review of Bids and Proposals Submitted by Qualified Prospective Contractors. The second step consists of soliciting and reviewing complete bids (sometimes referred to as "two-step sealed bidding") or proposals (as in "competitive negotiations"), including price, submitted by each prospective contractor determined to be qualified. Absent exceptional circumstances, the recipient should attempt to solicit bids or proposals from at least three qualified prospective contractors. Unlike qualifications-based procurement procedures required for A&E services, and other contracts covered by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b) discussed in subsection 3.f of this Chapter, FTA expects the recipient to consider all bid or proposal prices submitted as well as other technical factors, rather than limiting reviews to the most qualified bidder or offeror.

f. Architectural Engineering (A&E) Services and Other Services. FTA's enabling legislation at 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(1) requires the use of the qualifications-based procurement procedures contained in the "Brooks Act," 40 U.S.C. Sections 1101 through 1104, to acquire A&E services, but also for program management, construction management, feasibility studies, preliminary engineering, design, architectural,

engineering, surveying, mapping and related services. The nature of the work to be performed and its relationship to construction, not the nature of the prospective contractor, determine whether qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used as described below.

(1) Qualifications-Based Procurement Procedures Required. The recipient must use qualifications-based procurement procedures not only when contracting for A&E services, but also for other services listed in 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(1) that are directly in support of, directly connected to, directly related to, or lead to construction, alteration, or repair of real property. For example, a contractor performing program management, project design, construction management, or engineering services in which that contractor would select the finished products to be acquired for an FTA assisted construction project must be selected through qualifications-based procurement procedures.

(2) Qualifications-Based Procurement Procedures Prohibited. Unless FTA determines otherwise in writing, a recipient may not use qualifications-based procurement procedures to acquire other types of services if those services are not directly in support of, directly connected to, directly related to, or do not lead to construction, alteration, or repair of real property. Even if a contractor has performed services listed herein in support of a construction, alteration, or repair project involving real property, selection of that contractor to perform similar services not relating to construction may not be made through the use of qualifications-based procurement procedures.

A project involving construction does not always require that qualifications-based procurement procedures be used. Whether or not qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used depends on the actual services to be performed in connection with the construction project. For example, the design or fabrication of message signs, signals, movable barriers, and similar property that will become off-the-shelf items or will be fabricated and delivered as final end products for installation in an FTA assisted construction project are not services for which qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used. Nor is actual construction, alteration, or repair to real property the type of services for which qualifications-based procurement procedures may be used.

(3) Qualifications-Based Procurement Procedures. The following procedures apply to qualifications-based procurements:

(a) Qualifications. Unlike other two-step procurement procedures in which price is an evaluation factor, an offeror's qualifications are evaluated to determine contract award.

(b) Price. Price is excluded as an evaluation factor.

(c) Most Qualified. Negotiations are first conducted with only the most qualified offeror.

(d) Next Most Qualified. Only after failing to agree on a fair and reasonable price may negotiations be conducted with the next most qualified offeror. Then, if necessary, negotiations with successive offerors in descending order may be conducted until contract award can be made to the offeror whose price the recipient believes is fair and reasonable.

(e) Effect of State Laws. To the extent that a State has, before August 10, 2005, adopted by law, an equivalent State qualifications-based-procurement requirement for acquiring architectural, engineering, and design services, State procedures, rather than Federal "Brooks Act" procedures (40 U.S.C. Sections 1101 through 1104), may be used.

(4) Audits and Indirect Costs. As required by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(2), the following requirements apply to a third party contract for program management, architectural engineering, construction management, feasibility studies, preliminary engineering, design, architectural, engineering, surveying, mapping, or related services:

(a) Performance of Audits. The third party contract or subcontract must be performed and audited in compliance with FAR Part 31 cost principles.

(b) Indirect Cost Rates. The recipient and the third party contractor, its subcontractors and subrecipients, if any, must accept FAR indirect cost rates for the one-year applicable accounting periods established by a cognizant Federal or State government agency, if those rates are not currently under dispute.

(c) Application of Rates. After a firm's indirect cost rates established as described in subparagraph 3.f(4)(b) above are accepted, those rates will apply for purposes of contract estimation, negotiation, administration, reporting, and payments, not limited by administrative or de facto ceilings.

(d) Prenotification; Confidentiality of Data. Before requesting or using cost or rate data described in subparagraph 3.f(4)(c) above, a recipient must notify the affected firm(s). That data must be kept confidential and may not be accessible by or provided by the agency or group of agencies that share cost data under this subparagraph, except by written permission of the audited firm. If prohibited by law, that cost and rate data may not be disclosed under

any circumstances. FTA recognizes that many States have "Open Records" laws that may make it difficult to maintain confidential cost or rate data. As a result, before requesting or using a firm's cost or rate data, not only should a recipient notify the affected firm, but it must also obtain permission to provide that data in response to a valid request under applicable State law. The confidentiality requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5325(b)(2)(D) cannot be waived, even if those confidentiality requirements conflict with State law or regulations.

g. Design-Bid-Build. The design-bid-build procurement method requires separate contracts for design services and for construction.

(1) Design Services. For design services, the recipient must use qualifications-based procurement procedures, in compliance with applicable Federal, State and local law and regulations.

(2) Construction. Because the recipient may not use qualifications-based procurement procedures for the actual construction, alteration or repair of real property, the recipient generally must use competitive procedures for the construction. These may include sealed bidding or competitive negotiation procurement methods, as appropriate.

h. Design-Build. The design-build procurement method consists of contracting for design and construction simultaneously with contract award to a single contractor, consortium, joint venture, team, or partnership that will be responsible for both the project's design and construction. FTA's enabling legislation expressly authorizes the use of FTA capital assistance to support design-build projects "after the recipient complies with Government requirements," 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(d)(2).

(1) Procurement Method Determined by Value. First, the recipient must separate the various contract activities to be undertaken and classify them as design or construction, and then calculate the estimated total value of each. Because both design and construction are included in a single procurement, the FTA expects the recipient to use the procurement method appropriate for the services having the greatest cost, even though other necessary services would not typically be procured by that method.

(a) Construction Predominant. The construction costs of a design-build project are usually predominant so that the recipient would be expected to use competitive negotiations or sealed bids for the entire procurement rather than the qualification-based "Brooks Act" procurement procedures. Specifically, when construction costs will be predominant, unless FTA determines otherwise in writing, an FTA recipient may not use qualifications-based

procurement procedures to acquire architectural engineering, program management, construction management, feasibility studies, preliminary engineering, design, architectural and engineering, surveying, mapping, or related A&E services unless required by State law adopted before August 10, 2005.

(b) Design Services Predominant. In the less usual circumstance in which the cost of most work to be performed will consist of costs for architectural and engineering, program management, construction management, feasibility studies, preliminary engineering, design, architectural engineering, surveying, mapping, or related A&E services, FTA expects the recipient to use qualifications-based procurement procedures based on the "Brooks Act," 40 U.S.C. Sections 1101 through 1104, as described in subsection 3.e of this Chapter.

(2) Selection Processes. The recipient may structure its design-build procurement using one or more steps as described below:

(a) One-Step Method. The recipient may undertake its design-build procurement in a single step.

(b) Two-Step Method. Another procurement method the recipient may use for large design-build projects is a two-step selection process as authorized for Federal Government use by 41 U.S.C. Section 253m. This method consists of:

1 Review of Technical Qualifications and Approach. The first step is a review of the prospective contractors' technical qualifications and technical approach to the project. The recipient may then narrow the competitive range to those prospective contractors with satisfactory qualifications that demonstrate a technically satisfactory approach.

2 Review of Complete Proposals. The second step consists of soliciting and reviewing complete proposals, including price, submitted by prospective contractors first determined to be qualified.

By using this two-step method, it will not be necessary for the recipient to undertake extensive proposal reviews, nor will prospective offerors need to engage in expensive proposal drafting. This two-step selection procedure is separate and distinct from prequalification and is but one procurement method available to the recipient.

i. Other Than Full and Open Competition. Normally, the recipient must provide for full and open competition when soliciting bids or proposals. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients, however, acknowledges that under certain circumstances, a recipient may conduct procurements without providing for full and open competition.

(1) When Appropriate. A recipient may use noncompetitive proposals only when the procurement is inappropriate for small purchase procedures, sealed bids, or competitive proposals, and at least one of the following circumstances are present:

(a) Adequate Competition. After soliciting several sources, FTA expects the recipient to review its specifications to determine if they are unduly restrictive or if changes can be made to encourage submission of more bids or proposals. After the recipient determines that the specifications are not unduly restrictive and changes cannot be made to encourage greater competition, the recipient may determine the competition adequate. A cost analysis must be performed in lieu of a price analysis when this situation occurs.

(b) Sole Source. When the recipient requires supplies or services available from only one responsible source, and no other supplies or services will satisfy its requirements, the recipient may make a sole source award. When the recipient requires an existing contractor to make a change to its contract that is beyond the scope of that contract, the recipient has made a sole source award that must be justified.

1 Unique Capability or Availability. The property or services are available from one source if one of the conditions described below is present:

a Unique or Innovative Concept. The offeror demonstrates a unique or innovative concept or capability not available from another source. Unique or innovative concept means a new, novel, or changed concept, approach, or method that is the product of original thinking, the details of which are kept confidential or are patented or copyrighted, and is available to the recipient only from one source and has not in the past been available to the recipient from another source.

b Patents or Restricted Data Rights. Patent or data rights restrictions preclude competition.

c Substantial Duplication Costs. In the case of a follow-on contract for the continued development or production of highly specialized equipment and major components thereof, when it is likely that award to another contractor would result in substantial duplication of costs that are not expected to be recovered through competition.

d Unacceptable Delay. In the case of a follow-on contract for the continued development or production of a highly specialized equipment and major components thereof, when it is likely that award to another contractor would result in unacceptable delays in fulfilling the recipient's needs.

2 Single Bid or Single Proposal. Upon receiving a single bid or single proposal in response to a solicitation, the recipient should determine if competition was adequate. This should include a review of the specifications for undue restrictiveness and might include a survey of potential sources that chose not to submit a bid or proposal.

a Adequate Competition. FTA acknowledges competition to be adequate when the reasons for few responses were caused by conditions beyond the recipient's control. Many unrelated factors beyond the recipient's control might cause potential sources not to submit a bid or proposal. If the competition can be determined adequate, FTA's competition requirements will be fulfilled, and the procurement will qualify as a valid competitive award.

b Inadequate Competition. FTA acknowledges competition to be inadequate when, caused by conditions within the recipient's control. For example, if the specifications used were within the recipient's control and those specifications were unduly restrictive, competition will be inadequate.

(c) Unusual and Compelling Urgency. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients permits the recipient to limit the number of sources from which it solicits bids or proposals when a recipient has such an unusual and urgent need for the property or services that the recipient would be seriously injured unless it were permitted to limit the solicitation. The recipient may also limit the solicitation when the public exigency or emergency will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation for the property or services.

(d) Associated Capital Maintenance Item Exception Repealed. The Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users (SAFETEA-LU) repealed the special procurement preference previously authorized for associated capital maintenance items. Thus, any sole source procurement of associated capital maintenance items must qualify for an exception under the same standards that would apply to other sole source acquisitions.

(e) Authorized by FTA. The Common Grant Rules provides Federal agencies authority to permit a recipient to use noncompetitive proposals. Under this authority, FTA has made the following determinations:

1 Team, Consortium, Joint Venture, Partnership. With some exceptions, when FTA awards a grant agreement or enters into a cooperative agreement with a team, consortium, joint venture, or partnership, or provides FTA assistance for a research project in which FTA has approved the participation of a particular firm or combination of firms in the project work, the grant agreement or cooperative agreement constitutes approval of those arrangements. In such cases, FTA expects the recipient to use competition, as feasible, to select other participants in the project. It can sometimes be difficult to determine whether a bidder or offeror is submitting its bid or offer as a team or other group with committed parties. The Recipient should clarify with the bidder or offeror how other entities included in its bid or offer are to be treated.

2 FAR Standards. To ensure that the recipient has flexibility equal to that of Federal contracting officers, FTA authorizes procurement by noncompetitive proposals in all of the circumstances authorized by FAR Part 6.3. In addition to circumstances discussed in the Common Grant Rules, the FAR authorizes less than full and open competitive procurements in one or more of the following circumstances:

a Statutory Authorization or Requirement. To comply with Department of Transportation (DOT) appropriations laws that include specific statutory requirements, with the result that only a single contractor can perform certain project work.

b National Emergency. To maintain a facility, producer, manufacturer, or other supplier available to provide supplies or services in the event of a national emergency or to achieve industrial mobilization.

c Research. To establish or maintain an educational or other non-profit institution or a federally funded research and development center that has or will have an essential engineering, research, or development capability.

d Protests, Disputes, Claims, Litigation. To acquire the services of an expert or neutral person for any current or anticipated protest, dispute, claim, or litigation.

e International Arrangements. When precluded by the terms of an international agreement or a treaty between the United States and a foreign government or international organization, or when prohibited by the written directions of a foreign government reimbursing the recipient for the cost of the acquisition of the supplies or services for that government.

f National Security. When the disclosure of the recipient's needs would compromise the national security.

g Public Interest. When the recipient determines that full and open competition in connection with a particular acquisition is not in the public interest.

(2) When Prohibited. Less than full and open competition is not justified based on:

(a) Failure to Plan. The recipient's lack of advance planning, or

(b) Limited Availability of Federal Assistance. Concerns about the amount of Federal assistance available to support the procurement (for example, expiration of Federal assistance previously available for award).

(3) Procurement Procedures. When less than full and open competition is available to the recipient, the Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients directs the recipient to:

(a) Potential Sources. Solicit offers from as many potential sources as is practicable under the circumstances.

(b) Sole Source Justification. If the recipient decides to solicit an offer from only one source, the recipient must justify its decision adequately in light of the standards of subparagraph 3.i(1)(b) of this Chapter. FTA expects this sole source justification to be in writing.

(c) Cost Analysis. Prepare or obtain a cost analysis verifying the proposed cost data, the projections of the data, and the evaluation of the costs and profits.

(d) Preaward Review. Submit the proposed procurement to FTA for preaward review if FTA so requests.

4. ELIGIBLE COSTS. Property and services must be eligible for Federal participation under the standards of the Federal cost principles applicable to the recipient before the recipient may use FTA assistance to support its costs (2 CFR Part 220, 2 CFR Part 225, 2 CFR Part

230, or FAR Part 31). A recipient may use its own cost principles that comply with applicable Federal cost principles. FTA assistance may support contract costs or prices based on estimated costs only if the costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices comply with applicable Federal cost principles, and the property or services are eligible for Federal assistance under the terms of the underlying grant or cooperative agreement.

5. ADJUSTMENTS TO PROJECT COSTS. MAP-21 amended 49 U.S.C. Section 5309(1) to permit FTA to approve an adjustment of the final net capital project cost of a new fixed guideway capital project or core capacity improvement project to include the cost of eligible activities not included in the original project if FTA determines that the original project has been completed at a cost that is significantly below the original estimate.

6. COST ANALYSIS AND PRICE ANALYSIS. The Common Grant Rules requires the recipient to perform a cost analysis or price analysis in connection with every procurement action, including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis depends on the facts and circumstances surrounding each procurement, but as a starting point, the recipient must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals.

   a. Cost Analysis. The recipient must obtain a cost analysis when a price analysis will not provide sufficient information to determine the reasonableness of the contract cost. The recipient must obtain a cost analysis when the offeror submits elements (that is, labor hours, overhead, materials, and so forth) of the estimated cost, (such as professional consulting and A&E contracts, and so forth). The recipient is also expected to obtain a cost analysis when price competition is inadequate, when only a sole source is available, even if the procurement is a contract modification, or in the event of a change order. The recipient, however, need not obtain a cost analysis if it can justify price reasonableness of the proposed contract based on a catalog or market price of a commercial product sold in substantial quantities to the general public or based on prices set by law or regulation.

      (1) Federal Cost Principles. Federal cost principles contain many requirements about the allowability and allocability of costs.

      (2) Profit. FTA expects the recipient to negotiate profit as a separate element of the cost for each contract in which there has been no price competition, and in all acquisitions in which the recipient performs or acquires a cost analysis. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, the recipient needs to consider the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk undertaken by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of the contractor's record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

b. Price Analysis. If the recipient determines that competition was adequate, a price analysis, rather than a cost analysis, is required to determine the reasonableness of the proposed contract price. As discussed previously in subsection 3.a of this Chapter, the price analysis for micro-purchases may be limited. Similarly, the recipient may use an abbreviated price analysis for small purchases in most cases. One method to record this price analysis is through the use of a preprinted form on which a contracting officer (or other responsible person) can annotate a finding of fair and reasonable pricing and check off the most common reasons why this would be so, such as catalog or market prices offered in substantial quantities to the general public, regulated prices (for example, for many utilities purchases), or a comparison with recent prices for similar goods and services.

c. Guidance on Cost and Price Analysis. FTA recognizes that some recipients may have difficulty obtaining the information necessary to conduct a proper cost or price analysis. Although neither FTA nor DOT may change the Common Grant Rules' requirements for cost or price analysis, FTA continues to seek a fair, practical solution to this problem consistent with the flexibility provided to Federal contracting officers under the FAR The recipient may use the following resources as guidance in preparing cost or price analyses:

(1) FTA's "Best Practices Procurement Manual," Chapter 5,

(2) The National Transit Institute Course, "Cost or Price Analysis and Risk Assessment,"

(3) Pricing Guide for FTA Grantees, FTA Web Site: **http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/Helpline_Price_Guide.doc.**

(4) FAR Part 31, Contract Cost Principles and Procedures, and

(5) Defense Contract Audit Agency Audit Manual. *See*, the DCAA Web site: **http://www.dcaa.mil**.

Note, however, that the requirements of FAR Part 31 and the Defense Contract Audit Agency Audit Manual may differ from restrictions applicable to an FTA recipient. Each FTA recipient must comply with those Federal laws and regulations directly applicable to it.

7. EVALUATIONS. The following standards apply:

a. General. When evaluating bids or proposals submitted, FTA expects the recipient to consider all evaluation factors specified in its solicitation documents, and evaluate the bids or offers only on the evaluation factors included in those solicitation documents.

The recipient may not modify its evaluation factors after bids or proposals have been submitted without re-opening the solicitation.

b. Options. In awarding the contract that will include options, the following standards apply:

(1) Evaluation Required. In general, FTA expects the recipient to evaluate bids or offers for any option quantities or periods contained in a solicitation if it intends to exercise those options after the contract is awarded.

(2) Evaluation Not Required. The recipient need not evaluate bids or offers for any option quantities when the recipient determines that evaluation would not be in its best interests. An example of a circumstance that may support a recipient's determination not to evaluate bids or offers for option quantities is when the recipient is reasonably certain that funds will not be available to permit it to exercise the option.

c. Evaluators. In addition to evaluators with experience in technical or public policy matters related to the procurement, other evaluators may also include auditors and financial experts to the extent that the recipient determines would be necessary or helpful. Although many FTA recipients assign evaluation duties to their own personnel, a recipient lacking qualified personnel within its organization may contract for the evaluation services it needs. If the recipient does contract for evaluation services, the procurement standards of this circular will apply to those contracts and to those contractors selected to perform procurement evaluation functions on behalf of the recipient.

8. CONTRACT AWARD. The following provisions apply to third party contract awards:

a. Award to Other Than the Lowest Bidder or Offeror. Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(c) authorizes the recipient to award a contract to other than the lowest bidder if the award furthers an objective consistent with the purposes of 49 U.S.C. Chapter 53, including improved long-term operating efficiency and lower long-term costs. The recipient may also award a contract to other than the offeror whose proposal is lowest, when stated in the evaluation factors of the solicitation. In both cases, the recipient should include a statement in its solicitation document reserving the right to award the contract to other than the low bidder or offeror.

b. Award Only to a Responsible Bidder or Offeror. SAFETEA-LU amended 49 U.S.C. Section 5325 to require FTA assisted contract awards be made only to "responsible" contractors possessing the ability, willingness, and integrity to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of the contract. Responsibility is a procurement issue that is determined by the recipient after receiving bids or proposals and before making

contract award. FTA expects the prospective contractor to demonstrate affirmatively to the recipient that it qualifies as "responsible" under the standards of 49 U.S.C. Section 5325, and that it's proposed subcontractors also qualify as "responsible."

To designate a prospective contractor "responsible" as required by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325, FTA expects the recipient, at a minimum, to determine and ensure that the prospective contractor satisfies the following criteria described herein. In addition to being otherwise qualified and eligible to receive the contract award under applicable laws and regulations, a responsible contractor must fulfill the following criteria:

(1) Integrity and Ethics. Have a satisfactory record of integrity and business ethics, in compliance with 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(j)(2)(A),

(2) Debarment and Suspension. Be neither debarred nor suspended from Federal programs under DOT regulations, "Nonprocurement Suspension and Debarment," 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200, or under the FAR at 48 CFR Chapter 1, Part 9.4,

(3) Affirmative Action and DBE. Be in compliance with the Common Grant Rules' affirmative action and FTA's Disadvantaged Business Enterprise requirements,

(4) Public Policy. Be in compliance with the public policies of the Federal Government, as required by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(j)(2)(B),

(5) Administrative and Technical Capacity. Have the necessary organization, experience, accounting, and operational controls, and technical skills, or the ability to obtain them, in compliance with 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(j)(2)(D),

(6) Licensing and Taxes. Be in compliance with applicable licensing and tax laws and regulations,

(7) Financial Resources. Have, or can obtain, sufficient financial resources to perform the contract, as required by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(j)(2)(D),

(8) Production Capability. Have, or can obtain, the necessary production, construction, and technical equipment and facilities,

(9) Timeliness. Be able to comply with the required delivery or performance schedule, taking into consideration all existing commercial and governmental business commitments, and

(10) Performance Record. Be able to provide:

(a) Current Performance. A satisfactory current performance record, and

(b) Past Performance. A satisfactory past performance record in view of its records of long-time performance or performance with a predecessor entity, including:

1 Sufficient Resources. Key personnel with adequate experience, a parent firm with adequate resources and experience, and key subcontractors with adequate experience and past performance,

2 Adequate Past Experience. Past experience in carrying out similar work with particular attention to management approach, staffing, timeliness, technical success, budgetary controls, and other specialized considerations as described in the recipient's solicitation, and

3 Past Deficiencies Not the Fault of the Bidder or Offeror. A prospective bidder or offeror that is or recently has been seriously deficient in contract performance is presumed to be nonresponsible, unless the recipient determines that the circumstances were properly beyond the bidder or offeror's control, or unless the bidder or offeror has taken appropriate corrective action. Past failure to apply sufficient tenacity, perseverance, and effort to perform acceptably is strong evidence of nonresponsibility. Failure to meet the quality requirements of a contract is a significant factor to consider in determining satisfactory performance. FTA expects the recipient to consider the number of the bidder or offeror's contracts involved and the extent of deficient performance in each contract when making this determination.

Before entering into a full funding contract for a fixed guideway project, the recipient must now consider the prospective contractor's past performance in estimating costs and ridership as reported in the Contractor Performance Assessment Reports, as required by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(j)(2)(C).

c. Rejection of Bids and Proposals. Depending on the type of recipient, the following applies:

(1) Governmental Recipients. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients asserts the recipient's right to reject all bids submitted in response to an invitation for bids or request for proposals.

(2) Non-Governmental Recipients. The Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients authorizes the recipient to reject any and all bids and proposals when it is in the recipient's interest to do so.

d. Extent and Limits of Contract Award. A selection of a contractor to participate in one aspect of a project does not, by itself, constitute a sole source selection of the contractor's wholly owned affiliates to perform other work in connection with the project.

CHAPTER VII

PROTESTS, CHANGES AND MODIFICATIONS, DISPUTES, CLAIMS, LITIGATION, AND SETTLEMENTS

The Common Grant Rules assign responsibility to the recipient for resolving all contractual and administrative issues arising out of their third party procurements, including source evaluation and selection, including protests of awards, disputes, and claims using good administrative practices and sound business judgment. The Federal Transit Administration (FTA) also encourages the recipient to use appropriate alternative dispute resolution procedures. Neither FTA nor the Common Grant Rules relieves the recipient of any responsibility under its contracts to resolve disagreements that may arise in the course of contract formation or contract administration.

FTA is not a party to its recipients' third party contracts, and does not have any obligation to any participant in its recipients' third party contracts. In general, FTA will not substitute its judgment for that of the recipient or subrecipient unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Examples of "Federal concerns" include, but are not limited to, situations "where a special Federal interest is declared because of program management concerns, possible mismanagement, impropriety, waste, or fraud." Nevertheless, FTA can become involved in the recipient's administrative decisions when a recipient's protest decision is appealed to FTA, or when the recipient seeks to use FTA assistance to support the costs of settlements or other resolutions of protests, disputes, claims, or litigation.

1. PROTESTS.

   a. The Recipient's Role and Responsibilities. The Common Grant Rules charges the recipient with the initial responsibility to resolve protests of third party contract awards.

      (1) Protest Procedures. Apart from other methods the recipient may have to resolve third party contract issues, such as mediation or arbitration, the Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients requires the recipient to have protest procedures. While the Common Grant Rule for non-governmental recipients does not impose a similar requirement on a non-governmental recipient, FTA expects each recipient to have appropriate written protest procedures, as part of its requirement to maintain or acquire adequate technical capacity to implement the project.

      (2) Responsibilities to FTA. The recipient's minimum responsibilities to FTA consist of the following:

         (a) Notify FTA Expeditiously. The Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients requires a governmental recipient to notify FTA when it receives a

third party contract protest to which this circular applies, and to keep FTA informed about the status of the protest. A non-governmental recipient involved in a protest is similarly expected to notify FTA when it receives a third party contract protest to which the circular applies, and to similarly keep FTA informed about the status of the protest. The recipient is expected to provide the following information:

1 Subjects. A list of protests involving third party contracts and potential third party contracts that:

a Have a value exceeding $100,000, or

b Involve a controversial matter, irrespective of amount, or

c Involve a highly publicized matter, irrespective of amount.

2 Details. The following information about each protest:

a A brief description of the protest,

b The basis of disagreement, and

c If open, how far the protest has proceeded, or

d If resolved, the agreement or decision reached, and

e Whether an appeal has been taken or is likely to be taken.

3 When and Where. The recipient should provide this information:

a In its next quarterly Milestone Progress Report, and

b At its next Project Management Oversight review, if any.

Small recipients may report less frequently if no protests are outstanding.

4 FTA Officials to Notify. When a recipient denies a bid protest, and especially if an appeal to FTA is likely to occur, FTA expects the recipient to inform the FTA Regional Administrator for the region administering a regional project, or the FTA Associate Administrator for the program office administering a headquarters project directly. FTA also encourages the recipient to keep its FTA project manager informed about protests with which it is involved. In particular, the recipient should contact its project manager about any unusual activity.

(b) Access to Information. FTA expects the recipient to disclose information about any third party procurement protest to FTA upon request. FTA reserves the right to require the recipient to provide copies of a particular protest or all protests, and any or all related supporting documents as FTA may determine necessary.

b. FTA's Role and Responsibilities. FTA has developed an appeals process for reviewing protests of a recipient's procurement decisions.

(1) Requirements for the Protester. The protester must:

(a) Qualify as an "Interested Party." Only an "interested party" qualifies for FTA review of its appeal. An "interested party" is a party that is an actual or prospective bidder or offeror whose direct economic interest would be affected by the award or failure to award the third party contract at issue.

1 Subcontractors. A subcontractor does not qualify as an "interested party" because it does not have a direct economic interest in the results of the procurement.

2 Consortia/Joint Ventures/Partnerships/Teams. An established consortium, joint venture, partnership, or team that is an actual bidder or offeror and is acting in its entirety, would qualify as an "interested party" because it has a direct economic interest in the results of the procurement. An individual member of a consortium, joint venture, partnership, or team, acting solely in its individual capacity, does not qualify as an "interested party" because it does not have a direct economic interest in the results of the procurement.

3 Associations or Organizations. An association or organization that does not perform contracts does not qualify as an "interested party," because it does not have a direct economic interest in the results of the procurement.

(b) Exhaust Administrative Remedies. The protester must exhaust its administrative remedies by pursuing the recipient's protest procedures to completion before appealing the recipient's decision to FTA.

(c) Appeal Within Five Days. The protester must deliver its appeal to the FTA Regional Administrator for the region administering its project or the FTA Associate Administrator for the program office administering its project within five (5) working days of the date when the protester has received actual or constructive notice of the recipient's final decision. Likewise, the protester must provide its appeal to the FTA Regional Administrator for the region administering its project or the FTA Associate Administrator for the program

office administering its project within five (5) working days of the date when the protester has identified other grounds for appeal to FTA. For example, other grounds for appeal include the recipient's failure to have or failure to comply with its protest procedures or failure to review the protest.

(2) Extent of FTA Review. As provided in the Common Grant Rule for governmental recipients, FTA will limit its review of third party contract protests as follows:

(a) The Recipient's Procedural Failures. FTA will consider a protest if the recipient:

1 Does not have protest procedures, or

2 Has not complied with its protest procedures, or

3 Has not reviewed the protest when presented an opportunity to do so.

(b) Violations of Federal Law or Regulations. FTA will not consider every appeal filed by a protestor of an FTA recipient's protest decision merely because a Federal law or regulation may be involved. Instead, FTA will exercise discretionary jurisdiction over those appeals involving issues important to FTA's overall public transportation program. FTA will refer violations of Federal law for which it does not have primary jurisdiction to the Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

(c) Violations of State or Local Law or Regulations. FTA will refer violations of State or local law to the State or local authority having proper jurisdiction.

(3) FTA Determinations to Decline Protest Reviews. FTA's determination to decline jurisdiction over a protest does not mean that FTA approves of or agrees with the recipient's decision or that FTA has determined the contract is eligible for Federal participation. FTA's determination means only that FTA does not consider the issues presented to be sufficiently important to FTA's overall program that FTA considers a review to be required.

2. CHANGES AND MODIFICATIONS.

a. The Recipient's Role and Responsibilities. The recipient is responsible for issuing, evaluating, and making necessary decisions involving any change to its third party contracts, and any change orders, or modifications it may issue. The recipient is also responsible for evaluating and making the necessary decisions involving any claim of a constructive change. In general, FTA expects each recipient to comply with the following procedures:

(1) Approval Requirements. FTA expects the recipient to have cost justifications supporting each change order it may issue. FTA also expects the recipient's authorized official to approve any proposed change order before it is issued.

(2) Cost Restrictions. To be eligible for FTA assistance under the recipient's grant or cooperative agreement, the cost of the change, modification, change order, or constructive change must be allowable, allocable, within the scope of its grant or cooperative agreement, and reasonable for the completion of project scope.

A more extensive discussion on Changes and Modifications can be found in FTA's Best Practices Procurement Manual (BPPM).

b. FTA's Role and Responsibilities. FTA does not participate in the recipient's decisions involving change orders, constructive changes, or modifications, but reserves the right to review the recipient's supporting documentation as necessary to determine the extent of FTA assistance that may be used to support those costs.

3. DISPUTES.

a. The Recipient's Role and Responsibilities. The Common Grant Rules charges the recipient with responsibility for evaluating and resolving third party contract disputes. If the recipient intends to request FTA's permission to use Federal assistance to support payments to a third party contractor to settle a dispute, or intends to request increased Federal assistance for that purpose, the recipient's responsibilities are as follows:

(1) Notify FTA. FTA expects the recipient to provide the following information in connection with third party contract disputes in which it is involved:

(a) Subjects. A list of disputes involving third party contracts and potential third party contracts that:

1 Have a value exceeding $100,000,

2 Involve a controversial matter, irrespective of amount, or

3 Involve a highly publicized matter, irrespective of amount.

(b) Details. The following information about each dispute:

1 A brief description of the dispute,

2 The basis of disagreement, and

3 If open, how far the dispute has proceeded, or

4 If resolved, the agreement or decision reached, and

5 Whether an appeal has been taken or is likely to be taken.

(c) When and Where. The recipient should provide this information:

1 In its next quarterly Milestone Progress Report, and

2 At its next Project Management Oversight review, if any.

Small recipients may report less frequently if no disputes are outstanding.

(d) FTA Officials to Notify. FTA also encourages the recipient to keep its FTA project manager informed about disputes with which it is involved. In particular, the recipient should contact its project manager about any unusual activity.

(2) Adequate Documentation. FTA expects the recipient to include adequate documentation in its project files of the facts, events, negotiations, applicable laws, and a legal evaluation of the likelihood of success in any potential litigation involving the dispute as may be needed to justify FTA's concurrence in any compromise or settlement, should FTA concurrence become necessary.

(3) Audit. An audit can help the recipient demonstrate that any settlement costs, if incurred, are necessary, reasonable, adequately documented, and appropriate for FTA support. The recipient should consider conducting or obtaining a formal audit to substantiate each part of a large contract dispute before entering into a settlement. The audit should be conducted in accordance with "Generally Accepted Auditing Standards" as defined by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. FTA also encourages the recipient to undertake an audit or similar analysis before settlement of a small dispute.

b. FTA's Role and Responsibilities. FTA generally does not become involved in negotiating the resolution of a recipient's disputes. However, FTA does reserve the right to become involved as follows:

(1) Determine Reasonableness. FTA may review the reasonableness of a negotiated settlement to determine the extent of its participation in the costs of the settlement.

(2) Review Documents. When FTA considers necessary, FTA may review the recipient's files and history pertaining to the dispute or experience under a particular grant or cooperative agreement. If the recipient has already disbursed amounts determined to be ineligible through subsequent audit or FTA review, the recipient must return those amounts to FTA, unless FTA determines otherwise.

FTA reserves the right to defer participation in settlement costs until it receives an adequate audit.

4. CLAIMS AND LITIGATION.

a. The Recipient's Role and Responsibilities. The Common Grant Rules charge the recipient with responsibility for evaluating and resolving third party contract claims and litigation resulting from a contractor's violation, default, or breach of its third party contracts with recipients of Federal assistance. The recipient is also responsible for resolving any claims and litigation the contractor may present against it. Due to FTA's financial interest in the settlement of third party contract claims and litigation, and concerns about matters with significant policy consequences to the Federal Government, FTA expects the recipient to:

(1) Notify FTA. FTA expects the recipient to provide the following information in connection with third party contract claims and litigation with which it is involved.

(a) Subjects. A list of claims and litigation involving third party contracts and potential third party contracts that:

1 Have a value exceeding $100,000,

2 Involve a controversial matter, irrespective of amount, or

3 Involve a highly publicized matter, irrespective of amount.

(b) Details. The following information about each claim or lawsuit:

1 A brief description of the claim or litigation,

2 The basis of disagreement, and

3 If open, how far the claim or litigation has proceeded, or

4 If resolved, the decision or agreement reached, and

5 Whether an appeal has been or is likely to be taken.

(c) When and Where. The recipient should provide this information:

1 In its next quarterly Milestone Progress Report, and

2 At its next Project Management Oversight review, if any.

Small recipients may report less frequently if no claims or litigation are outstanding.

(d) FTA Officials to Notify. FTA also encourages the recipient to keep its FTA project manager informed about claims and litigation with which it is involved. In particular, the recipient should contact its project manager about any unusual activity.

(2) Legal Rights and Remedies. In resolving third party contract claims, FTA expects the recipient to take reasonable measures to pursue its rights and remedies available under law, including settlement, particularly if failure to do so would jeopardize the Federal interest in the project or cause the recipient to seek additional Federal assistance.

b. FTA's Role and Responsibilities. In support of its financial interest in the settlement of claims and litigation involving any federally assisted third party contracts, FTA has retained its discretion to assert the following rights:

(1) Proceeds Recovered. FTA retains a right to a share of any net proceeds recovered through a third party contract claim or litigation, in proportion to the amount FTA has committed to the project, unless FTA permits other uses of the proceeds recovered.

(2) Liquidated Damages. If the third party contract includes a liquidated damages provision, FTA expects the recipient to credit any liquidated damages recovered to the project, unless FTA permits other uses of the liquidated damages. For example, in negotiating the terms of a claim or litigation settlement, it may be reasonable for the recipient to exchange some or all liquidated damages that may be due the recipient for additional property or services.

5. FTA PARTICIPATION IN SETTLEMENTS, ARBITRATION AWARDS, AND COURT AWARDS.

a. The Recipient's Responsibilities.

(1) Settlement Arrangements Must Be Reasonable. FTA recognizes that a settlement may require the recipient to relinquish its rights to amounts it would otherwise be due, including amounts for liquidated damages and other matters, were it to prevail on all matters at issue. Still, FTA expects the recipient to enter into a settlement only if the recipient can justify its terms as reasonable. Reasonable settlement arrangements can take many forms. In certain situations, an agreement by the contractor to provide extra property or services in lieu of payments or reduced payments for damages, including liquidated damages, may be reasonable.

(2) Maintain Sufficient Records. To justify FTA's participation in settlements, arbitration awards, or court awards, the recipient's records must be sufficient to demonstrate that the recipient has taken reasonable and prudent measures to prevent or offset the actions or circumstances resulting in the underlying protest, dispute, claim, or litigation.

(3) Obtain FTA Concurrence. When the recipient incurs costs due to binding arbitration or court decision, FTA expects the recipient to secure FTA review and its written concurrence in a proposed or final settlement involving a dispute, claim, or litigation before using Federal assistance to support its costs if one of the following circumstances is present:

(a) Exceeds $100,000. When the settlement exceeds $100,000.

(b) Insufficient Funds. When the approved project lacks sufficient funds to cover the settlement costs.

(c) Special Federal Interest or Federal Concern. When a special Federal interest or Federal concern is declared due to program management concerns, possible mismanagement, impropriety, waste, or fraud.

b. FTA's Prerogatives.

(1) Review Supporting Documentation. FTA reserves the right to review the recipient's supporting documentation.

(2) Provide Federal Assistance. If FTA assistance is available, FTA may provide a prorated share of any eligible costs resulting from protests, disputes, claims, litigation, or settlements that were not caused by the recipient's mismanagement or are attributable to the contractor, and were otherwise properly incurred.

(3) Deny Federal Assistance. Protests, disputes, claims, litigation, or settlements that result from the recipient's negligence or error are usually ineligible for FTA participation. FTA reserves the right to determine the extent to which FTA assistance may be used for any dispute, claim, litigation, or settlement caused in whole or part by the recipient's negligence or error. Examples of situations that might be caused by a recipient's negligence or error include, but are not limited to, the following:

(a) Right-of-Way. Failure to ensure clear access to all needed right-of-way prior to award of the construction contract.

(b) Utility Agreements. Failure to execute all required utility agreements in time to assure uninterrupted construction progress.

(c) Planning and Scheduling. Failure to undertake comprehensive project planning and scheduling to achieve proper coordination among contractors.

(d) Subsurface Conditions. Failure to inform potential contractors of all available geo-technical information on subsurface conditions.

(e) Materials Compatibility. Failure to ensure that all materials provided by the recipient are compatible with contractor project facilities or equipment or both and available when needed.

(f) Pre-Construction Surveys and Engineering. Failure to complete all pre-construction surveys and engineering prior to issuing the contractor a Notice to Proceed.

(g) Public Authority Approvals. Failure to complete the necessary approvals and agreements from all other public authorities affected by the project before contract award.

(h) Drawing Approvals. Failure by the recipient to approve and provide all design and shop drawings to the contractor promptly as needed.

APPENDIX A

REFERENCES

1. Federal Transit Laws, Title 49, United States Code, Chapter 53; also public transportation provisions of Title 23, United States Code.

2. Moving Ahead for Progress in the 21st Century Act (MAP-21), Pub. L. 112-141, July 6, 2012

3. Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users, (SAFETEA-LU), Public Law 109-59, August 10, 2005, as amended by the SAFETEA-LU Technical Corrections Act, 2008, Public Law 110-244, June 6, 2008.

4. Transportation Equity Act for the 21st Century 1998 (TEA-21), Public Law 105-178 as amended by TEA-21 Restoration Act 1998, Public Law 105-206.

5. 7 U.S.C. Sections 2131 *et seq.*—Animal Welfare Act, as amended.

6. 15 U.S.C. Sections 205a *et seq.*— Omnibus Trade and Competitiveness Act (Amendments to the Metric Conversion Act), 15 U.S.C. §§ 205a *et seq*.

7. 15 U.S.C. Section 644 note—Section 7101(a) of the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994 (Repeal of Labor Surplus Area Programs).

8. 18 U.S.C. Section 874—Section 1 of the Copeland Anti-Kickback Act, as amended.

9. 18 U.S.C. Section 1001—Criminal Fraud.

10. 20 U.S.C. Sections 1681 *et seq.*—Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended (Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Sex).

11. 23 U.S.C. Section 101 note—Section 451 of the Hiring Incentives to Restore Employment Act (HIRE Act), Pub. L. 111-147, Title IV, Section 451, March 18, 2010.

12. 23 U.S.C. Section 512 note—Section 5307(c) of SAFETEA-LU (Intelligent Transportation Systems).

13. 29 U.S.C. Sections 201 *et seq.*—Fair Labor Standards Act, as amended (Wage and Hour Restrictions).

14. 29 U.S.C. Sections 621 through 634—Age Discrimination in Employment Act (Prohibitions).

15. 29 U.S.C. Section 794—Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (Nondiscrimination under Federal Grants on the Basis of Disability).

16. 29 U.S.C. Section 794d—Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (Electronic and Information Technology acquired with Federal funding to be Accessible).

17. 31 U.S.C. Section 1352—Limitation on Use of Appropriated Funds to Influence Certain Federal Contracting and Financial Transactions (Byrd "Anti-Lobbying" Amendment).

18. 31 U.S.C. Sections 3801 *et seq*.—Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986, as amended.

19. 31 U.S.C. Section 5112(p)—Section 104 of the Presidential $1 Coin Act of 2005 (Use of Coins in Transit Facilities and Equipment).

20. 31 U.S.C. Sections 7501 *et seq*.—Single Audit Act of 1984, as amended (Audits of Federally Funded Programs).

21. 33 U.S.C. Sections 1251 through 1377—Clean Water Act.

22. 35 U.S.C. Sections 200 *et seq*.—Bayh-Dole Act (Patent Rights).

23. 40 U.S.C. Section 502(a)(3)—Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended (General Services Administration (GSA) Schedule Use by the District of Columbia).

24. 40 U.S.C. Section 502(c)(1)(A)—Section 211 of the E-Government Act of 2002 (GSA Schedule Use for Information Technology).

25. 40 U.S.C. Section 502(c)(1)(B)—Section 2 of the Local Preparedness Acquisition Act (GSA Schedule Use for Safety or Security Emergency Preparedness) 40 U.S.C. Section 502(c)(1)(B)—Section 2 of the Local Preparedness Acquisition Act (GSA Schedule Use for Safety or Security Emergency Preparedness).

26. 40 U.S.C. Section 502(d)—Section 833 of the John Warner National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2007 (GSA Schedule Use for Major Disaster or Emergency Relief).

27. 40 U.S.C. Chapter 11—Architectural Engineering Procurement Requirements ("Brooks Act").

28. 40 U.S.C. Sections 3141 *et seq*.—Davis-Bacon Act (Prevailing Wages).

29. 40 U.S.C. Section 3145—Section 2 of the Copeland Anti-Kickback Act, as amended.

30. 40 U.S.C. Section 3701(b)(3)(A)(iii)—Section 4104(c) of the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994) (Increased Wage and Hour Thresholds for Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act).

31. 40 U.S.C. Section 3702—Section 102 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (Wage and Hour Restrictions).

32. 40 U.S.C. Section 3704—Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (Construction Safety).

33. 41 U.S.C. Section 253m—(Two-Step Selection Procedures Process [for Federal Procurements]).

34. 41 U.S.C. Section 403(11)—Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994 (Definition of the [Federal] Simplified Acquisition Threshold).

35. 42 U.S.C. Sections 289 *et seq*.—National Research Act, as amended (Protection of Humans).

36. 42 U.S.C. Sections 2000d *et seq*.—Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended (Nondiscrimination).

37. 42 U.S.C. Section 2000e *et seq*.—Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended (Equal Employment Opportunity).

38. 42 U.S.C. Sections 4601 *et seq*.—Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, as amended.

39. 42 U.S.C. Section 5150—Stafford Act (Major Disaster or Emergency Relief).

40. 42 U.S.C. Sections 6101 *et seq*.—Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, (Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Age in Federal or Federal Assistance Programs).

41. 42 U.S.C. Sections 6321 *et seq*.—Subchapter III, Part B, Energy Policy and Conservation Act (State Energy Conservation Plans).

42. 42 U.S.C. Section 6962—Section 4002 of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976, as amended (Recycled Materials).

43. 42 U.S.C. Sections 7401 through 7671q—Clean Air Act.

44. 42 U.S.C. Sections 7701 *et seq*.—Earthquake Hazards Reduction Act of 1977, as amended, (Seismic Safety).

45. 42 U.S.C. Sections 12101 *et seq*.—Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, as amended (Accessibility for Persons with Disabilities).

46. 46 U.S.C. Section 55305—Cargo Preference Act (codified).

47. 48 U.S.C. Section 1469e—Use of GSA Supply Schedules by Insular Areas.

48. 49 U.S.C. Section 114(r)—Department of Transportation, Transportation Security Administration (Protection of Sensitive Security Information).

49. 49 U.S.C. Sections 303(b) and 303(c)—Department of Transportation (DOT) (Statutory protections for Parks, Recreation Areas, Wildlife and Waterfowl Refuges, and Historic Sites).

50. 49 U.S.C. Section 40118—Section 5 of the International Air Transportation Fair Competitive Practices Act of 1974, as amended ("Fly America" Act – Persons and Property).

51. 49 U.S.C. Section 40119(b)—(Protection of Sensitive Security Information).

52. DOT regulations, "Nonprocurement Suspension and Debarment," 2 CFR Part 1200.

53. DOT regulations, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments," 49 CFR Part 18 (Common Grant Rule for Governmental Recipients).

54. DOT regulations, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations," 49 CFR Part 19 (Common Grant Rule for Non-governmental Recipients).

55. DOT regulations, "Protection of Human Subjects," 49 CFR Part 11.

56. DOT regulations, "Protection of Sensitive Security Information," 49 CFR Part 15.

57. DOT regulations, "New Restrictions on Lobbying," 49 CFR Part 20.

58. DOT regulations, "Nondiscrimination in Federally Assisted Programs of the Department of Transportation – Effectuation of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act," 49 CFR Part 21.

59. DOT regulations, "Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition for Federal and Federally Assisted Programs," 49 CFR Part 24.

60. DOT regulations, "Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Sex in Education Programs or Activities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance," 49 CFR Part 25.

61. DOT regulations, "Participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises in Department of Transportation Financial Assistance Programs," 49 CFR Part 26, as amended by the "Disadvantaged Business Enterprise: Program Improvements" amendments thereto, 76 FR 5083 *et seq*. January 28, 2011.

62. DOT regulations, “Program Fraud Civil Remedies,” 49 C.F.R. Part 31.

63. DOT regulations, “Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Handicap in Programs and Activities Receiving or Benefiting from Federal Financial Assistance,” 49 CFR Part 27.

64. DOT regulations, “Transportation Services for Individuals with Disabilities (ADA),” 49 CFR Part 37, including Appendix A, “DOT Modifications of ATBCB Standards for Accessible Transportation Facilities.”

65. Joint Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (ATBCB)/DOT regulations, “Americans with Disabilities (ADA) Accessibility Specifications for Transportation Vehicles,” 36 CFR Part 1192 and 49 CFR Part 38.

66. DOT regulations, “Seismic Safety,” 49 CFR Part 41 at Sections 41.117 and 41.120.

67. Federal Transit Administration (FTA) regulations, “Charter Service,” 49 CFR Part 604.

68. FTA regulations, “School Bus Operations,” 49 CFR Part 605.

69. FTA regulations, “Capital Leases,” 49 CFR Part 639.

70. FTA regulations, “Prevention of Alcohol Misuse and Prohibited Drug Use in Transit Operations,” 49 CFR Part 655.

71. FTA regulations, “Buy America,” 49 CFR Part 661.

72. FTA regulations, “Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits of Rolling Stock Purchases,” 49 CFR Part 663.

73. FTA regulations, “Bus Testing,” 49 CFR Part 665.

74. Joint Federal Highway Administration (FHWA)/FTA regulations, “Environmental Impact and Related Procedures,” 23 C.F.R. Part 771 and 49 C.F.R. Part 622.

75. Joint FHWA/FTA regulations, “Parks, Recreation Areas, Wildlife and Waterfowl Refuges, and Historic Sites,” 23 CFR Parts 771 and 774, and 49 CFR Part 622.

76. Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), 48 CFR Chapter 1.

77. FAR Subpart 6.3, 48 CFR Chapter 1, Subpart 6.3 (Federal Procurement by Noncompetitive Proposals).

78. FAR Subparts 25.1 and 25.2, 48 CFR Chapter 1, Subparts 25.1 and 25.2 (Federal Buy American Regulations).

79. FAR Part 31, 48 CFR Chapter 1, Part 31 (Federal Cost Principles).

80. FAR Subpart 31.2, 48 CFR Chapter 1, Subpart 31.2 (Contracts with Commercial Organizations).

81. Department of Homeland Security regulations, "Protection of Sensitive Security Information," 49 CFR Part 1520.

82. Department of Labor (DOL) regulations, "Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in part by Loans or Grants from the United States," 29 CFR Part 3.

83. DOL regulations "Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Governing Federally Financed and Assisted Construction (also Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Nonconstruction Contracts Subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act)," 29 CFR Part 5.

84. DOL guidelines, "Section 5333(b), Federal Transit Law," 29 CFR Part 215.

85. DOL regulations "Safety and Health Regulations for Construction," 29 CFR Part 1926.

86. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission regulations, "Age Discrimination in Employment Act," 29 CFR Part 1625.

87. DOL regulations, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor," 41 CFR Chapter 60.

88. Department of Agriculture regulations, "Animal Welfare," 9 CFR Subchapter A, Parts 1, 2, 3, and 4.

89. Department of the Treasury regulations, "Surety Companies Doing Business with the United States," 31 CFR Part 223.

90. ATBCB regulations, "Electronic and Information Technology Accessibility Standards," 36 CFR Part 1194.

91. Department of Commerce regulations, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms," 37 CFR Part 401.

92. Department of Commerce, "Export Administration Regulations," 15 CFR Parts 730 *et seq*.

93. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) regulations, "Comprehensive Procurement Guideline for Products Containing Recovered Materials," 40 CFR Part 247.

94. EPA regulations, "Control of Air Pollution from Mobile Sources," 40 CFR Part 85.

95. EPA regulations, "Control of Air Pollution from New and In-Use Motor Vehicles and New and In-Use Motor Vehicle Engines," 40 CFR Part 86.

96. EPA regulations, "Fuel Economy of Motor Vehicles," 40 CFR Part 600.

97. Council on Environmental Quality regulations, "Other Requirements of NEPA," 40 CFR Part 1506.

98. Department of Health and Human Services regulations, "Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Age in Programs or Activities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance," 45 CFR Part 90.

99. General Services Administration (GSA), "Federal Property Management Regulations," 41 CFR Parts 101-42 through 101-46, and 101-48, 101-49.

100. GSA regulations, "Use of United States Flag Air Carriers," 41 CFR Sections 301-10.131 through 301-10.143.

101. Maritime Administration regulations, "Cargo Preference U.S. Flag Vessels," 46 CFR Part 381.

102. Executive Order No. 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity," September 24, 1965, as amended by Executive Order No. 11375, "Amending Executive Order No. 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," October 13, 1967.

103. Executive Order No. 12770, "Metric Usage in Federal Government Programs," 15 U.S.C. Section 205a note.

104. Executive Order No. 12898, "Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations," February 11, 1994, 42 U.S.C. Section 4321 note.

105. Executive Order No. 13043, "Increasing Seat Belt Use in the United States," August 16, 1997, 23 U.S.C. Section 402 note.

106. Executive Order No.13132, "Federalism," August 4, 1999, 5 U.S.C. Section 601 note.

107. Executive Order No. 13166, "Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency," August 11, 2000, 42 U.S.C. Section 2000d-1 note.

108. Executive Order No. 13502, "Use of Project Labor Agreements for Federal Construction Projects," February 6, 2009, which rescinds Executive Order No. 13202, "Preservation of Open Competition and Government Neutrality Towards Government Contractors' Labor Relations on Federal and Federally Funded Construction Projects," February 17, 2001, as amended by Executive Order No. 13208, April 6, 2001, 41 U.S.C. Section 251 note.

109. Executive Order No. 13513, "Federal Leadership on Reducing Text Messaging While Driving," October 1, 2009, 23 U.S.C. Section 402 note.

110. Office of Management and Budget (OMB) "Guidelines to Agencies on Governmentwide Debarment and Suspension (Nonprocurement)," 2 CFR Part 180.

111. OMB Guidance for Grants and Agreements, "Cost Principles for Educational Institutions (OMB Circular A-21)," 2 CFR Part 220.

112. OMB Guidance for Grants and Agreements, "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87)," 2 CFR Part 225.

113. OMB Guidance for Grants and Agreements "Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations (OMB Circular A-122)," 2 CFR Part 230.

114. OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations," as revised.

115. GSA Order ADM 4800.2E, "Eligibility to Use GSA Sources of Supply and Services."

116. DOT Order 5610.2, "Department of Transportation (DOT) Order To Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations," 62 FR 18377, April 15, 1997.

117. DOT Order 3902.10, "Text Messaging While Driving," December 30, 2009.

118. DOT, "Policy Guidance Concerning Recipients' Responsibilities to Limited English Proficient (LEP) Persons," December 14, 2005.

119. FTA Circular 4702.1A, "Title VI and Title VI-Dependent Guidelines for FTA Recipients," 05-13-07.

120. FTA Circular 5010.1D, "Grant Management Requirements," 11-01-08.

121. FTA Circular 9030.1C, "Urbanized Area Formula Program Grant Application Instructions" 10-01-98.

122. FTA Circular 9300.1B, "Capital Investment Program Guidance and Application Instructions" 11-01-08.

123. FTA Circular 9400.1A, "Federal Transit Administration Design and Art in Transit Projects," 06-09-95.

124. FTA, "Notice of Final Agency Guidance on the Eligibility of Joint Development Improvements under Federal Transit Law," 72 FR 5788, February 7, 2007.

125. FTA Notice, "FTA National ITS Architecture Policy on Transit Projects" 66 FR 1455 *et seq*., January 8, 2001.

126. FTA, Master Agreement (PDF).

127. FTA, "Best Practices Procurement Manual"

128. FTA, "Pricing Guide for FTA Grantees."

129. FTA Circular 4220.1F, "Third Party Contracting Guidance," November 1, 2008, as revised.

130. Defense Contract Audit Agency Audit Manual

131. Arms Export Control Act, as amended, 22 U.S.C. Sections 2751 *et seq.*

132. Trading with the Enemy Act, 50 U.S.C. app. Sections 1 *et seq.*

133. International Emergency Economic Powers Act, as amended, 50 U.S.C. Sections 1701 *et seq.*

134. Export Administration Act of 1979, as amended, 50 U.S.C. app. Sections 2401 *et seq.*

135. Department of Commerce, "Export Administration Regulations, "15 C.F.R. Parts 703 *et seq.*

136. Department of State regulations, "International Traffic in Arms Regulations," (ITAR), 22 C.F.R. Subchapter M.

137. Department of Treasury, regulations "Office of Foreign Assets Control," (OFAC) 31 C.F.R. Chapter V.

APPENDIX B

FTA REGIONAL AND METROPOLITAN OFFICE CONTACT INFORMATION

Office	Area Served	Contact Information
Region I	Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Vermont	Transportation Systems Center Kendall Square 55 Broadway, Suite 920 Cambridge, MA 02142-1093 Phone: 617-494-2055 Fax: 617-494-2865
Region II	New York and New Jersey	One Bowling Green, Room 429 New York, NY 10004-1415 Phone: 212-668-2170 Fax: 212-668-2136
Region III	Delaware, District of Columbia, Maryland, Pennsylvania, Virginia, and West Virginia	1760 Market Street, Suite 500 Philadelphia, PA 19103-4124 Phone: 215-656-7100 Fax: 215-656-7260
Region IV	Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Kentucky, Mississippi, North Carolina, Puerto Rico, South Carolina, Tennessee, and U.S. Virgin Islands	230 Peachtree St., N.W., Suite 800 Atlanta, GA 30303 Phone: 404-865-5600 Fax: 404-865-5605
Region V	Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Minnesota, Ohio, and Wisconsin	200 West Adams Street, Suite 320 Chicago, IL 60606 Phone: 312-353-2789 Fax: 312-886-0351
Region VI	Arkansas, Louisiana, New Mexico, Oklahoma, and Texas	819 Taylor Street, Room 8A36 Fort Worth, TX 76102 Phone: 817-978-0550 Fax: 817-978-0575
Region VII	Iowa, Kansas, Missouri, and Nebraska	901 Locust, Suite 404 Kansas City, MO 64106 Phone: 816-329-3920 Fax: 816-329-3921
Region VIII	Colorado, Montana, North Dakota, South Dakota, Utah, and Wyoming	12300 W Dakota Avenue, Suite 310 Lakewood, CO 80228-2583

Office	Area Served	Contact Information
		Phone: 720-963-3300 Fax: 720-963-3333
Region IX	Arizona, California, Hawaii, Nevada, Guam, American Samoa, and the Northern Mariana Islands	201 Mission Street, Room 1650 San Francisco, CA 94105-1839 Phone: 415-744-3133 Fax: 415-744-2726
Region X	Alaska, Idaho, Oregon, and Washington	915 Second Avenue, Suite 3142 Seattle, WA 98174-1002 Phone: 206-220-7954 Fax: 206-220-7959
Lower Manhattan Recovery Office	Lower Manhattan	One Bowling Green, Room 436 New York, NY 10004 Phone: 212-668-1770 Fax: 212-668-2505
New York Metropolitan Office	New York Metropolitan Area	One Bowling Green, Room 428 New York, NY 10004-1415 Phone: 212-668-2201 Fax: 212-668-2136
Philadelphia Metropolitan Office	Philadelphia Metropolitan Area	1760 Market Street, Suite 510 Philadelphia PA 19103-4124 Telephone: 215-656-7070 Fax: 215-656-7269
Washington, DC Metropolitan Office	Washington, DC Metropolitan Area	1990 K Street NW, Suite 510 Washington, DC 20006-1178 Telephone: 202-219-3562/219-3565 Fax: 202-219-3545
Chicago Metropolitan Office	Chicago Metropolitan Area	200 West Adams Street, Suite 2410 Chicago, IL 60606 Telephone: 312-886-1616 Fax: 312-886-0351
Los Angeles Metropolitan Office	Los Angeles Metropolitan Area	888 S. Figueroa, Suite 1850 Los Angeles, CA 90012 Telephone: 213-202-3950 Fax: 213-202-3961

APPENDIX C
THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER II, Sec. 2	APPLICABILITY OF THE CIRCULAR	CHECK
Sec. 2.a	Participants in FTA Assisted Procurements	
Sec. 2.a(1)	Recipients of FTA Grants or Cooperative Agreements	
Sec. 2.a(1)(a)	States	
Sec. 2.a(1)(a)1	Governmental Subrecipients of the State	
Sec. 2.a(1)(a)2	Private Non-Profit Subrecipients of the State	
Sec. 2.a(1)(b)	Recipients and Subrecipients that are not States	
Sec. 2.a(2)	Subrecipients of FTA Assistance	
Sec. 2.a(3)	Recipients of Both FTA Assistance and Funds Provided by Another Federal Agency	
Sec. 2.a(4)	Recipients of "Other Agreement" Assistance	
Sec. 2.a(5)	Third Party Contractors and Subcontractors	
Sec. 2.a(5)(a)	Status	
Sec. 2.a(5)(b)	Effect of Federal Requirements	
Sec. 2.b	Project Types and Third Party Contracts	
Sec. 2.b(1)	Capital Contracts	
Sec. 2.b(1)(a)	Capital Contracts Financed Without Federal Funds	
Sec. 2.b(1)(b)	Art	
Sec. 2.b(1)(c)	Over-the-Road Bus Accessibility Program	
Sec. 2.b(1)(d)	Real Property	
Sec. 2.b(2)	Operations Contracts	
Sec. 2.b(2)(a)	Operations Contracts Financed with FTA Assistance	
Sec. 2.b(2)(b)	Operations Contracts Financed Entirely Without FTA Assistance	
Sec. 2.b(3)	Preventive Maintenance Contracts	
Sec. 2.b(4)	Revenue Contracts	
Sec. 2.b(4)(a)	Limited Contract Opportunities	
Sec. 2.b(4)(b)	Open Contract Opportunities	
Sec. 2.b(5)	Joint Development	
Sec. 2.b(5)(a)	Construction Contracts	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)	Revenue Contracts	
Sec. 2.b(5)(c)	Other Contracts	
Sec. 2.b(6)	Public-Private Partnerships	
Sec. 2.b(7)	Transactions Involving Complex Financial Arrangements	
Sec. 2.b(7)	Force Account	
Sec. 3	Federal Laws and Regulations	
Sec. 3.a	Common Grant Rules	
Sec. 3.a(1)	Governmental Recipients	
Sec. 3.a(2)	Non-Governmental Recipients	
Sec. 3.b	Federal Acquisition Regulation	
Sec. 3.c	Other Federal Requirements	
Sec. 3.c(1)	Compilation in the Master Agreement	
Sec. 3.c(2)	Conflicting Federal Requirements	
Sec. 3.d	Waivers	
Sec. 4	State and Local Laws and Regulations	
Sec. 4.a	Inadequate State and Local Requirements	
Sec. 4.b	Conflicts Between Federal Requirements and State or Local Requirements	

FTA C 4220.1F
11/01/2008
Rev. 1, 04/14/2009
Rev. 2, 07/01/2010
Rev. 3, 02/15/2011
Rev. 4, 03/18/2013

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER III	THE RECIPIENT'S RESPONSIBILITIES	CHECK
Sec. 1.	Written Standards of Conduct	
Sec. 1.a	Personal Conflicts of Interest	
Sec. 1.b	Gifts	
Sec. 1.c	Violations	
Sec. 2	Self-Certification	
Sec. 3	Third Party Contracting Capacity	
Sec. 3.a	Written Procurement Procedures	
Sec. 3.a(1)	Solicitations	
Sec. 3.a(1)(a)	Clear Descriptions	
Sec. 3.a(1)(b)	Nonrestrictive Specifications	
Sec. 3.a(1)(c)	Quality Requirements	
Sec. 3.a(1)(d)	Preference for Performance Specifications	
Sec. 3.a(1)(e)	Brand Name or Equal	
Sec. 3.a(2)	Necessity	
Sec. 3.a(3)	Lease Versus Purchase	
Sec. 3.a(4)	Metric Usage	
Sec. 3.a(5)	Environmental and Energy Efficiency Preferences	
Sec. 3.a(6)	Procurement Methods	
Sec. 3.a(7)	Legal Restrictions	
Sec. 3.a(8)	Third Party Contract Provisions	
Sec. 3.a(9)	Sources	
Sec. 3.a(10)	Resolution of Third Party Contracting Issues	
Sec. 3.b	Adequate Third Party Contract Provisions	
Sec. 3.c	Industry Contracts	
Sec. 3.d	Record Keeping	
Sec. 3.d(1)	Procurement History	
Sec. 3.d(1)(a)	Procurement Method	
Sec. 3.d(1)(b)	Contract Type	
Sec. 3.d(1)(c)	Contractor Selection	
Sec. 3.d(1)(d)	Cost or Price	
Sec. 3.d(1)(e)	Reasonable Documentation	
Sec. 3.d(2)	Access to Records	
Sec. 3.e	Special Notification Requirements for States	
Sec. 3.f	Use of Technology/Electronic Commerce	
Sec. 3.f(1)	Sufficient System Capacity	
Sec. 3.f(2)	Written Procedures	
Sec. 3.f(3)	Uses	
Sec. 3.f(3)(a)	Standard Bidding and Proposal Procedures	
Sec. 3.f(3)(b)	Electronic Bidding and Reverse Auctions	
Sec. 3.f(3)(b)1	Value	
Sec. 3.f(3)(b)2	Procedures	
Sec. 3.f(3)(b)2.a	Notification)	
Sec. 3.f(3)(b)2.b	Bid or Quote Submission	
Sec. 3.f(3)(b)2.c	Information Displayed During the Auction	
Sec. 3.f(3)(b)2.d	Information Not Displayed During the Auction	
Sec. 3.f(3)(b)2.e	Information Displayed at the End of the Auction	
Sec. 3.f(3)(b)2.f	Information Provided at the End of the Auction	
Sec. 4	Audit	
Sec. 4.a	The Recipient's Auditors	
Sec. 4.b	Independent Auditors	
Sec. 4.c	Federal Audit Agencies	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 1	DETERMINING THE RECIPIENT'S NEEDS	CHECK
Sec. 1.a	Eligibility	
Sec. 1.b	Necessity	
Sec. 1.b(1)	Unnecessary Reserves	
Sec. 1.b(2)	Acquisition for Assignment Prohibitions	
Sec. 1.b(1)(a)	General Prohibition	
Sec. 1.b(1)(b)	Changes in the Recipient's Needs	
Sec. 1.b(1)(c)	Exceptions	
Sec. 1.b(1)(c)1	Joint Procurements	
Sec. 1.b(1)(c)1	State or Local Government Purchasing Schedules or Purchasing Contracts	
Sec. 1.c	Procurement Size	
Sec. 1.c(1)	Joint Procurements	
Sec. 1.c(2)	Small Procurements	
Sec. 1.d	Options	
Sec. 1.e	Lease Versus Purchase	
Sec. 1.f	Specifications	

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 2.a.	CONTRACTOR QUALIFICATIONS	CHECK
Sec. 2.a(1)	"Responsibility" Requirements	
Sec. 2.a(2)	Debarment and Suspension	
Sec. 2.a(2)(a)	DOT Debarment and Suspension Regulations	
Sec. 2.a(2)(b)	GSA Excluded Parties List System	
Sec. 2.a(2)(c)	State Debarment and Suspension Lists	
Sec. 2.a(3)	Conflict of Interest	
Sec. 2.a(4)	Lobbying Certification and Disclosure	
Sec. 2.a(5)	Federal Civil Rights Laws and Regulations	
Sec. 2.a(5)(a)	Federal Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Requirements	
Sec. 2.a(5)(a)1	Nondiscrimination in Federal Public Transportation Programs	
Sec. 2.a(5)(a)2	Prohibition Against Employment Discrimination	
Sec. 2.a(5)(b)	Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Sex	
Sec. 2.a(5)(c)	Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Age	
Sec. 2.a(5)(d)	Federal Protections for Individuals with Disabilities	
Sec. 2.a(6)	Socio-Economic Development	
Sec. 2.a(6)(a)	Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE)	
Sec. 2.a(6)(b)	Small and Minority Firms and Women's Business Enterprises	
Sec. 2.a(6)(b)1	Notice	
Sec. 2.a(6)(b)2	Contract Size	
Sec. 2.a(6)(b)3	Delivery Schedule	
Sec. 2.a(6)(b)4	Small Business Administration and the Department of Commerce Minority Business Development Agency	
Sec. 2.a(6)(b)5	Subcontracting Opportunities	
Sec. 2.a(7)	Sensitive Security Information	
Sec. 2.a(8)	Seat Belt Use	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER IV, Sec.2.b	ADMINISTRATIVE RESTRICTIONS ACQUISITION OF PROPERTY AND SERVICES	CHECK
Sec. 2.b(1)	Legal Eligibility	
Sec. 2.b(2)	Scope of the Project	
Sec. 2.b(3)	Period of Performance–Limits	
Sec. 2.b(3)(a)	General Standards	
Sec. 2.b(3)(b)	Federal Restrictions	
Sec. 2.b(3)(c)	Time Extensions	
Sec. 2.b(4)	Federal Cost Principles	
Sec. 2.b(4)(a)	Governmental Entities	
Sec. 2.b(4)(b)	Educational Institutions	
Sec. 2.b(4)(c)	Non-Profit Entities	
Sec. 2.b(4)(d)	For-Profit Entities	
Sec. 2.b(5)	Payment Provisions	
Sec. 2.b(5)(a)	FTA Support for the Project	
Sec. 2.b(5)(a)1	Award Made	
Sec. 2.b(5)(a)2	Preaward Authority	
Sec. 2.b(5)(a)3	Letter of No Prejudice	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)	Advance Payments	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)1	Use of FTA Assistance Prohibited	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2	Exceptions for Sound Business Reasons	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.a	Adequate Security for Advance Payments (FTA Concurrence)	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Customary Advance Payments (FTA Concurrence – $100,000+)	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Public Utility Connections and Services	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Rent	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Tuition	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Insurance Premiums	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Subscriptions to Publications	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Software Licenses	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Construction Mobilization Services	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Transportation	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Hotel Reservations	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Conference and Convention Registration	
Sec. 2.b(5)(b)2.b	Other	
Sec. 2.b(5)(c)	Progress Payments	
Sec. 2.b(5)(c)1	Adequate Security for Progress Payments	
Sec. 2.b(5)(c)2	Adequate Documentation	
Sec. 2.b(5)(c)3	Percentage of Completion	
Sec. 2.b(6)	Protections Against Performance Difficulties	
Sec.2.b(6)(a)	Changes	
Sec. 2.b(6)(b)	Remedies	
Sec. 2.b(6)(b)1	Liquidated Damages	
Sec. 2.b(6)(b)2	Violation or Breach	
Sec. 2.b(6)(b)3	Suspension of Work	
Sec. 2.b(6)(b)4	Termination	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 2.c	SOCIO-ECONOMIC REQUIREMENTS ACQUISITION OF PROPERTY AND SERVICES	CHECK
Sec. 2.c(1)	Labor	
Sec. 2.c(1)(a)	Wage and Hour	
Sec. 2.c(1)(b)	Fair Labor Standards	
Sec. 2.c(2)	Civil Rights	
Sec. 2.c(2)(a)	Nondiscrimination in Federal Public Transportation Programs	
Sec. 2.c(2)(b)	Title VI of the Civil Rights Act	
Sec. 2.c(2)(c)	Environmental Justice	
Sec. 2.c(2)(d)	Limited English Proficiency (LEP)	
Sec. 2.c(2)(e)	Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Disability	
Sec. 2.c(2)(e)1	Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (Section 504)	
Sec. 2.c(3)(e)2	The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, as amended (ADA)	
Sec. 2.c(3)(e)3	DOT Public Transportation Regulations-Section 504 and the ADA	
Sec. 2.c(3)(e)3.a	Design and Construction	
Sec. 2.c(3)(e)3.b	Accessibility and Usability	
Sec. 2.c(3)(e)3.c	Complementary Paratransit Service	
Sec. 2.c(3)(e)3.d	Equal Opportunity	
Sec. 2.c(2)(f)	Electronic Reports and Information	
Sec. 2.c(3)	Environmental Protections	
Sec. 2.c(3)(a)	Environmental Mitigation	
Sec. 2.c(3)(b)	National Environmental Policy Act	
Sec. 2.c(3)(b)1	Property	
Sec. 2.c(3)(b)2	Services	
Sec. 2.c(3)(c)	Parks, Recreation Areas, Wildlife and Waterfowl Refuges, and Historic Sites	
Sec. 2.c(3)(d)	Clean Air	
Sec. 2.c(3)(e)	Clean Water	
Sec. 2.c(3)(f)	Recycled Products	
Sec. 2.c(3)(g)	Other Federal Environmental Protection Requirements	
Sec. 2.c(3)(g)	Wild and Scenic Rivers	
Sec. 2.c(3)(g)	Coastal Zones	
Sec. 2.c(3)(g)	Wetlands	
Sec. 2.c(3)(g)	Endangered Species	
Sec. 2.c(3)(g)	Fisheries	
Sec. 2.c(3)(g)	Archeological Sites	
Sec. 2.c(3)(g)	Indian Sacred Sites	
Sec. 2.c(4)	Energy Conservation	
Sec. 2.c(5)	Preference for U.S. Property—Buy America	
Sec. 2.c(6)	Shipments of Property—U.S. Flag Requirements	
Sec. 2.c(6)(a)	Shipments by Ocean Vessel	
Sec. 2.c(6)(b)	Shipments by Air Carrier	
Sec. 2.c(7)	Project Travel–Use of U.S. Flag Air Carriers	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 2.d	TECHNICAL RESTRICTIONS ACQUISITION OF PROPERTY AND SERVICES	CHECK
Sec. 2.d(1)	Intelligent Transportation Systems	
Sec. 2.d(2)	Metric Measurements	
Sec. 2.d(3)	Use of $1 Coins	

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 2.e	ROLLING STOCK—SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS ACQUISITION OF PROPERTY AND SERVICES	CHECK
Sec. 2.e(1)	Accessibility	
Sec. 2.e(2)	Transit Vehicle Manufacturer Compliance with DBE Requirements	
Sec. 2.e(3)	Minimum Service Life	
Sec. 2.e(4)	Spare Ratios	
Sec. 2.e(5)	Air Pollution and Fuel Economy	
Sec. 2.e(6)	Preaward Review and Post Delivery Review	
Sec. 2.e(7)	Bus Testing	
Sec. 2.e(8)	In-State Dealers	
Sec. 2.e(9)	Basis for Contract Award	
Sec. 2.e(10)	Five-Year Limitation	

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 2.f	PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION SERVICES – SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS ACQUISITION OF PROPERTY AND SERVICES	CHECK
Sec. 2.f(1)	Protections for Public Transportation Employees	
Sec. 2.f(2)	Drug Use and Testing and Alcohol Misuse and Testing	
Sec. 2.f(3)	Accessibility	
Sec. 2.f(4)	Protection of Animals	
Sec. 2.f(5)	Charter Service Restrictions	
Sec. 2.f(6)	School Bus Restrictions	

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 2.g	ART—SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS ACQUISITION OF PROPERTY AND SERVICES	CHECK
Sec. 2.g(1)	Criteria for Art in Federally Assisted Transit Projects	
Sec. 2.g(1)(a)	Quality	
Sec. 2.g(1)(b)	Effect	
Sec. 2.g(1)(c)	Relationship	
Sec. 2.g(1)(d)	Suitability	
Sec. 2.g(1)(e)	Resilience	
Sec. 2.g(1)(f)	Indestructibility	
Sec. 2.g(1)(g)	Preservation	
Sec. 2.g(2)	Choosing Art Works and Services of Artists	
Sec. 2.g(2)(a)	Process	
Sec. 2.g(2)(b)	Nondiscrimination	
Sec. 2.g(2)(c)	Community Participation	
Sec. 2.g(2)(d)	Selection	
Sec. 2.g(3)	Compensation of Artists	
Sec. 2.g(4)	Prohibition	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 2.h	ARCHITECTURAL ENGINEERING AND RELATED SERVICES—SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS ACQUISITION OF PROPERTY AND SERVICES	CHECK
Sec. 2.h(1)	Qualifications-Based Requirements	
Sec. 2.h(2)	Relation to Construction	
Sec. 2.h(2)(a)	Purpose of Services	
Sec. 2.h(2)(b)	Requirements in the Context of a Construction Project	
Sec. 2.h2)(b)1	End Products Used in Construction	
Sec. 2.h(2)(b)2	Services Related to Design of Construction Projects	
Sec. 2.h(2)(b)3	Actual Construction	
Sec. 2.h(2)(c)	Type of Contractor Not Determinative	
Sec. 2.h(3)	Equivalent State Law	
Sec. 2.h(4)	Special Requirements for Indirect Cost Rates	

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 2.i	CONSTRUCTION—SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS ACQUISITION OF PROPERTY AND SERVICES	CHECK
Sec. 2.i(1)	Bonding	
Sec. 2.i(1)(a)	Bid Guarantee	
Sec. 2.i(1)(b)	Performance Bond	
Sec. 2.i(1)(c)	Payment Bond	
Sec. 2.i(1)(c)1	Less Than $1 Million	
Sec. 2.i(1)(c)2	More Than $1 Million but Less Than $5 Million	
Sec. 2.i(1)(c)3	More Than $5 Million	
Sec. 2.i(1)(d)	Acceptable Sureties	
Sec. 2.i(1)(e)	Reduced Bonding	
Sec. 2.i(1)(f)	Excessive Bonding	
Sec. 2.i(2)	Seismic Safety	
Sec. 2.i(3)	Value Engineering	
Sec. 2.i(4)	Equal Employment Opportunity	
Sec. 2.i(5)	Prevailing Wages	
Sec. 2.i(6)	Anti-Kickback	
Sec. 2.i(7)	Construction Safety	
Sec. 2.i(8)	Labor Neutrality	
Sec. 2.i(9)	Preference for U.S. Property—Buy America	
Sec. 2.i(10)	Accessibility	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 2.j	RESEARCH, DEVELOPMENT, DEPLOYMENT, AND SPECIAL STUDIES SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS ACQUISITION OF PROPERTY AND SERVICES	CHECK
Sec. 2.j(1)	Patent Rights	
Sec. 2.j(2)	Rights in Data	
Sec. 2.j(2)(a)	Publication Restrictions	
Sec. 2.j(2)(b)	Distribution of Data	
Sec. 2.j(3)	Export Control	
Sec. 2.j(4)	Protection of Human Subjects	
Sec. 2.j(5)	Protection of Animals	

CHAPTER IV, Sec. 2.k	AUDIT SERVICES—SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS ACQUISITION OF PROPERTY AND SERVICES	CHECK
Sec. 2.k(1)	Single Audit Act	
Sec. 2.k(1)(a)	Organizational Conflicts of Interest	
Sec. 2.k(1)(b)	Eligibility of Costs	
Sec. 2.k(2)	Other Project Audits	
Sec. 2.k(2)(a)	Organizational Conflicts of Interest	
Sec. 2.k(2)(b)	Verification of Indirect Costs	
Sec. 2.k(2)(c)	Duplication of Services	
Sec. 2.k(2)(d)	Obtaining Indirect Cost Rates	
Sec. 2.k(2)(d)1	Governmental Entities	
Sec. 2.k(2)(d)2	Indian Tribes	
Sec. 2.k(2)(d)3	Educational Institutions	
Sec. 2.k(2)(d)4	Non-Profit Entities	
Sec. 2.k(2)(d)5	Private For-Profit Entities	
Sec. 2.k(2)(e)	Eligibility of Costs	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER V	SOURCES	CHECK
Sec. 1	Force Account	
Sec. 2	Shared Use	
Sec. 3	Joint Procurements	
Sec. 3.a	Use Encouraged	
Sec. 3.b	All FTA and Federal Requirements Apply	
Sec. 4	State or Local Government Purchasing Schedules or Purchasing Contracts	
Sec. 4.a	Use Encouraged	
Sec. 4.b	All FTA and Federal Requirements Apply	
Sec. 5	Federal Excess and Surplus Property	
Sec. 6	Federal Supply Schedules	
Sec. 6.a	Full Use of Federal Supply Schedules	
Sec. 6.b	Limited Use of Federal Supply Schedules	
Sec. 6.b(1)	Information Technology	
Sec. 6.b(2)	Major Disaster or Emergency Recovery	
Sec. 6.b(3)	Local Preparedness Acquisition	
Sec. 6.c	All FTA and Federal Requirements Apply	
Sec. 6.d	Competition and Price Reasonableness	
Sec. 7	Existing Contracts	
Sec. 7.a	Permissible Actions	
Sec. 7.a(1)	Exercise of Options	
Sec. 7.a(1)(a)	Consistency with the Underlying Contract	
Sec. 7.a(1)(b)	Price	
Sec. 7.a(1)(c)	Awards Treated as Sole Source Procurements	
Sec. 7.a(1)(c)1	Failure to Evaluate Options Before Awarding the Underlying Contract	
Sec. 7.a(1)(c)2	Negotiating a Lower Option Price	
Sec. 7.a(2)	Assignment of Contract Rights	
Sec. 7.a(2)(a)	Acquisition Through Assigned Contract Rights	
Sec. 7.a(2)(b)	Alternatives to Assigned Contract Rights	
Sec. 7.a(2)(b)1	Joint Procurements	
Sec. 7.a(2)(b)2	Intergovernmental Procurements	
Sec. 7.b	Impermissible Actions	
Sec. 7.b(1)	Improper Contract Expansion	
Sec. 7.b(2)	Cardinal Changes	
Sec. 7.b(2)(a)	Identifying Cardinal Changes	
Sec. 7.b(2)(b)	Changes in Quantity	
Sec. 7.b(2)(c)	Tests	
Sec. 7.b(2)(d)	Rolling Stock	
Sec. 7.b(2)(e)	Federal Procurement Standards	
Sec. 8	The Open Market	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER VI	OPEN MARKET PROCUREMENTS - COMPETITION	CHECK
Sec. 1	Competition Required	
Sec. 1.a	Solicitation by the Recipient	
Sec. 1.b	Unsolicited Proposals	
Sec. 1.b(1)	Receipt	
Sec. 1.b(2)	Adequate Description	
Sec. 1.b(3)	Interest in the Property or Services	
Sec. 1.b(3)	Adequate Opportunity to Compete	
Sec. 1.b(4)	Contract Award Based on Proposals Received	
Sec. 1.c	Prequalification	
Sec. 1.c(1)	Lists	
Sec. 1.c(2)	Sources	
Sec. 1.c(3)	Qualification Periods	
Sec. 2	Solicitation Requirements and Restrictions	
Sec. 2.a	Description of the Property or Services	
Sec. 2.a(1)	What to Include	
Sec. 2.a(2)	Quantities Limited to the Recipient's Actual Needs	
Sec. 2.a(3)	Brand Name or Equal	
Sec. 2.a(4)	Prohibitions	
Sec. 2.a(4)(a)	Excessive Qualifications	
Sec. 2.a(4)(b)	Unnecessary Experience	
Sec. 2.a(4)(c)	Improper Prequalification	
Sec. 2.a(4)(d)	Retainer Contracts	
Sec. 2.a(4)(e)	Excessive Bonding	
Sec. 2.a(4)(f)	Brand Name Only	
Sec. 2.a(4)(g)	In-State or Local Geographic Restrictions	
Sec. 2.a(4)(g)1	Architectural Engineering Services	
Sec. 2.a(4)(g)2	Licensing	
Sec. 2.a(4)(g)3	Major Disaster or Emergency Relief	
Sec. 2.a(4)(h)	Organizational Conflicts of Interest	
Sec. 2.a(4)(h)1	Occurrence	
Sec. 2.a(4)(h)1.a	Lack of Impartiality or Impaired Objectivity	
Sec. 2.a (4)(h)1.b	Unequal Access to Information	
Sec. 2.a(4)(h)1.c	Biased Ground Rules	
Sec. 2.a(4)(h)2	Remedies	
Sec. 2.a(4)(i)	Restraint of Trade	
Sec. 2.a(4)(j)	Arbitrary Action	
Sec. 2.b	Evaluation Factors	
Sec. 2.c	Contract Type Specified	
Sec. 2.c(1)	Typical Contract Types	
Sec. 2.c(1)(a)	Firm Fixed Price	
Sec. 2.c(1)(b)	Cost Reimbursement	
Sec. 2.c(2)	Prohibited or Restricted Contract Types	
Sec. 2.c(2)(a)	Cost Plus a Percentage of Cost—Prohibited	
Sec. 2.c(2)(b)	Percentage of Construction Cost—Prohibited	
Sec. 2.c(2)(c)	Time and Materials—Restricted	
Sec. 2.c(2)(c)1	When to Use	
Sec. 2.c(2)(c)2	Firm Ceiling Price	
Sec. 2.d	Other Federal Requirements Affecting the Property or Services to be Acquired	
Sec. 2.e	Other Federal Requirements Affecting the Bidder or Offeror and Contractor	
Sec. 2.f	Award to Other Than the Low Bidder or Offeror	
Sec. 2.g	Rejection of All Bids or Offers	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER VI, Sec. 3	OPEN MARKET PROCUREMENTS – METHODS OF COMPETITIVE PROCUREMENT	CHECK
Sec. 3.a	Micro-Purchases	
Sec. 3.a(1)	When Appropriate	
Sec. 3.a(2)	Procedures	
Sec. 3.a(2)(a)	Competition	
Sec. 3.a(2)(b)	Prohibited Divisions	
Sec. 3.a(2)(c)	Documentation	
Sec. 3.b	Small Purchases	
Sec. 3.b(1)	When Appropriate	
Sec. 3.b(2)	Procedures	
Sec. 3.b(2)(a)	Competition	
Sec. 3.b(2)(b)	Prohibited Divisions	
Sec. 3.c	Sealed Bids (Formal Advertising)	
Sec. 3.c(1)	When Appropriate	
Sec. 3.c(1)(a)	Precise Specifications	
Sec. 3.c(1)(b)	Adequate Sources	
Sec. 3.c(1)(c)	Fixed Price Contract	
Sec. 3.c(1)(d)	Price Determinative	
Sec. 3.c(1)(e)	Discussions Unnecessary	
Sec. 3.c(2)	Procurement Procedures	
Sec. 3.c(2)(a)	Publicity	
Sec. 3.c(2)(b)	Adequate Sources	
Sec. 3.c(2)(c)	Adequate Specifications	
Sec. 3.c(2)(d)	Sufficient Time	
Sec. 3.c(2)(e)	Public Opening	
Sec. 3.c(2)(f)	Fixed Price Contract	
Sec. 3.c(2)(g)	Rejection of Bids	
Sec. 3.d	Competitive Proposals (Request for Proposals)	
Sec. 3.d(1)	When Appropriate	
Sec. 3.d(1)(a)	Type of Specifications	
Sec. 3.d(1)(b)	Uncertain Number of Sources	
Sec. 3.d(1)(c)	Price Alone Not Determinative	
Sec. 3.d(1)(d)	Discussions Expected	
Sec. 3.d(2)	Procurement Procedures	
Sec. 3.d(2)(a)	Publicity	
Sec. 3.d(2)(b)	Evaluation Factors	
Sec. 3.d(2)(c)	Adequate Sources	
Sec. 3.d(2)(d)	Evaluation Method	
Sec. 3.d(2)(e)	Price and Other Factors	
Sec. 3.d(2)(f)	Best Value	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER VI	OPEN MARKET PROCUREMENTS - METHODS OF COMPETITIVE PROCUREMENT	CHECK
Sec. 3.e	Two-Step Procurement Procedures	
Sec. 3.e(1)	Review of Technical Qualifications and Approach	
Sec. 3.e(2)	Review of Bids and Proposals Submitted by Qualified Prospective Contractors	
Sec. 3.f	Architectural Engineering Services (A&E) and Other Services	
Sec. 3.f(1)	Qualification-Based Procurement Procedures Required	
Sec. 3.f(2)	Qualifications-Based Procurement Procedures Prohibited	
Sec. 3.f(3)	Qualifications-Based Procurement Procedures	
Sec. 3.f(3)(a)	Qualifications	
Sec. 3.f(3)(b)	Price	
Sec. 3.f(3)(c)	Most Qualified	
Sec. 3.f(3)(d)	Next Most Qualified	
Sec. 3.f(3)(e)	Effect of State Laws	
Sec. 3.f(5)	Audits and Indirect Costs	
Sec. 3.f(5)(a)	Performance of Audits	
Sec. 3.f(5)(b)	Indirect Cost Rates	
Sec. 3.f(5)(c)	Application of Rates	
Sec. 3.f(5)(d)	Prenotification: Confidentiality of Data	
Sec. 3.g	Design-Bid-Build	
Sec. 3.g(1)	Design Services	
Sec. 3.g(2)	Construction	
Sec. 3.h	Design-Build	
Sec. 3.h(1)	Procurement Method	
Sec. 3.h(1)(a)	Construction Predominant	
Sec. 3.h(1)(b)	Design Services Predominant	
Sec. 3.h(2)	Selection Processes	
Sec. 3.h(2)(a)	One-Step Method	
Sec. 3.h(2)(b)	Two-Step Method	
Sec. 3.h(2)(b)1	Review of Technical Qualifications and Approach	
Sec. 3.h(2)(b)2	Review of Complete Proposals	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER VI, Sec. 3.h	OPEN MARKET PROCUREMENTS - METHODS OF PROCUREMENT OTHER THAN FULL AND OPEN COMPETITION	CHECK
Sec. 3.i(1)	When Appropriate	
Sec. 3.i(1)(a)	Competition Adequacy	
Sec. 3.i(1)(b)	Sole Source	
Sec. 3.i(1)(b)1	Unique Capability and Availability	
Sec. 3.i(1)(b)1.a	Unique or Innovative Concept	
Sec. 3.i(1)(b)1.b	Patents or Restricted Data Rights	
Sec. 3.i(1)(b)1.c	Substantial Duplication Costs	
Sec. 3.i(1)(b)1.d	Unacceptable Delay	
Sec. 3.i(1)(b)2	Single Bid or Single Proposal	
Sec. 3.i(1)(b)2.a	Adequate Competition	
Sec. 3.i(1)(b)2.b	Inadequate Competition	
Sec. 3.i(1)(c)	Unusual and Compelling Urgency	
Sec. 3.i(1)(d)	Associated Capital Maintenance Item Exception Repealed	
Sec. 3.i(1)(e)	Authorized by FTA	
Sec. 3.i(1)(e)1	Consortium, Joint Venture, Team, Partnership	
Sec. 3.i(1)(e)2	FAR Standards	
Sec. 3.i(1)(e)2.a	Statutory Authorization or Requirement	
Sec. 3.i (1)(e)2.b	National Emergency	
Sec. 3.i(1)(e)2.c	Research	
Sec. 3.i(1)(e)2.d	Protests, Disputes, Claims, Litigation	
Sec. 3.i(1)(e)2.e	International Agreements	
Sec. 3.i(1)(e)2.f	National Security	
Sec. 3.i(1)(e)2.g	Public Interest	
Sec. 3.i(2)	When Prohibited	
Sec. 3.i(2)(a)	Failure to Plan	
Sec. 3.i(2)(b)	Limited Availability of Federal Assistance	
Sec. 3.i(3)	Procurement Procedures	
Sec. 3.i(3)(a)	Potential Sources	
Sec. 3.i(3)(b)	Sole Source Justification	
Sec. 3.i(3)(c)	Cost Analysis	
Sec. 3.i(3)(d)	Preaward Review	

THIRD PARTY CONTRACTING CHECKLISTS

CHAPTER VI	OPEN MARKET PROCUREMENTS - EVALUATIONS	CHECK
Sec. 4	Eligible Costs	
Sec. 5	Incentive Costs and Payments	
Sec. 6	Cost or Price Analysis	
Sec. 6.a	Cost Analysis	
Sec. 6.a(1)	Federal Cost Principles	
Sec. 6.a(2)	Establishing Indirect Cost Rates	
Sec. 6.a(2)(a)	Contracts of $5 Million or Less	
Sec. 6.a(2)(b)	Contracts Exceeding $5 Million	
Sec. 6.a(3)	Profit	
Sec. 6.b	Price Analysis	
Sec. 6.c	Guidance on Cost and Price Analysis	
Sec. 7	Evaluations	
Sec. 7.a	General	
Sec. 7.b	Options	
Sec. 7.b(1)	Evaluation Required	
Sec. 7.b(2)	Evaluation Not Required	
Sec.7.c	Evaluators	

CHAPTER VI	OPEN MARKET PROCUREMENTS CONTRACT AWARDS - REJECTIONS OF BIDS AND PROPOSALS	CHECK
Sec. 8	Contract Award	
Sec. 8.a	Award to Other Than the Lowest Bidder or Offeror	
Sec. 8.b	Award to Only a Responsible Bidder or Offeror	
Sec. 8.b(1)	Integrity and Ethics	
Sec. 8.b(2)	Debarment and Suspension	
Sec. 8.b(3)	Affirmative Action and DBE	
Sec. 8.b(4)	Public Policy	
Sec. 8.b(5)	Administrative and Technical Capacity	
Sec. 8.b(6)	Licensing and Taxes	
Sec. 8.b(7)	Financial Resources	
Sec. 8.b(8)	Production Capability	
Sec. 8.b(9)	Timeliness	
Sec. 8.b(10)	Performance Record	
Sec. 8.b(10)(a)	Current Performance	
Sec. 8.b(10)(b)	Past Performance	
Sec. 8.b(10)(b)1	Sufficient Resources	
Sec. 8.b(10)(b)2	Adequate Past Experience	
Sec. 8.b(10)(b)3	Any Past Deficiencies Not the Fault of the Bidder or Offeror	
Sec. 8.c	Rejection of Bids and Proposals	
Sec. 8.c(1)	Governmental Recipients	
Sec. 8.c(2)	Non-Governmental Recipients	
Sec. 8.d	Extent and Limits of Contract Award	

11/01/2008
Rev. 1, 04/14/2009
Rev. 2, 07/01/2010
Rev. 3, 02/15/2011
Rev. 4, 03/18/2013

APPENDIX D

PROVISIONS, CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, FORMS, AND OTHER -- MATRICES

A. THIRD PARTY CONTRACT PROVISIONS

(excluding micro-purchases, except Davis-Bacon requirements apply to contracts exceeding $2,000)

PROVISION	COMMENTS	MASTER AGREEMENT REFERENCE (based on FA MA(17) 10-1-2010)
All FTA Assisted Third Party Contracts and Subcontracts		
No Federal Government Obligations to Third Parties (Use of Disclaimer)		§ 2.f
False or Fraudulent Statements or Claims – Civil and Criminal Fraud		§ 3.f
Access to Third Party Contract Records		§ 15.t
Changes to Federal Requirements		§ 2.c(1)
Civil Rights (Title VI, ADA, EEO (except special DOL construction clause))		§ 12
Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBEs)	Contract awarded on the basis of a bid/proposal offering to use DBEs.	§ 12.d
Incorporation of FTA Terms	Per FTA C 4220.1F.	§ 15.a
Awards Exceeding $10,000		
Terminations	If 49 CFR Part 18 applies.	§ 11 and § 15.a, which incorporate 49 CFR Part 18
Special EEO provision for construction contracts	If 49 CFR Part 18 or Part 19 indicate that the DOL EEOC regulations at 41 C.F.R. Chapter 60 apply.	§ 15.a, which incorporates 49 CFR Part 18 and Part 19
Awards Exceeding $25,000		
Debarment and Suspension		§ 3.b
Awards Exceeding the Simplified Acquisition Threshold ($100,000) (As of February 2011, OMB has not to date adopted the FAR clause 2.101 $150,000 standard for grants.)		
Buy America	When tangible property or construction will be acquired.	§ 14.a
Resolution of Disputes, Breaches, or Other Litigation		§ 56
Awards Exceeding $100,000 by Statute		
Lobbying	OMB Office of Federal Financial Management has not adopted the FAR clause 2.101 $150,000 simplified acquisition threshold standard.	§ 3.d
Clean Air		§ 25.b
Clean Water		§ 25.c

PROVISIONS, CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, FORMS, AND OTHER — MATRICES

A. THIRD PARTY CONTRACT PROVISIONS (Continued)

(excluding micro-purchases, except Davis-Bacon requirements apply to contracts exceeding $2,000)

PROVISION	COMMENTS	MASTER AGREEMENT REFERENCE (based on FA MA(17) 10-1-2010)
Transport of Property or Persons		
Cargo Preference	When acquiring property suitable for shipment by ocean vessel.	§ 14.b
Fly America	When property or persons are transported by air between U.S. and foreign destinations, or between foreign locations.	§ 14.c
Construction Activities		
Construction Employee Protections – Davis-Bacon Act	For contracts exceeding $2,000.	§ 24.a(1)
Construction Employee Protections – Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act	For contracts exceeding $100,000. OMB Office of Federal Financial Management has not adopted the FAR clause 2.101 $150,000 simplified acquisition threshold standard.	§ 24.a(2)
Construction Employee Protections – Sec. 1 Copeland Anti-Kickback Act – Sec. 2 Copeland Anti-Kickback Act	All contracts All construction contracts exceeding $2,000.	§ 24.a(3)
Bonding for Construction Activities Exceeding $100,000	5% bid guarantee bond. 100% performance bond. Payment bond equal to: – 50% for contracts < $1M. – 40% for contracts >$1M – < $5M. – $2.5M for contracts > $5M.	§ 15.o(1)
Seismic Safety	Construction contracts for new buildings or for existing buildings.	§ 23.e
Nonconstruction Activities		
Nonconstruction Employee Protection – Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act	For all turnkey, rolling stock, and operational contracts (except transportation services contracts and open market contracts) exceeding $100,000. OMB Office of Federal Financial Management has not adopted the FAR clause 2.101 $150,000 simplified acquisition threshold standard.	§ 24.b
Transit Operations		
Transit Employee Protective Arrangements		§ 24.d
Charter Bus Operations		§ 28
School Bus Operations		§ 29
Drug Use and Testing	Safety sensitive functions.	§ 32.b
Alcohol Misuse and Testing	Safety sensitive functions.	§ 32.b

PROVISIONS, CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, FORMS, AND OTHER—MATRICES

A. THIRD PARTY CONTRACT PROVISIONS (Continued)

(excluding micro-purchases, except Davis-Bacon requirements apply to contracts exceeding $2,000)

PROVISION	COMMENTS	MASTER AGREEMENT REFERENCE (based on FA MA(17) 10-1-2010)
Planning, Research, Development, and Demonstration Projects		
Patent Rights		§ 17
Rights in Data and Copyrights		§ 18
Special Notification Requirements for States		
Special Notification Requirement for States	.	§ 38
Miscellaneous Special Requirements		
Energy Conservation		§ 26
Recycled Products	Contracts when procuring $10,000 or more per year of items designated by EPA.	§ 15.k
Conformance with National ITS Architecture	Contracts and solicitations for ITS projects.	§ 15.m
ADA Access	Contracts for rolling stock or facilities construction/renovation.	§ 12.g
Assignability Clause	Procurements through assignments.	§ 15.a, which incorporates 49 CFR Part18 and 49 CFR Part 19

PROVISIONS, CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, FORMS, AND OTHER—MATRICES

B. APPLICABILITY OF THIRD PARTY CONTRACT PROVISIONS

(excluding micro-purchases, except Davis-Bacon requirements apply to contracts exceeding $2,000)

TYPE OF PROCUREMENT					
PROVISION	**Professional Services/A&E**	**Operations/ Management**	**Rolling Stock Purchase**	**Construction**	**Materials & Supplies**
No Federal Government Obligations to Third Parties (by Use of a Disclaimer)	All	All	All	All	All
False Statements or Claims Civil and Criminal Fraud	All	All	All	All	All
Access to Third Party Contract Records	All	All	All	All	All
Changes to Federal Requirements	All	All	All	All	All
Termination	>$10,000 if 49 CFR Part 18 applies.	>$10,000 if 49 CFR Part 18 applies.	>$10,000 if 49 CFR Part 18 applies.	>$10,000 if 49 CFR Part 18 applies.	>$10,000 if 49 CFR Part 18 applies.
Civil Rights (Title VI, ADA, EEO except Special DOL EEO clause for construction projects)	All	All	All>$10,000	All	All
Special DOL EEO clause for construction projects				>$10,000	
Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBEs)	All	All	All	All	All
Incorporation of FTA Terms	All	All	All	All	All
Debarment and Suspension	>$25,000	>$25,000	>$25,000	>$25,000	>$25,000
Buy America			>$100,000 As of Feb. 2011, FTA has not adopted the FAR 2.101 $150,000 standard.	>$100,000 As of Feb. 2011, FTA has not adopted the FAR 2.101 $150,000 standard.	>$100,000 As of Feb. 2011, FTA has not adopted the FAR 2.101 $150,000 standard.
Resolution of Disputes, Breaches, or Other Litigation	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000
Lobbying	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000
Clean Air	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000
Clean Water	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000	>$100,000
Cargo Preference			Transport by ocean vessel.	Transport by ocean vessel.	Transport by ocean vessel.
Fly America	Foreign air transp. /travel.	Foreign air transp. /travel.	Foreign air transp. /travel.	Foreign air transp. /travel.	Foreign air transp. /travel.

PROVISIONS, CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, FORMS, AND OTHER—MATRICES

B. APPLICABILITY OF THIRD PARTY CONTRACT PROVISIONS (Continued)

(excluding micro-purchases, except Davis-Bacon requirements apply to construction contracts exceeding $2,000)

TYPE OF PROCUREMENT					
PROVISION	**Professional Services/A&E**	**Operations/ Management**	**Rolling Stock Purchase**	**Construction**	**Materials & Supplies**
Davis-Bacon Act				>$2,000 (also ferries).	
Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act		>$100,000 (transportation services excepted).	>$100,000	>$100,000 (also ferries).	
Copeland Anti-Kickback Act Section 1 Section 2				 All > $2,000 (also ferries).	
Bonding				$100,000	
Seismic Safety	A&E for new buildings & additions.			New buildings & additions.	
Transit Employee Protective Arrangements		Transit operations.			
Charter Service Operations		All			
School Bus Operations		All			
Drug Use and Testing		Transit operations.			
Alcohol Misuse and Testing		Transit operations.			
Patent Rights	R & D				
Rights in Data and Copyrights	R & D				
Energy Conservation	All	All	All	All	All
Recycled Products		EPA-selected items $10,000 or more annually.		EPA-selected items $10,000 or more annually.	EPA-selected items $10,000 or more annually.
Conformance with ITS National Architecture	ITS projects.	ITS projects.	ITS projects.	ITS projects.	ITS projects.
ADA Access	A&E	All	All	All	All
Notification of Federal Participation for States	Limited to States.	Limited to States.	Limited to States.	Limited to States.	Limited to States.

PROVISIONS, CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, FORMS, AND OTHER—MATRICES

C. CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, AND FORMS

CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, AND FORMS	COMMENTS	REGULATORY REFERENCE
Bus Testing Certification	All procurements of new model transit buses and vans and existing models being modified with a major changeover changes.	49 CFR Part 665
TVM Certifications	All rolling stock procurements.	49 CFR Part 26
Buy America Certification	Procurements of steel, iron or manufactured products exceeding $100,000.	49 CFR Part 661
Preaward Review	FTA Annual Certification for any rolling stock procurement.	49 CFR Part 663
Preaward Buy America Certification	Rolling stock procurements exceeding procurements exceeding $100,000.	49 CFR Part 663
Preaward Purchaser's Requirement	All rolling stock procurements.	49 CFR Part 663
Post Delivery Review	FTA Annual Certification for any rolling stock procurement.	49 CFR Part 663
Post Delivery Buy America Certification	Rolling stock procurements exceeding procurements exceeding $100,000.	49 CFR Part 663
Post Delivery Purchaser's Requirement	All rolling stock procurements to the extent required by Federal law and regulations.	49 CFR Part 663
On-Site Inspector's Report	Rolling Stock except for procurements of: -10 or fewer vehicles; - 20 or fewer vehicles serving rural (other than urbanized) areas or urbanized areas or 200,000 people or fewer; - any amount of primary manufactured standard production and unmodified vans that after visual inspection and road testing meet the contract specifications.	49 CFR Part 663
Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards Preaward Review and Post Delivery	Motor vehicle procurements (49 CFR 571).	49 CFR Part 663
Lobbying	Procurements exceeding $100,000.	49 CFR Part 20 OMB Office of Federal Financial Management has not adopted FAR 2.101 $150,000 simplified acquisition threshold standard.
Standard Form LLL and Quarterly Updates (when required)	Procurements exceeding $100,000 where contractor engages in lobbying activities.	49 CFR Part 20 OMB Office of Federal Financial Management has not adopted FAR 2.101 $150,000 simplified acquisition threshold standard.

PROVISIONS, CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, FORMS, AND OTHER—MATRICES

D. OTHER MATTERS

OTHER MATTERS	COMMENTS	STATUTORY OR REGULATORY REFERENCES
Contract Administration System		49 CFR § 18.36(b)(2) 49 CFR § 19.47
Record of Procurement History		49 CFR § 18.36(b)(9) 49 CFR § 19.47
Protest Procedures		49 CFR § 18.36(b)(12)
Selection Procedures		49 CFR § 18.36(c)(3)
Cost/Price Analysis		49 CFR § 18.36(f) 49 CFR § 19.45
Justification for Noncompetitive Awards	If Applicable.	49 CFR § 18.36(b)(9) by implication 49 CFR § 19.46(b)
No Excessive Bonding Requirements		49 CFR § 18.36(h) 49 CFR § 19.48(c)(5)
No Exclusionary Specifications		49 U.S.C. § 5325(h)
No Geographic Preferences	Except for A&E Services	49 CFR § 18.36(c)(2)

INDEX

A&E, II–2, II–10, IV–24, IV–25, IV–26, IV–33, VI–4, VI–12, VI–15, VI–21, VII–12, VII–4, VII–5, VII–7, *See also*, Architectural Engineering
Access, I–9, I–14, II–7, III–5, IV–15, V–2, V–3, VI–5, VII–3, VII–9, A–7, VII–2, VII–10, VII–1, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5
Accessible, I–2, III–4, IV–16, VI–14, A–1, A–4
Activities, I–1, II–6, II–8, IV–5, IV–6, IV–14, IV–15, IV–22, IV–30, VI–5, VI–15, A–4, A–6, VII–2, VII–6, *See also*, Activity
Activity, I–9, II–7, IV–14, VII–2, VII–6, VII–8, *See also*, Activities
ADA Access, VII–3, VII–5
Adequate, III–1, III–3, III–4, III–6, IV–1, IV–11, IV–12, IV–16, IV–26, V–1, V–6, VI–1, VI–8, VI–9, VI–11, VI–16, VI–17, VI–21, VI–24, VII–1, VII–6, VII–7, VII–2, VII–4, VII–10, VII–11, VII–13, VII–15
Administrative, I–2, I–4, I–12, II–10, III–7, IV–2, IV–9, IV–13, IV–26, IV–32, IV–33, V–3, VI–14, VI–23, VII–1, VII–3, A–2, A–4, VII–4, VII–15
Administrative Remedies, VII–3
Administrator, I–2, I–1, II–11, IV–27, VII–2, VII–3
Advance Payment, IV–10, IV–11, VII–4
Affirmative Action, VI–23, VII–15
Age, IV–5, IV–6, IV–14, IV–23, A–1, A–3, A–6, VII–3
Age Discrimination Act, IV–6, A–3
Age Discrimination in Employment Act, IV–6, A–1, A–6
Air, IV–3, IV–17, IV–19, IV–20, A–3, A–4, A–6, VII–5, VII–6, VII–1, VII–2, VII–4
Air Carrier, IV–19, A–6, VII–5
Alcohol Misuse and Testing, IV–22, VII–6, VII–2, VII–5
Alteration, IV–24, IV–25, IV–28, IV–29, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14
Amended, I–1, I–2, II–5, II–6, III–7, III–8, IV–5, IV–6, IV–14, IV–15, IV–16, IV–17, IV–18, IV–19, IV–25, IV–26, IV–28, IV–29, IV–32, V–3, VI–23, A–1, A–2, A–3, A–4, A–7, VII–5, *See also*, Amendment
Amendment, IV–5, VI–20, A–2, *See also*, Amended
Americans with Disabilities Act, IV–6, IV–15, IV–30, A–3, VII–5
Animal, IV–22, IV–32, A–1, A–6
Animal Welfare Act, IV–22, IV–32, A–1
Anti-Kickback, IV–28, IV–29, A–1, A–2, VII–7, VII–2, VII–5
Appeal, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–6, VII–7
Applicability, II–1, II–2, VII–1, VII–4, VII–5
Approval, I–3, IV–11, IV–27, VI–2, VI–18, VII–5
Arbitrary, VI–5, VII–10
Arbitration, VII–1, VII–8, VII–9
Arbitration Award, VII–8, VII–9
Architectural, II–2, IV–15, IV–24, VI–4, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, A–2, A–4, VII–7, VII–10, VII–12
Architectural Engineering, II–2, IV–24, VI–4, VI–12, VI–14, VI–15, A–2, VII–7, VII–10, VII–12, *See also*, A&E
Architecture, IV–19, A–8, VII–3, VII–5
Arrangement, I–9, II–8, V–2
Arranger, II–9
Art, II–5, IV–23, A–8, VII–1, VII–6
Assignment, IV–1, IV–2, V–1, V–5, V–6, V–7, VII–3, VII–9
Associated Capital Maintenance Item, VI–18, VII–13
Auction, III–6, III–7, VII–2

Audit, III–7, IV–4, IV–25, IV–32, IV–33, IV–34, VI–22, VII–6, VII–7, A–2, A–8, VII–2, VII–8
Auditor, IV–32, IV–33
Authorization, I–3, V–3, VI–19, A–2, VII–13
Authorizing, I–1, IV–1, IV–9, VI–20
Availability, II–5, III–3, IV–3, VI–4, VI–17, VI–19, VII–13
Award, I–12, I–13, III–1, III–4, IV–1, IV–2, IV–4, IV–5, IV–10, IV–21, IV–28, V–5, V–6, V–7, V–8, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–4, VI–5, VI–7, VI–9, VI–10, VI–11, VI–13, VI–15, VI–16, VI–17, VI–19, VI–23, VI–25, VII–3, VII–8, VII–9, VII–10, A–5, VII–4, VII–6, VII–10, VII–15
Background, I–2
Barriers, IV–15, IV–25, VI–13, A–4
Basis for Contract Award, IV–21, VII–6
Bayh-Dole Act, IV–30, A–2
Best Practices Procurement Manual, I–13, II–4, II–5, IV–4, V–6, V–7, V–8, VI–3, VI–21, VII–5, A–8, *See also*, BPPM
Best Value, I–3, IV–3, VI–11, VII–11
Bias, III–2, *See also*, Biased
Biased, VI–5, VII–10, *See also*, Bias
Bid, I–5, III–6, IV–20, IV–26, VI–4, VI–5, VI–8, VI–9, VI–10, VI–12, VI–14, VI–17, VII–2, VII–7, VII–12, VII–13, VII–1, VII–2
Bid Guarantee, IV–26, VII–7, VII–2
Bidder, III–4, IV–26, VI–4, VI–7, VI–8, VI–9, VI–10, VI–12, VI–23, VI–24, VII–3, VII–10, VII–15
Bidding, I–5, III–6, VI–8, VI–10, VI–12, VI–15, VII–2
Bond, IV–26, IV–27, VI–4, VII–7, VII–2
Bonding, IV–26, IV–27, VI–3, VI–4, VII–7, VII–10, VII–2, VII–5, VII–7
BPPM, I–13, I–14, II–4, VI–3, VII–5, *See also*, Best Practices Procurement Manual
Brand Name, III–2, VI–3, VI–4, VII–2, VII–10
Breach, IV–13, VII–7, VII–4
Brooks Act, IV–24, IV–26, VI–12, VI–13, VI–15, A–2
Building, I–5, IV–29, A–5
Build-Operate-Transfer, II–9
Build-Own-Operate, II–9
Burden, III–7, IV–32, *See also*, Overhead
Bus, I–8, II–5, II–7, II–8, IV–21, IV–23, VI–4, A–5, VII–1, VII–6, VII–2, VII–5, VII–6
Bus Testing, IV–21, A–5, VII–6
Business Opportunity, IV–5, IV–14
Business Reason, IV–11, VI–10, VII–4
Buy America, IV–18, IV–29, IV–30, V–2, V–4, V–6, VI–7, VI–8, A–5, VII–5, VII–7, VII–1, VII–4, VII–6
Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, IV–5, A–2
Cancellation, I–1
Capability, III–1, III–7, VI–2, VI–4, VI–17, VI–19, VI–24, VII–13, VII–15
Capacity, I–11, III–1, III–6, V–1, V–5, V–7, VI–4, VI–23, VII–1, VII–3, VII–2, VII–15
Capital Contract, II–5, VII–1
Cardinal Change, I–3, IV–9, V–7, V–8, VII–9
Cargo Preference, IV–19, A–3, A–6, VII–2, VII–4
Cargo Preference Act, IV–19, A–3
Ceiling, IV–26, VI–6, VII–10
Certification, I–11, I–12, III–1, III–2, IV–5, IV–20, IV–22, V–2, V–4, VII–2, VII–3, VII–6
Change, I–3, I–4, IV–2, IV–9, V–7, V–8, V–9, VI–17, VI–21, VII–4, VII–5, VII–9
Change Order, I–4, VI–21, VII–4, VII–5
Charter, I–8, IV–22, A–5, VII–6, VII–2, VII–5
Civil Rights, IV–5, IV–14, IV–15, A–3, A–4, VII–3, VII–5, VII–1, VII–4
Claim, III–8, VI–19, VII–4, VII–7, VII–8, VII–9
Clean Air Act, IV–17, A–3
Clean Water Act, IV–17, A–2
Coastal Zone, IV–18, VII–5

Coin, IV–20, A–2
Color, IV–5, IV–6, IV–14, IV–23
Common Grant Rule, I–4, I–6, I–7, I–10, I–11, I–12, II–3, II–4, II–5, II–10, II–11, III–1, III–2, III–3, III–4, III–5, IV–1, IV–3, IV–4, IV–5, IV–7, IV–8, IV–9, IV–12, IV–13, IV–14, IV–17, IV–18, IV–19, IV–21, IV–26, IV–27, IV–28, IV–29, IV–30, IV–31, V–1, V–2, V–4, V–7, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–4, VI–5, VI–6, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–16, VI–18, VI–19, VI–20, VI–21, VI–23, VI–25, VII–1, VII–4, VII–5, VII–7, A–4, VII–1
Common Grant Rule for Governmental Recipients, II–3, III–2, IV–7, IV–8, IV–12, IV–28, V–1, V–2, VI–2, VI–6, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–16, VI–18, VI–19, VI–25, VII–1, VII–4, A–4, *See also*, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments
Common Grant Rule for Non-Governmental Recipients, II–3, III–2, III–3, IV–7, IV–8, IV–13, IV–27, VI–6, VI–25, VII–1, A–4, *See also*, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations
Community, I–6, I–7, IV–23, VII–6
Compensation, IV–24, IV–29, VII–6
Competition, I–6, II–2, II–7, II–8, II–9, III–2, III–4, III–6, IV–9, IV–21, IV–27, IV–29, V–4, V–8, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–4, VI–8, VI–12, VI–16, VI–17, VI–18, VI–19, VI–21, A–7, VII–9, VII–10, VII–11, VII–13
Competitive Proposal, VI–9, VI–10, VI–11, VI–16, VI–18, A–5, VII–11
Complex, II–9, IV–30, VII–1
Comptroller General, I–13, III–5, III–6, V–8
Concept, IV–28, V–9, VI–1, VI–17, VII–13
Concurrence, I–3, II–1, IV–11, VI–4, VII–6, VII–9, VII–4
Condition, III–2, IV–11, IV–28
Confidentiality, VI–14, VII–12
Conflict, II–9, II–11, III–1, IV–5, IV–21, VI–3, VI–4, VI–5, VI–14, VII–3
Conflict of Interest, II–9, III–1, IV–5, VI–5, VII–3
Consortium, I–5, I–8, II–2, VI–15, VI–18, VII–3, VII–13
Construction, I–5, II–6, II–8, II–9, IV–9, IV–11, IV–12, IV–14, IV–15, IV–24, IV–25, IV–26, IV–27, IV–28, IV–29, IV–30, VI–3, VI–6, VI–7, VI–9, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, VI–24, VII–9, VII–10, A–2, A–5, A–6, A–7, VII–1, VII–4, VII–5, VII–7, VII–10, VII–12, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5
Construction Management, IV–24, VI–12, VI–14, VI–15
Construction Manager at Risk, II–9
Constructive Change, I–4, VII–4, VII–5
Contact, I–2, I–14, II–1, II–9, IV–4, IV–11, IV–32, VII–2, VII–6, VII–8, B–1
Contract, I–4
Contract Administration System, III–1, VII–7
Contract Award, IV–2, IV–4, IV–5, IV–21, IV–28, V–5, V–6, VI–1, VI–2, VI–5, VI–10, VI–13, VI–15, VI–23, VI–25, VII–1, VII–10, VII–6, VII–10, VII–15, VII–1
Contract Expansion, V–7, VII–9
Contract Rights, V–1, V–4, V–5, V–6, V–7, VI–3, VII–9
Contract Type, III–4, VI–6, VI–8, VII–2, VII–10
Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, IV–13, IV–14, IV–29, A–2, A–5, VII–5
Cooperative Agreement, I–2, I–3, I–4, I–5, I–7, I–8, I–13, II–1, II–2, II–3, II–10, IV–9, IV–10, V–1, VI–18, VI–20, VII–5, VII–6, A–4, VII–1

Cooperative Procurement, I–6, I–7, *See also*, Joint Procurement and Cooperative Purchasing Program
Cooperative Purchasing Program, I–7, I–9, I–10, V–2, V–3, *See also*, Cooperative Purchasing Program
Copeland Anti-Kickback Act, A–1, A–2, VII–2, VII–5
Copyright, IV–31, VII–5
Cost, I–3, I–8, I–10, II–10, III–4, III–5, IV–1, IV–3, IV–9, IV–10, IV–18, IV–26, IV–30, IV–32, IV–33, IV–34, V–1, VI–3, VI–6, VI–10, VI–11, VI–14, VI–15, VI–16, VI–19, VI–20, VI–21, VI–22, VII–5, A–5, A–7, VII–2, VII–4, VII–7, VII–8, VII–10, VII–12, VII–13, VII–14, VII–7
Cost Analysis, VI–16, VI–20, VI–21, VII–13, VII–14
Cost Plus a Percentage of Cost, VI–6, VII–10
Cost Reimbursement, III–4, VI–6, VII–10
Council on Environmental Quality, IV–17, A–6
Court Award, VII–8, VII–9
Creed, IV–5, IV–14, IV–23
Criminal Fraud, III–7, A–1, VII–1, VII–4
Criteria, I–5, IV–23, VI–23, VII–6
Customary, II–8, IV–11, V–8, VII–4
Data, I–6, IV–31, VI–14, VI–17, VI–20, VII–8, VII–12, VII–13, VII–3, VII–5
Davis-Bacon Act, IV–28, A–2, VII–2, VII–5
DBE, II–6, IV–3, IV–6, IV–7, IV–20, VI–23, VII–3, VII–6, VII–15, *See also*, Disadvantaged Business Enterprise
Debarment, IV–4, IV–5, VI–23, A–4, A–7, VII–3, VII–15, VII–1, VII–4
Defense Contract Audit Agency, IV–34, VI–22, A–8
Deficiencies, I–11, VI–24, VII–15
Definition, I–3, I–5, III–6, V–3, A–3
Delay, I–11, VI–17, VI–18, VII–13
Delivery, I–3, I–5, I–6, II–8, II–9, IV–7, IV–12, IV–21, V–1, V–5, V–6, V–8, VI–3, VI–11, VI–24, A–5, VII–3, VII–6
Demonstration, II–4, IV–30, IV–31, VII–3
Department of Agriculture, IV–22, IV–32, A–6
Department of Commerce, IV–8, IV–30, IV–31, A–6, VII–3
Department of Labor, IV–13, IV–28, A–5, A–6, *See also*, DOL
Department of the Treasury, IV–27, A–6
Department of Transportation, I–1, II–6, IV–4, IV–7, IV–14, VI–19, A–3, A–4, A–7, *See also*, DOT
Description, I–14, II–9, III–2, IV–3, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–8, VI–9, VII–2, VII–5, VII–7, VII–10
Design, I–3, I–5, II–5, II–8, II–9, IV–15, IV–23, IV–24, IV–25, IV–28, VI–11, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, VI–16, VII–10, A–8, VII–5, VII–7, VII–12
Design-Bid-Build, I–5, VI–14, VII–12
Design-Build, I–5, II–8, II–9, IV–28, VI–15, VI–16, VII–12
Design-Build With a Warranty, II–9
Design-Build-Finance-Operate, II–9
Design-Build-Operate-Maintain, II–9
Development, I–1, I–8, II–4, II–7, II–8, IV–6, IV–8, IV–24, IV–30, IV–31, VI–10, VI–17, VI–19, A–8, VII–1, VII–3, VII–8, VII–3, VII–5
Disabilities, IV–6, IV–15, IV–16, IV–20, IV–22, IV–30, A–3, A–4, VII–3, VII–5, *See also*, Disability
Disability, IV–15, A–1, VII–5, *See also*, Disabilities
Disadvantaged Business Enterprise, II–6, IV–2, IV–3, IV–6, IV–7, VI–4, VI–23, A–4, VII–3, VII–1, VII–4, *See also*, DBE
Disclosure, IV–5, IV–17, VI–19, VII–3
Discriminatory, III–2, IV–3, VI–3
Discussion, IV–13, VII–5

Disputes, VI–19, VII–1, VII–5, VII–6, VII–9, VII–13, VII–1, VII–4
Documentation, III–5, IV–11, IV–12, VI–8, VII–5, VII–6, VII–9, VII–2, VII–4, VII–11
DOL, IV–13, IV–22, IV–28, IV–29, A–5, A–6, *See also*, Department of Labor
DOT, I–1, I–4, II–5, II–6, II–10, III–5, III–8, IV–4, IV–5, IV–7, IV–8, IV–14, IV–15, IV–17, IV–20, IV–22, IV–27, IV–30, IV–32, VI–19, VI–21, VI–23, A–3, A–4, A–5, A–7, A–8, VII–3, VII–5, *See also*, Department of Transportation
Driving, IV–8, IV–9, A–7, A–8
Drug Use and Testing, IV–22, VII–6, VII–2, VII–5
Duplication, IV–32, VI–17, VII–8, VII–13
Earthquake Hazards Reduction Act, IV–28, A–3
E-Commerce, I–5, *See also*, Electronic Commerce
Educational Institutions, IV–10, IV–33, A–7, VII–4, VII–8
EEO, IV–5, VII–3, VII–1, VII–4, *See also*, Equal Employment Opportunity
Effect, I–3, I–4, I–13, II–1, II–4, III–5, IV–23, IV–30, V–7, VI–5, VI–13, VII–1, VII–6, VII–12
E-Government Act of 2002, V–3, A–2
Electronic, I–3, I–5, I–6, I–13, III–5, III–6, IV–16, A–1, A–6, VII–2, VII–5
Electronic Commerce, I–5, III–5, VII–2, *See also*, E-Commerce
Eligibility, II–8, IV–1, IV–9, IV–32, IV–34, V–2, V–3, A–7, A–8, VII–3, VII–4, VII–8
Eligible, I–6, II–6, IV–1, IV–3, IV–9, IV–23, IV–34, V–3, VI–4, VI–20, VI–23, VII–4, VII–5, VII–9, VII–14
Emergency, V–3, V–4, VI–4, VI–5, VI–18, VI–19, A–2, A–3, VII–9, VII–10, VII–13
Employee, III–1, IV–22, VII–2, VII–5
Employment, I–8, IV–5, IV–6, IV–14, IV–28, A–1, A–3, A–6, A–7, VII–3, VII–7
End Products, IV–25, VI–13, VII–7
Energy, III–3, IV–17, IV–18, A–3, VII–2, VII–5, VII–3, VII–5
Energy Policy and Conservation Act, IV–18, A–3
Engineering, I–10, II–2, IV–24, IV–28, VI–4, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, VI–19, VII–10, A–2, VII–7, VII–10, VII–12
Environment, III–3, IV–17, *See also*, Environmental
Environmental, III–3, IV–14, IV–15, IV–16, IV–17, IV–18, A–5, A–6, A–7, VII–2, VII–5, *See also*, Environment
Environmental Justice, IV–14, IV–15, A–7, VII–5
Environmental Protection Agency, IV–17, A–6, *See also*, EPA
EPA, IV–17, IV–20, A–6, VII–3, VII–5, *See also*, Environmental Protection Agency
EPLS, IV–5, *See also*, Excluded Parties List System
Equal, II–7, III–2, III–3, IV–5, IV–6, IV–16, IV–28, VI–3, VI–4, VI–18, A–3, A–6, A–7, VII–2, VII–3, VII–5, VII–7, VII–10, VII–2
Equal Employment Opportunity, IV–5, IV–6, IV–28, A–3, A–6, A–7, VII–3, VII–7, *See also*, EEO
Equipment, I–6, I–8, II–5, IV–3, IV–18, IV–22, IV–23, IV–30, IV–31, V–1, VI–17, VI–24, VII–10, A–2
Ethics, VI–23, VII–15
Evaluate, III–5, IV–25, V–5, VI–5, VI–22, VII–9, *See also*, Evaluation
Evaluation, I–3, VI–5, VI–11, VI–13, VI–20, VI–22, VI–23, VII–1, VII–6, VII–10, VII–11, VII–14, *See also*, Evaluate
Exception, II–9, IV–11, VI–18, VII–13, *See also*, Waiver
Existing Contract, V–4, V–5, V–7, VI–17, VII–9

Experience, I–11, VI–3, VI–6, VI–10, VI–22, VI–23, VI–24, VII–6, VII–10, VII–15
Export, IV–31, A–6, VII–8
Fabrication, IV–21, IV–24, IV–25, VI–13
Facilitator, II–9
Factor, VI–13, VI–24
Failure, IV–27, V–5, VI–19, VI–24, VII–3, VII–4, VII–8, VII–9, VII–10, VII–9, VII–13
Fair Labor Standards, IV–14, IV–22, A–1, VII–5
Fair Labor Standards Act, IV–14, IV–22, A–1
False Statement, VII–4
FAR, II–10, IV–10, IV–18, IV–26, IV–30, IV–33, VI–7, VI–14, VI–18, VI–20, VI–21, VI–22, VI–23, A–5, VII–13
Feasibility Studies, IV–24, VI–12, VI–14, VI–15
Federal Acquisition Regulation, II–10, VI–7, A–5, VII–1, *See also*, FAR
Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994, IV–7, IV–14, IV–29, A–1, A–2, A–3
Federal Boards of Contract Appeals, V–8
Federal Concern, I–11, VII–1, VII–9
Federal Court Decisions, V–8
Federal Interest, IV–26, IV–27, VII–1, VII–8, VII–9
Federal Procurement Standard, V–8, VII–9
Federal Property and Administrative Services Act, V–3, A–2
Federal Register, I–1, I–2, IV–10
Federal Requirements, I–1, I–2, I–12, I–13, I–14, II–1, II–4, II–10, II–11, III–1, III–4, III–6, IV–1, IV–3, IV–4, IV–9, IV–19, IV–21, IV–30, V–1, V–2, V–4, V–6, VI–4, VI–7, VII–1, VII–9, VII–10, VII–1, VII–4
Federal Supply Schedule, V–2, V–3, VII–9
Federal Transit Administration, I–1, I–2, I–6, II–1, II–5, III–1, IV–1, VI–1, VII–1, A–5, A–8, *See also*, FTA
Federal Transit Laws, I–1, II–10, A–1
Federalism, I–11, A–7
Financial, I–1, I–2, II–6, II–9, III–1, III–4, IV–4, IV–6, IV–7, IV–12, IV–14, IV–15, IV–17, IV–27, VI–22, VI–24, VII–7, VII–8, A–2, A–4, A–6, VII–1, VII–15
Firm Fixed Price, VI–6, VI–8, VI–9, VI–10, VII–10
Five-Year Limitation, IV–21, VII–6
Fixed Price, III–4, VI–6, VI–8, VI–9, VI–10, VII–10, VII–11
Fly America, IV–19, A–4, VII–2, VII–4
Force Account, I–6, II–9, V–1, VII–1, VII–9
Foreign, I–8, IV–18, IV–31, VI–19, VII–2, VII–4
Formal Advertising, VI–8, VI–11, VII–11
Forms, III–4, III–5, VII–8, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7
For-Profit, I–7, II–5, II–10, IV–10, IV–34, VII–4, VII–8
Fraud, III–7, III–8, VII–1, VII–9, A–1, A–2, A–4, VII–1, VII–4
Frequently Asked Questions, I–14, V–8
FTA, I–1, I–2, I–1, I–2, I–3, I–5, I–6, I–7, I–8, I–9, I–10, I–11, I–12, I–13, I–14, II–1, II–2, II–3, II–4, II–5, II–6, II–7, II–8, II–9, II–10, II–11, III–1, III–2, III–4, III–5, III–6, III–7, IV–1, IV–2, IV–3, IV–4, IV–5, IV–6, IV–7, IV–8, IV–9, IV–10, IV–11, IV–12, IV–13, IV–14, IV–15, IV–16, IV–17, IV–18, IV–19, IV–20, IV–21, IV–22, IV–23, IV–24, IV–25, IV–26, IV–27, IV–28, IV–29, IV–30, IV–31, IV–32, IV–33, IV–34, V–1, V–2, V–3, V–4, V–5, V–6, V–7, V–8, V–9, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–4, VI–5, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–11, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, VI–16, VI–17, VI–18, VI–20, VI–21, VI–22, VI–23, VI–24, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8, VII–9, A–5, A–8, B–1, VII–1, VII–4, VII–9, VII–13, VII–1, VII–4, *See also*, Federal Transit Administration
FTA Circular, I–1, I–13, II–5, II–6, IV–1, IV–14, IV–15, IV–20, A–8

FTA Official, IV–4, VII–2, VII–6, VII–8
Fuel Economy, IV–20, A–6, VII–6
Full and Open Competition, I–6, II–8, III–6, VI–1, VI–2, VI–12, VI–16, VI–19, VII–13
Full Delivery, II–9
G&A, III–7, IV–32, *See also*, General & Administrative
General & Administrative, III–7, IV–32, *See also*, G&A
General Services Administration, I–7, IV–5, V–2, A–2, A–6, *See also*, GSA
Geographic, I–2, II–2, VI–4, VII–10, VII–7
Gift, III–1
Governmental Recipient, I–4, I–6, I–7, II–3, II–10, III–2, III–3, III–4, IV–7, IV–8, IV–12, IV–13, IV–17, IV–27, IV–28, V–1, V–2, V–3, VI–2, VI–6, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–11, VI–16, VI–18, VI–19, VI–25, VII–1, VII–2, VII–4, A–4, VII–1, VII–15
Governmental Subrecipient, II–2, II–3, VII–1
Grant, I–3, I–4, I–6, I–7, I–8, I–10, I–11, I–12, I–13, II–1, II–2, II–3, II–4, II–5, II–6, II–10, II–11, III–1, III–2, III–3, III–4, III–5, IV–1, IV–3, IV–4, IV–5, IV–7, IV–8, IV–9, IV–10, IV–12, IV–13, IV–14, IV–17, IV–18, IV–19, IV–20, IV–21, IV–26, IV–27, IV–28, IV–29, IV–30, IV–31, V–1, V–2, V–4, V–7, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–4, VI–5, VI–6, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–16, VI–18, VI–19, VI–20, VI–21, VI–23, VI–25, VII–1, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7, A–4, A–8, VII–1
Grant Management, II–6, IV–1, IV–20, A–8
Grantee, I–8, II–2
GSA, I–7, I–9, I–10, IV–5, IV–19, V–2, V–3, V–4, A–2, A–3, A–6, A–7, VII–3, *See also*, General Services Administration
Guidance, I–1, I–2, I–11, I–12, I–13, II–1, II–2, II–6, II–8, II–9, II–10, II–11, IV–1, IV–3, IV–4, IV–10, IV–14, IV–15, IV–33, V–1, V–7, V–8, VI–1, VI–6, VI–7, VI–21, A–7, A–8, VII–14
Guidelines, IV–5, IV–14, IV–15, IV–17, IV–22, IV–30, A–6, A–7, A–8
Handicap, IV–15, A–4
Helpline, I–14, VI–22
HIRE Act, IV–6, A–1
History, III–4, III–5, IV–23, VII–6, VII–2, VII–7
HUBZone, IV–7
IDIQ, V–5, V–7, *See also*, Indefinite-Delivery-Indefinite-Quantity
Impartiality, IV–5, VI–5, VII–10
Inadequate, II–11, VI–18, VI–21, VII–1, VII–13
Incentive, VI–6, VI–10, VI–20, VII–14
Indefinite-Delivery-Indefinite-Quantity, V–5, *See also*, IDIQ
Indian, I–1, I–4, I–6, I–7, I–9, II–10, IV–10, IV–18, IV–30, IV–33, V–3, A–7, VII–5, VII–8, *See also*, Indian Tribe, and Indian Tribal Government
Indian Tribal Government, I–4, I–6, IV–10, IV–33, A–7, *See also*, Indian, and Indian Tribe,
Indian Tribe, I–6, II–10, IV–30, IV–33, VII–8, *See also*, Indian, and Indian Tribal Government
Indirect Cost, IV–26, IV–32, IV–33, IV–34, VI–14, VII–7, VII–8, VII–12, VII–14
Industry Contracts, III–4, VII–2
Information, I–2, I–12, II–1, II–4, II–11, III–5, III–6, III–7, IV–1, IV–4, IV–7, IV–8, IV–16, IV–17, IV–23, IV–32, V–3, V–4, V–6, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–5, VI–7, VI–20, VI–21, VII–2, VII–3, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7, VII–10, A–1, A–2, A–3, A–4, A–5, A–6, B–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–5, VII–9, VII–10
Information Technology, IV–16, V–3, A–1, A–2, A–6, VII–9
Innovative, I–10, II–9, VI–17, VII–13
In-State, IV–21, VI–4, VII–6, VII–10

Institution of Higher Education, I–7, IV–10, IV–30, IV–31, V–3
Integrity, IV–4, VI–23, VII–15
Intelligent Transportation System, IV–19, A–1, VII–6, *See also*, ITS
International, I–8, IV–19, VI–19, A–4, VII–13
International Air Transportation Fair Competitive Practices Act, IV–19, A–4, *See also*, Fly America Act
ITS, IV–19, IV–25, A–8, VII–3, VII–5, *See also*, Intelligent Transportation System
John Warner National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2007, V–3, A–2
Joint Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, IV–15, A–4
Joint Partnership, II–4
Joint Procurement, I–6, I–7, I–10, IV–1, IV–2, V–1, V–7, VII–3, VII–9
Joint Venture, I–8, II–2, VI–15, VI–18, VII–3, VII–13
Justification, III–4, III–5, IV–9, VI–20, VII–13, VII–7
Labor, I–6, I–8, IV–7, IV–13, IV–14, IV–22, IV–26, IV–28, IV–29, V–1, V–5, VI–20, A–1, A–5, A–6, A–7, VII–5, VII–7
Labor Neutrality, IV–29, VII–7
Laborer, IV–13, IV–29
Land, I–8, II–5, II–6
Law, I–1, I–2, I–7, II–1, II–3, II–8, II–11, III–1, III–6, IV–1, IV–4, IV–9, IV–14, IV–21, IV–22, IV–25, IV–26, V–2, V–3, VI–1, VI–4, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–11, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, VI–21, VI–23, VII–4, VII–8, A–1, A–6, A–8, VII–7
Lease, III–3, IV–3, IV–4, VII–2, VII–3
Legal Effect, II–1
Legislation, I–1, I–2, III–5, IV–17, VI–1, VI–12, VI–15
LEP, IV–15, A–8, VII–5, *See also*, Limited English Proficiency
Letter of Credit, IV–11
Letter of No Prejudice, IV–10, VII–4
License, IV–21, IV–30, IV–31
Licensing, IV–21, VI–4, VI–24, VII–10, VII–15
Lift, II–5
Limited, I–1, I–3, I–7, II–5, II–7, II–8, II–10, III–5, IV–5, IV–9, IV–11, IV–15, IV–16, IV–20, IV–23, IV–30, V–3, V–4, VI–3, VI–4, VI–5, VI–6, VI–9, VI–11, VI–14, VI–19, VI–21, VII–1, VII–9, A–7, A–8, VII–1, VII–5, VII–9, VII–10, VII–13, VII–5
Limited Contract Opportunities, II–7, VII–1
Limited English Proficiency, IV–15, A–7, VII–5, *See also*, LEP
Liquidated Damages, IV–12, IV–13, VII–8, VII–4
List, I–14, IV–4, IV–5, IV–17, IV–27, V–7, VII–2, VII–5, VII–7, VII–3
Litigation, VI–19, VII–1, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8, VII–9, VII–13, VII–1, VII–4
Lobbying, IV–5, A–2, A–4, VII–3, VII–1, VII–4, VII–6
Local Government, I–4, I–6, I–7, I–9, II–10, III–7, IV–2, IV–30, IV–32, V–1, V–2, V–3, V–4, V–6, V–7, A–4, A–7, VII–3, VII–9
Local Law, II–11, III–1, III–6, IV–23, VI–1, VI–4, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–11, VI–12, VI–14, VII–4, VII–1
Local Preparedness Acquisition Act, V–4, A–2
Local Share, IV–10, IV–11
Major Disaster, V–3, V–4, VI–4, VI–5, A–2, A–3, VII–9
Mapping, IV–24, IV–25, VI–12, VI–14, VI–15
Master Agreement, I–3, I–7, I–13, II–1, II–5, II–11, III–1, III–5, IV–3, IV–4, IV–18, IV–31, VI–7, A–8, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3
Matrices, IV–4, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7
Mechanic, IV–13, IV–29

Method, I–3, I–6, II–1, III–4, IV–12, V–1, V–7, VI–6, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–11, VI–14, VI–15, VI–16, VI–17, VI–20, VI–21, VII–2, VII–11, VII–12
Metric, III–3, IV–19, IV–20, A–1, A–7, VII–2, VII–6
Micro-Purchase, VI–7, VI–8, VI–21, VII–11, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5
Mitigation, IV–16, VII–5
Modification, I–7, VI–21, VII–5
National Emergency, VI–19, VII–13
National Environmental Policy Act, IV–16
National Origin, IV–5, IV–6, IV–14, IV–23
National Research Act, IV–31, A–3
National Security, VI–19, VII–13
National Transit Institute, VI–21
Necessity, III–3, IV–1, VII–2, VII–3
Needs, I–7, III–7, IV–1, IV–2, IV–3, IV–21, V–1, V–5, V–6, V–7, V–9, VI–3, VI–7, VI–17, VI–19, VI–21, VI–22, VII–3, VII–10
Negotiate, VI–10, VI–21, *See also*, Negotiated, and Negotiation
Negotiated, I–3, V–5, VI–10, VI–12, VI–20, VII–6, *See also*, Negotiate, and Negotiation
Negotiation, IV–26, VI–14, VI–15, *See also*, Negotiate, and Negotiated
Noncompetitive Proposal, VI–16, VI–18, A–5
Nondiscrimination, IV–5, IV–6, IV–14, IV–15, IV–23, A–1, A–3, A–4, A–6, VII–3, VII–5, VII–6
Non-Governmental Recipient, I–4, I–7, II–3, II–10, III–2, III–3, III–4, IV–7, IV–8, IV–13, IV–27, V–1, V–2, VI–6, VI–7, VI–10, VI–11, VI–25, VII–1, VII–2, A–4, VII–1, VII–15
Nonprofit, I–7, IV–30, A–6, *See also*, Non-Profit
Non-Profit, I–4, I–7, II–3, II–10, III–7, IV–10, IV–16, IV–30, IV–32, IV–33, IV–34, VI–19, A–4, A–7, VII–1, VII–4, VII–8, *See also*, Nonprofit
Nonrestrictive, III–2, VII–2
Notice, I–1, I–2, II–5, II–8, II–9, IV–7, IV–10, IV–19, VII–3, VII–10, A–8, VII–3
Notification, I–2, II–11, III–5, III–6, VII–2, VII–3, VII–5, *See also*, Notify
Notify, II–4, II–11, III–6, VI–14, VII–1, VII–2, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8, *See also*, Notification
Objectivity, IV–5, VI–5, VII–10
Ocean Vessel, IV–19, VII–5, VII–2, VII–4
Offeror, I–10, III–4, VI–1, VI–2, VI–4, VI–7, VI–11, VI–12, VI–13, VI–17, VI–20, VI–23, VI–24, VII–3, VII–10, VII–15
Office, I–1, I–2, I–14, III–6, IV–4, IV–11, IV–12, IV–28, IV–33, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, A–6, A–7, B–1, B–2
Office of Federal Procurement Policy, III–6, IV–12
Off-the-Shelf, IV–25, VI–13
Omnibus Trade and Competitiveness Act, IV–19, A–1
On-Site Inspector's Report, VII–6
Open Contract Opportunities, II–7, VII–1
Open Market, V–9, VI–1, VII–9, VII–10, VII–11, VII–12, VII–13, VII–14, VII–15
Operation, I–1, II–8
Opportunity, II–7, IV–5, IV–6, IV–14, IV–16, IV–28, VI–1, VI–12, VII–4, A–3, A–6, A–7, VII–3, VII–5, VII–7, VII–10
Option, I–5, I–9, IV–3, IV–21, V–2, V–5, VI–22, VII–9
Organizational Conflicts of Interest, III–2, IV–32, VI–5, VII–8, VII–10
Other Agreement, I–8, II–2, II–4, IV–30, IV–33, VII–1
Other Than Full and Open Competition, VI–16, VII–13
Overhead, III–7, IV–18, IV–30, IV–32, VI–20, *See also*, Burden

Oversight, I–11, I–12, I–13, V–9, VII–2, VII–6, VII–7
Over-the-Road Bus, II–5, VII–1
Paratransit, IV–16, VII–5
Participant, II–2, VII–1
Participation, II–6, IV–2, IV–7, IV–14, IV–23, IV–32, VI–3, VI–4, VI–18, VI–20, VII–4, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8, VII–9, A–4, VII–6, VII–5
Partnership, I–8, II–2, II–4, II–8, II–9, VI–15, VI–18, VII–3, VII–13
Past Performance, I–3, IV–4, VI–10, VI–11, VI–21, VI–24, VI–25, VII–15
Patent, IV–30, VI–17, A–2, VII–8, VII–3, VII–5
Payment, III–4, IV–10, IV–11, IV–12, IV–26, VI–4, VI–6, VI–10, VII–4, VII–7, VII–2
Payment Bond, IV–26, VI–4, VII–7, VII–2
Percentage, II–7, IV–12, V–8, VI–6, VI–11, VII–4, VII–10
Percentage of Construction Cost, VI–6, VII–10
Performance, I–3, I–5, I–10, I–12, III–1, III–2, III–4, IV–4, IV–9, IV–12, IV–13, IV–17, IV–21, IV–22, IV–26, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–4, VI–5, VI–6, VI–7, VI–10, VI–11, VI–14, VI–21, VI–24, VI–25, VII–2, VII–4, VII–7, VII–12, VII–15, VII–2
Performance Bond, IV–26, VI–4, VII–7, VII–2
Period of Performance, IV–9, VII–4
Person, IV–14, IV–28, VI–3, VI–19, VI–21
Personal Conflicts of Interest, III–1, VII–2
Personnel, I–3, III–1, III–7, IV–8, VI–11, VI–22, VI–24
Piggybacking, V–6
PLA, I–8, IV–29, *See also*, Project Labor Agreement
Plan, I–3, VI–11, VI–19, VII–13
Planning, II–6, II–8, IV–23, IV–24, VI–19, VII–10, VII–3
Pollution, IV–20, A–6, VII–6
Pooling, V–7
PPP, II–8, II–9, *See also*, Public-Private Partnership
Preaward Authority, IV–10, VII–4
Preference, III–2, III–3, IV–17, IV–18, IV–19, IV–29, VI–2, VI–5, VI–8, VI–18, A–3, A–6, VII–2, VII–5, VII–7, VII–2, VII–4
Preliminary Engineering, IV–24, VI–12, VI–14, VI–15
Prenotification, VI–14, VII–12
Prequalification, VI–2, VI–3, VI–16, VII–10
Presidential $1 Coin Act, IV–20, A–2
Prevailing Wage, IV–28, VI–7, A–2, VII–7
Preventive Maintenance, II–6, II–7, VII–1
Price, I–3, III–4, III–5, IV–12, IV–26, IV–27, V–4, V–5, V–6, VI–6, VI–8, VI–9, VI–10, VI–11, VI–12, VI–13, VI–16, VI–20, VI–21, VI–22, VII–2, VII–9, VII–10, VII–11, VII–12, VII–14, VII–7
Price Analysis, V–6, VI–16, VI–20, VI–21, VII–14, VII–7
Pricing Guide for FTA Grantees, VI–22, A–8
Process, I–3, I–13, II–7, III–7, IV–16, IV–21, IV–23, V–6, VI–2, VI–5, VI–11, VI–16, VII–3, A–3, VII–6
Procurement Procedures, II–2, II–3, II–5, II–11, III–2, III–3, III–6, IV–24, IV–25, V–7, VI–1, VI–7, VI–9, VI–11, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, VI–19, VII–2, VII–11, VII–12, VII–13
Procurement System, I–11, I–12, III–1
Product, I–10, III–2, V–2, VI–2, VI–4, VI–17, VI–21
Production, VI–17, VI–24, VII–15
Program Management, II–9, IV–24, VI–12, VI–14, VI–15, VII–1, VII–9
Program Manager, IV–25
Progress Payment, IV–11, IV–12, VII–4
Prohibited, IV–9, IV–11, IV–21, IV–22, IV–29, V–8, VI–3, VI–5, VI–6, VI–8, VI–13, VI–14, VI–19, A–5, VII–4, VII–10, VII–11, VII–12, VII–13

Prohibition, IV–2, IV–5, IV–24, VII–3, VII–6, *See also*, Prohibited
Project Designer, IV–25
Project Labor Agreement, I–8, IV–29, A–7, *See also*, PLA
Project Type, II–5, VII–1
Property, I–6, I–8, I–9, I–10, II–2, II–5, II–6, II–7, II–8, II–9, III–2, III–3, III–4, III–6, IV–1, IV–2, IV–3, IV–9, IV–13, IV–14, IV–16, IV–18, IV–19, IV–20, IV–24, IV–25, IV–29, IV–30, V–1, V–2, V–3, V–4, V–5, V–6, V–7, V–9, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–7, VI–8, VI–9, VI–10, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–17, VI–18, VI–20, VII–8, A–2, A–3, A–4, A–6, VII–1, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8, VII–9, VII–10, VII–1, VII–2
Proposal, I–3, I–10, III–3, III–6, IV–20, IV–34, VI–1, VI–4, VI–9, VI–10, VI–11, VI–12, VI–16, VI–17, VI–18, VI–23, A–5, VII–2, VII–11, VII–13, VII–1
Protest, VI–19, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–9, VII–7
Provision, I–1, II–6, II–10, IV–8, IV–9, V–6, VI–6, VI–10, VII–8, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5
Public Interest, IV–31, VI–19, VII–13
Public Opening, VI–9, VII–11
Public Policy, IV–4, VI–22, VI–23, VII–15
Public Transportation, I–1, I–2, I–3, I–5, I–8, I–9, II–3, II–4, II–7, II–9, IV–1, IV–2, IV–3, IV–5, IV–14, IV–15, IV–16, IV–20, IV–21, IV–22, IV–30, V–6, VI–11, VII–4, A–1, VII–3, VII–5, VII–6
Publication, I–1, IV–7, IV–31, VI–1, VI–7, VII–8
Publicity, VI–9, VI–11, VII–11
Public-Private Partnership, II–8, II–9, VII–1, *See also*, PPP
Purchase, I–5, I–10, II–2, III–1, III–3, III–4, III–5, III–7, IV–1, IV–2, IV–3, IV–13, IV–18, V–2, V–3, V–4, VI–6, VI–7, VI–8, VI–9, VI–16, VI–21, VII–2, VII–3, VII–11, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5
Purchase Order, I–10, II–2, III–1, III–7, V–2, V–4, VI–6
Purchasing Contract, I–9, IV–2, V–2, V–4, VII–3, VII–9
Purchasing Schedule, I–6, I–9, IV–2, V–1, V–2, V–4, V–6, VII–3, VII–9
Qualifications-Based, IV–24, IV–25, IV–26, VI–2, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, VII–7, VII–12
Qualified, III–1, III–7, IV–6, IV–7, IV–15, VI–2, VI–4, VI–8, VI–11, VI–12, VI–13, VI–16, VI–22, VI–23, VII–12
Quality, I–3, I–8, III–2, IV–17, IV–23, V–8, VI–11, VI–21, VI–24, A–6, VII–2, VII–6
Quantity, I–6, IV–2, IV–20, V–1, V–5, V–6, V–8, VI–3, VII–9
Quote, III–6, VII–2
Race, IV–5, IV–6, IV–14, IV–23
Real Property, I–8, II–5, II–6, IV–24, IV–25, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, A–3, A–4, VII–1
Recipient, I–1, I–2, I–3, I–4, I–5, I–6, I–7, I–8, I–9, I–10, I–11, I–12, I–13, I–14, II–1, II–2, II–3, II–4, II–5, II–6, II–7, II–8, II–9, II–10, II–11, III–1, III–2, III–3, III–4, III–5, III–6, III–7, IV–1, IV–2, IV–3, IV–4, IV–5, IV–6, IV–7, IV–8, IV–9, IV–10, IV–11, IV–12, IV–13, IV–15, IV–16, IV–17, IV–18, IV–19, IV–20, IV–21, IV–22, IV–23, IV–24, IV–25, IV–26, IV–27, IV–28, IV–29, IV–30, IV–31, IV–32, IV–33, V–1, V–2, V–3, V–4, V–5, V–6, V–7, V–8, V–9, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–4, VI–5, VI–6, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–11, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, VI–16, VI–17, VI–18, VI–19, VI–20, VI–21, VI–22, VI–23, VI–24, VI–25, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8, VII–9, VII–10, A–4, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–10, VII–15

Record, I–12, III–4, III–5, IV–4, IV–13, IV–29, VI–21, VI–23, VI–24, VII–2, VII–15, VII–7
Recreation Area, IV–17, A–3, A–5, VII–5
Recycled, IV–17, A–3, VII–5, VII–3, VII–5
Reference, I–7, I–10, I–12, I–13, IV–30, VI–7, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–6
Region, II–11, IV–27, VII–2, VII–3, B–1, B–2
Regional Administrator, IV–27, VII–2, VII–3
Regulations, I–2, I–4, I–13, I–14, II–1, II–2, II–3, II–5, II–6, II–9, II–10, II–11, III–1, III–3, III–4, III–8, IV–1, IV–3, IV–4, IV–5, IV–6, IV–7, IV–8, IV–9, IV–13, IV–14, IV–15, IV–16, IV–17, IV–18, IV–19, IV–20, IV–21, IV–22, IV–23, IV–24, IV–26, IV–27, IV–28, IV–29, IV–30, IV–31, IV–32, V–2, V–4, VI–1, VI–4, VI–11, VI–14, VI–22, VI–23, VI–24, VII–4, A–4, A–5, A–6, VII–1, VII–3, VII–5
Rehabilitation, IV–15, IV–16, A–1, VII–5
Rehabilitation Act, IV–15, IV–16, A–1, VII–5
Rejection, III–4, III–5, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–25, VII–10, VII–11, VII–15
Relocation, II–5, II–6, A–3, A–4
Remedies, III–8, IV–12, IV–13, VI–5, VII–3, VII–8, A–2, A–4, VII–4, VII–10
Repair, IV–24, IV–25, IV–28, IV–29, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14
Report, VII–2, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8, VII–6
Reporting, IV–26, VI–14
Request for Proposals, I–10, VI–10, VI–11, VI–25, VII–11
Requirement, I–14, II–1, IV–24, IV–26, IV–29, VI–1, VI–8, VI–11, VI–13, VI–19, VII–1, VII–13, VII–3, VII–6
Research, I–7, I–8, II–4, IV–24, IV–30, IV–31, IV–33, VI–18, VI–19, A–3, VII–8, VII–13, VII–3, VII–5
Reserve, VI–7, VII–6
Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, IV–17, A–3
Resources, III–3, IV–4, IV–17, IV–23, V–7, VI–21, VI–24, VII–15
Responsibility, I–2, III–5, IV–2, IV–4, IV–22, VI–9, VI–23, VII–1, VII–5, VII–7, VII–3
Responsible, I–1, I–2, I–6, I–9, II–2, IV–2, IV–3, IV–4, V–4, V–6, VI–8, VI–9, VI–10, VI–11, VI–15, VI–16, VI–21, VI–23, VII–4, VII–7, VII–15
Restraint of Trade, VI–5, VII–10
Restrictive, IV–3, IV–27, VI–3, VI–4, VI–16, VI–18
Retainer, VI–3, VII–10
Revenue Contract, I–9, II–7, II–8, VII–1
Revenue Vehicle, II–2
Reverse Auction, III–6, VII–2
Review, I–11, I–12, I–14, II–11, III–5, IV–3, IV–16, IV–18, IV–21, IV–22, V–6, V–9, VI–2, VI–12, VI–16, VI–17, VI–20, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7, VII–9, VII–6, VII–12, VII–13, VII–6
Role, I–1, I–5, I–6, I–10, I–11, II–8, VI–10, VII–1, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8
Rolling Stock, I–12, IV–9, IV–13, IV–18, IV–20, IV–21, V–8, A–5, VII–6, VII–9, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6
Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act
A Legacy for Users, I–1, IV–6, VI–18, *See also*, SAFETEA-LU
SAFETEA-LU, I–1, I–2, II–5, IV–4, IV–6, IV–19, IV–25, IV–26, VI–18, VI–20, VI–23, A–1, *See also*, Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users
Safety, I–10, IV–8, IV–13, IV–14, IV–22, IV–24, IV–27, IV–28, IV–29, A–2, A–3, A–5, A–6, VII–7, VII–2, VII–5, VII–6

Schedule, I–6, I–9, IV–2, IV–7, V–1, V–2, V–3, V–4, V–6, VI–24, A–2, VII–3, VII–9
School, I–7, IV–23, V–3, A–5, VII–6, VII–2, VII–5
Scope, II–5, IV–1, IV–9, IV–23, V–7, V–8, VI–7, VI–17, VII–5, VII–4
Sealed Bids, VI–8, VI–11, VI–15, VI–16, VII–11
Seat Belt, IV–8, A–7, VII–3
Security, I–10, IV–8, IV–11, IV–12, VI–19, A–3, A–4, A–5, VII–3, VII–4, VII–13
Seismic, IV–27, IV–28, A–3, A–5, VII–7, VII–2, VII–5
Selection, II–9, III–1, III–4, IV–4, IV–21, IV–23, IV–24, VI–4, VI–8, VI–9, VI–10, VI–13, VI–15, VI–16, VI–25, VII–1, A–3, VII–2, VII–6, VII–12, VII–7
Self-Certification, I–11, I–12, III–1, III–2, VII–2
Sensitive Security Information, IV–8, A–3, A–4, A–5, VII–3
Service, I–2, I–1, I–10, III–2, IV–1, IV–3, IV–16, IV–20, IV–21, IV–22, IV–30, A–5, VII–5, VII–6, VII–5, *See also*, Services
Service Life, IV–3, IV–20, VII–6
Services, I–2, I–5, I–6, I–7, I–9, I–10, II–2, II–5, II–8, II–9, II–10, III–2, III–3, III–4, III–6, III–7, IV–1, IV–2, IV–3, IV–5, IV–6, IV–8, IV–9, IV–11, IV–13, IV–14, IV–15, IV–16, IV–17, IV–18, IV–19, IV–20, IV–21, IV–22, IV–23, IV–24, IV–25, IV–26, IV–30, IV–31, IV–32, IV–33, V–1, V–2, V–3, V–4, V–5, V–6, V–7, V–9, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–4, VI–7, VI–8, VI–9, VI–10, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, VI–16, VI–17, VI–18, VI–19, VI–20, VI–21, VI–22, VII–8, A–2, A–4, A–6, A–7, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8, VII–10, VII–12, VII–2, VII–4, VII–5, VII–7, *See also*, Service
Settlement, I–6, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8, VII–9
Sex, IV–5, IV–6, IV–14, IV–23, A–1, A–4, VII–3
Shared Use, V–1, VII–9
Single Audit Act, III–7, IV–32, A–2, VII–8
Single Bid, VI–10, VI–17, VII–13
Single Proposal, VI–17, VII–13
Size, III–5, IV–2, IV–7, VI–4, VI–8, VII–3
Small and Minority Firm, IV–2, IV–7, VII–3
Small Procurement, IV–1, IV–2, VII–3
Small Purchase, III–4, IV–3, VI–8, VI–16, VI–21, VII–11
Socio-Economic, IV–6, IV–13, VII–3, VII–5
Sole Source, III–4, IV–9, V–5, VI–1, VI–2, VI–16, VI–17, VI–18, VI–20, VI–21, VI–25, VII–9, VII–13
Solicitation, I–3, I–6, II–9, III–6, IV–7, IV–12, IV–28, V–1, V–2, V–6, V–7, VI–1, VI–2, VI–3, VI–5, VI–7, VI–9, VI–11, VI–17, VI–18, VI–22, VI–23, VI–24, VII–10
Source, I–14, III–4, IV–9, V–3, V–5, VI–1, VI–2, VI–10, VI–16, VI–17, VI–18, VI–20, VI–21, VI–25, VII–1, VII–9, VII–13
Spare Ratio, IV–1, IV–20, VII–6
Special Studies, IV–30, IV–31, VII–8
Specification, VI–3, VI–9, VI–10
Stafford Act, VI–4, A–3
Standard, I–7, I–13, II–4, III–6, IV–13, IV–24, IV–26, V–8, VII–2, VII–9, VII–6
Standards of Conduct, III–1, VII–2
State, I–1, I–4, I–6, I–7, I–9, I–10, I–11, II–2, II–3, II–10, II–11, III–1, III–3, III–4, III–5, III–6, IV–2, IV–3, IV–5, IV–10, IV–16, IV–18, IV–21, IV–23, IV–25, IV–26, IV–27, IV–30, IV–33, V–1, V–2, V–3, V–4, V–6, V–7, VI–1, VI–4, VI–6, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–11, VI–12, VI–13, VI–14, VI–15, VII–4, A–3, A–4, A–7, VII–1, VII–3, VII–6, VII–7, VII–9, VII–10, VII–12
Structure, II–6, IV–10, VI–15
Subagreement, IV–4
Subcontract, II–4, IV–8, IV–9, VI–14

Subrecipient, I–8, I–9, II–1, II–2, II–3, II–6, II–7, II–10, IV–7, IV–15, IV–16, IV–30, IV–31, V–3, VII–1
Sureties, IV–27, VII–7
Surplus, IV–7, V–2, A–1, VII–9
Surveying, IV–24, VI–12, VI–14, VI–15
Suspension, IV–4, IV–5, IV–13, VI–23, A–4, A–7, VII–3, VII–4, VII–15, VII–1, VII–4
Suspension of Work, IV–13, VII–4
System, I–5, I–11, I–12, I–13, II–7, III–1, III–3, III–5, III–6, IV–1, IV–5, IV–19, VII–2, VII–3, VII–7
Taxes, VI–24, VII–15
TEA-21, II–5, A–1, *See also*, Transportation Equity Act for the 21st Century
Team, I–8, II–2, VI–15, VI–18, VII–3, VII–13
Technical Assistance, I–11, I–12, I–13
Technical Capacity, I–11, III–1, V–1, VI–23, VII–1, VII–15
Technical Qualification, VI–2, VI–12, VI–16, VII–12
Technology, I–5, III–5, IV–16, V–3, A–1, A–2, A–6, VII–2, VII–9
Term, I–3, I–7, I–8, I–10, II–2, IV–3, IV–9, V–1, V–2, V–3, VI–23
Terminate, II–11, *See also*, Termination
Termination, IV–13, VII–4, *See also*, Terminate
Texting, IV–8
Third Party Contract, I–1, I–2, I–9, I–10, I–11, I–12, I–13, I–14, II–1, II–2, II–3, II–4, II–5, II–6, II–8, II–9, III–1, III–3, III–4, III–5, III–7, IV–1, IV–2, IV–3, IV–4, IV–5, IV–6, IV–7, IV–8, IV–9, IV–11, IV–13, IV–15, IV–16, IV–17, IV–18, IV–19, IV–20, IV–21, IV–22, IV–23, IV–26, IV–27, IV–28, IV–29, IV–30, IV–31, IV–32, IV–33, IV–34, V–1, V–5, V–7, V–8, VI–1, VI–3, VI–14, VI–23, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5, VII–7, VII–8, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5, VII–6, VII–7, VII–8, VII–9, VII–10, VII–11, VII–12, VII–13, VII–14, VII–1, VII–2, VII–3, VII–4, VII–5
Tier, I–13, II–4, III–5, IV–4, IV–5, IV–8, IV–15, IV–17, IV–28
Time, I–5, III–6, III–7, IV–1, IV–2, IV–3, IV–9, IV–13, V–5, V–7, V–8, VI–3, VI–6, VI–9, VI–24, VII–9, VII–4, VII–10, VII–11
Time and Materials, VI–6, VII–10
Time Extension, IV–9, VII–4
Timeliness, VI–24, VII–15
Title IX, IV–6, A–1, *See also*, Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972
Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, A–1, *See also*, Title IX
Title VI, IV–5, IV–14, IV–15, A–3, A–4, A–8, VII–5, VII–1, VII–4, *See also*, Title VI of the Civil Rights Act
Title VI of the Civil Rights Act, IV–14, IV–15, A–3, A–4, VII–5, *See also*, Title VI
Title VII, IV–5, A–3, *See also*, Title VII of the Civil Rights Act
Title VII of the Civil Rights Act, IV–5, A–3, *See also*, Title VII
Training, I–13, II–5
Transit Employee Protective Arrangements, VII–2, VII–5
Transit Vehicle Manufacturer, IV–20, VII–6, *See also*, TVM
Transportation Equity Act for the 21st Century, II–5, A–1, *See also*, TEA-21
Travel, IV–19, VII–5, VII–4
TVM, IV–20, VII–6, *See also*, Transit Vehicle Manufacturer
Two-Step Procurement Procedure, VI–12, VI–13, VII–12
Type, II–3, II–5, II–7, III–4, IV–1, IV–23, IV–25, IV–30, VI–3, VI–6, VI–7, VI–8, VI–10, VI–13, VI–25, VII–1, VII–2, VII–7, VII–10, VII–11, VII–4, VII–5
Unequal, VI–5, VII–10

Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations, I–4, II–10, A–4, *See also*, Common Grant Rule for Non-Governmental Recipients
Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments, I–4, II–10, A–4, *See also*, Common Grant Rule for Governmental Recipients
Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act, II–6, A–3
Unique, I–10, VI–2, VI–17, VII–13
Unsolicited Proposal, I–10, VI–1, VII–10
Urgency, VI–18, VII–13
Usability, IV–16, VII–5
Value, I–3, I–10, III–1, III–6, IV–3, IV–28, IV–33, V–8, VI–11, VI–15, VII–2, VII–5, VII–7, VII–2, VII–7, VII–11
Value Engineering, I–10, IV–28, VII–7
Violation, III–1, IV–13, IV–14, IV–16, VII–7, VII–4
Wage, IV–13, IV–14, IV–24, IV–28, VI–7, A–1, A–2, VII–5, VII–7
Wage and Hour, IV–13, IV–14, IV–28, A–1, A–2, VII–5
Waiver, I–1, I–3, IV–29, V–2, V–4, *See also*, Exception
Water, IV–17, A–2, VII–5, VII–1, VII–4
Waterfowl, IV–17, A–3, A–5, VII–5
Web site, I–2, I–12, I–14, II–5, III–6, III–7, IV–5, IV–17, IV–34, V–4, V–8, VI–20, VI–22
Wheelchair, II–5
Wheelchair Lift, II–5
Wildlife, IV–17, A–3, A–5, VII–5

REFERENCE MATERIAL - PROCUREMENT TRIENNIAL REVIEW FY2014

5. PROCUREMENT

BASIC REQUIREMENT

States use their own procurement procedures that reflect applicable state laws and regulations, provided that the process ensures competitive procurement and the procedures conform to applicable Federal law.

AREAS TO BE EXAMINED

1. ***Policies and procedures***
2. ***Rolling Stock***
3. ***Oversight***

COMPLIANCE

If a state fails to comply with FTA procurement requirements, and its own procurement regulations, including in other procurement-related areas such as DBE, Buy America, and lobbying, FTA may decide to not participate in the procurement.

PROCUREMENT REFERENCES

1. 49 USC Chapter 53, Federal Transit Laws
2. Transportation Equity Act for the 21st Century, Public Law No. 105-178
3. 29 CFR Parts 4 and 5, "Labor Standards"
4. 41 CFR Parts 50-201 and 50-206, "Public Contracts and Property Management"
5. 49 CFR Section 18.36, "Procurement"
6. FTA Master Agreement
7. FTA C 4220.1F, "Third-Party Contracting Guidance"
8. FTA C 9040.1F, "Nonurbanized Area Formula Program Guidance and Grant Application Instructions"
9. FTA C 9070.1F, "Elderly Individuals and Individuals with Disabilities Program Guidance and Application Instructions"
10. FTA C 9050.1, "The Job Access and Reverse Commute Program Guidance and Application Instructions"
11. FTA C 9045.1, "New Freedom Program Guidance and Application Instructions"
12. FTA C 9300.1B, "Capital Investment Program Guidance and Application Instructions"
13. FTA C 8100.1C, "Program Guidance for Metropolitan Planning and State Planning and Research Program Grants"

BUY AMERICA REFERENCES

1. 49 CFR Part 571, "Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards"
2. 49 CFR Part 661, "Buy America Requirements"
3. 49 CFR Part 663, "Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits of Rolling Stock Purchases"
4. FTA "Dear Colleague" Letter, March 18, 1997
5. Federal Register Vol. 71, No. 54, pp. 14112-14118, Buy America Requirements; Amendments to Definitions
6. Federal Register Vol. 72, No. 182, pp. 53688-53698, Buy America Requirements; End Product Analysis and Waiver Procedures, Final Rule
7. Federal Register Vol. 72, No. 188, pp. 55103-55104, Buy America Requirements; End Product Analysis and Waiver Procedures, Final Rule correction
8. Federal Register Vol. 77, No. 28, pp. 71673 -71678, Decision To Rescind Buy

America Waiver for Minivans and Minivan Chassis

SUSPENSION/DEBARMENT REFERENCES

1. 2 CFR Part 180, "OMB Guidelines to Agencies on Government-wide Debarment and Suspension"

2. 2 CFR Part 1200, "Nonprocurement Suspension and Debarment"

USEFUL WEB LINKS

FTA's Best Practice Procurement Manual

FTA Procurement Frequently Asked Questions

Bus Testing Website

National RTAP ProcurementPRO

FTA Buy America Home Page

Conducting Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits for Bus Procurements, FTA T-90-7713-93-1, Rev. B

Conducting Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits for Rail Vehicle Procurements, FTA DC-90-7713-94-1, Rev. B

U.S. DOT Buy America Webpage

Guidance on Procurements Following Rescission of the Buy America Waiver for Minivans, FTA, February 14, 2013

Buying Used Buses

System for Award Management (SAM)

SAM User Guide

FTA DBE Website

DOT Office of Small and Disadvantaged Business Utilization (OSDBU)

DOT DBE Regulation Questions and Answers

Tips for Goal Setting

List of Transit Vehicle Manufacturers

Sample DBE Program

Note on the *Best Practices Procurement Manual* - The *Best Practices Procurement Manual* is a good resource for grantees to use in conducting FTA-assisted procurements. However, it is only a guidance document and is not the source of any FTA requirements. Grantees may refer to the BPPM as a guide for the procurement process, but should not rely on the BPPM for ensuring that FTA requirements will be met. FTA requirements are found in the following sources: U.S. Code and Public Laws, Code of Federal Regulations, FTA Circulars, Dear Colleague Letters, and the Master Agreement.

Compliance

If a grantee fails to comply with FTA procurement requirements, including in other procurement-related areas, such as Buy America, FTA may decide to not participate in the procurement.

QUESTIONS FOR THE REVIEW

1. *If FTA conducted a Procurement System Review (PSR) in the past two Federal fiscal years, what is the status of any corrective actions from the final report of that review?*

EXPLANATION
As part of its project oversight functions, FTA periodically conducts PSRs of selected grantees. If a review has been conducted, confer with the FTA regional office and the FTA headquarters subject matter expert (SME) on what follow up activities are appropriate during this review. The reviewer may be requested to validate the implementation of corrective actions for closed deficiencies, follow up on deficiencies that remain open, or a combination of both.

REFERENCE
FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. I, Section 6.c.

SOURCES OF INFORMATION
Review OTrak and information from the FTA regional office for issued reports on PSRs, correspondence between FTA and the state related to corrective actions, and responses to the state management review.

DETERMINATION
If there are outstanding or ongoing PSR deficiencies, confer with the FTA regional office and the FTA headquarters SME to make the following deficiency. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 405***: Outstanding procurement specialty review deficiencies)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION
Direct the state to provide the FTA regional office with documentation to address outstanding or ongoing specialty review deficiencies.

Policies and Procedures

2. *What policies and procedures guide FTA funded procurements conducted by the state? How do these procedures ensure full and open competition? How does the state ensure that those procedures are followed?*

   What are the state's key procurement requirements for micro-purchases, small purchases, sealed bids (IFBs) and competitive proposals (RFPs)?

   Over the past three years, how many single bids or sole source procurements were there?

EXPLANATION
When procuring property and services under a grant, a state may use the same procurement policies and procedures that it uses for acquisitions not financed with Federal assistance.

States must conduct procurement transactions in a manner providing full and open competition. States are prohibited from restricting competition in Federally supported procurement transactions. Some situations that restrict competition include, but are not limited to: unreasonable qualification requirements, unnecessary experience requirements, excessive bonding, noncompetitive pricing practices between firms, noncompetitive awards to firms on retainer, organizational conflicts of interest, "brand name" only specifications, or any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

At a minimum, the state must comply with the federally mandated requirements on contract term limitations for revenue vehicle purchases, competition, prohibitions against geographic preferences, procurement of architectural engineering services, and awards to responsible contractors. The state must also ensure that each purchase order and contract financed with FTA assistance includes all provisions required by Federal statutes and their implementing regulations.

REFERENCE
49 U.S.C. Sections 5325(a) and (h)
FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. II, Sections 2.a(1)(a) and 2(a)(4) and Ch. VI, Section 1
FTA C 9040.1F, Ch. VI, Section 5
FTA C 9070.1F, Ch. VI, Section 9
FTA C 9050.1, Ch. VI, Section 8
FTA C 9045.1, Ch. VI, Section 8
FTA C 9300.1B, Ch. VI Section 17
FTA C 8100.1C, Ch. II, Section 3.b

SOURCES OF INFORMATION
Before the site visit, review the state's written procurement policies, and the list of single and sole source awards. During the site visit, review procurement files, particularly legal notices and solicitation documents, to determine whether procurements have been conducted in accordance with state and FTA procurement requirements. Pay

particular attention to the frequency of sole-source, single bid, and "brand name" procurements to determine how and if the state is providing for full and open competition.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if it is not following its written procurement procedures, particularly in areas that impact full and open competition. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 23***: Procurement procedures not followed)

The state is deficient if it has a pattern or practice of not providing for full and open competition. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 37***: Lacking full and open competition for one or more methods of procurement)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

The state must cease immediately any practice that is in violation of FTA guidelines. Direct the state to provide the FTA regional office with a plan to ensure that existing procurement procedures are followed. Direct the state to provide the FTA regional office revised procurement procedures that ensure full and open competition in all procurement transactions. Direct the state to provide documentation of corrective action implementation and training on new procedure(s).

3. *What is the process and horizon for the state's FTA funded procurement planning? What procurements does the state anticipate conducting in the upcoming year? What procurements does the state anticipate its subrecipients to be conducting in the upcoming year? Which of these procurements are of a type and size not recently executed by the state or its subrecipients?*

EXPLANATION

This question provides information on what proactive steps the state uses to mitigate risks associated with future procurements.

REFERENCE

None

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Before the site visit, examine any information in the state management plan regarding this area. During the desk review, ask this question of the regional staff, particularly for pending grant application information. Examine procurement information provided in response to this question and upcoming projects noted by the state. During the site visit, discuss this with the grantee.

DETERMINATION

None

4. *What processes does the state have in place to prohibit the inclusion of geographic preferences in its FTA-funded procurements?*

EXPLANATION

States are prohibited from specifying in-state or local geographical preferences, or evaluating bids or proposals in light of in-state or local geographic preferences, even if those preferences are imposed by state or local laws or regulations. In particular, 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(i) prohibits an FTA grantee from limiting its bus purchases to in-state dealers. Exceptions expressly mandated or encouraged by law include the following:

- *A&E Services.* Geographic location may be a selection criterion if an appropriate number of qualified firms are eligible to compete for the contract in view of the nature and size of the project. Although geographic preferences are permissible in procurements for A&E services, the reviewer should ensure that their use did not restrict competition (i.e., the use of geographic preference left only one or two qualified firms to bid on the contract).
- *Licensing*. A state may enforce its licensing requirements, provided that those requirements do not conflict with federal law.
- *Major Disaster or Emergency Relief*. Federal assistance awarded under the Stafford Act, 42 U.S.C. Section 5150, to support contracts and agreements for debris clearance, distribution of supplies, reconstruction, and other major disaster or emergency assistance activities permits a preference, to the extent feasible and practicable, for organizations, firms, and individuals residing or doing business primarily in an area affected by a major disaster or emergency.

REFERENCES

49 CFR 18.36 (c)
FTA C 4220.1F , Ch. II, Section 2

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Before the site visit, review procurement policies and procedures to see if there is information for geographic preferences. These might include verbiage such as local preference or the inclusion of price preferences or bid advantage for local or in-state firms. During the site visit, review procurement files including solicitation and evaluation documents to determine if procurements contain geographic preferences.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if it has used geographic preferences in any procurement for other than one of the exceptions. The state is deficient if the use of geographic preferences in A&E procurements restricted competition. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 57***: Improper use of geographic preferences)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to provide to the FTA regional office documentation of a revised procurement process which prohibits the improper use of geographic preferences. The state must cease any practice that violates FTA guidelines. Direct the state to provide documentation of corrective action implementation and training on new procedure(s).

5. *How does the state conduct A&E procurements? If it has a statute prescribing a formal procedure for the procurement of A&E services, do the procedures provide for full and open competition? If it does not have such a statute, did the state use competitive proposal procedures based on the Brooks Act when procuring A&E services with FTA funds?*

EXPLANATION

When using FTA assistance to contract for A&E services, states are required to use competitive proposal procedures based on the Brooks Act or an equivalent qualifications based requirement adopted before August 10, 2005. Services subject to this requirement are program management, construction management, feasibility studies, preliminary engineering, design, architectural, engineering, surveying, mapping, and related services which lead to construction. Unlike other two-step procurement procedures, in which price is an evaluation factor, an offeror's qualifications are evaluated to determine contract award. Price must not be considered during the selection phase in these procurements. Firms are selected based only on their qualifications. Price is then negotiated with the most qualified firm. If an agreement cannot be reached, then the state may negotiate with the next most qualified firm and so on until an agreement is reached on a price that the state determines is fair and reasonable.

For design/build procurements, FTA expects grantees to use the procurement method appropriate for the services having the greatest cost, even though the other necessary services would not typically be procured by that method.

REFERENCES

49 U.S.C. Section 5325(b)(1)
49 CFR 18.36(t)
FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. IV, Section 2.g and Ch. VI, Sections 3.f and 3.h

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Review state statutes, the state management plan and other documentation of procurement procedures for a discussion of procedures for contracting for A&E services. Review the list of procurements provided in advance of the review for procurements that would likely require these types of procedures. On site, discuss with the state, and evaluate procurement files to determine what procedures were used.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if the procedures for procuring A&E services do not provide for full and open competition. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 37***: Lacking full and open competition for one or more methods of procurement)

The state is deficient if it has not adopted a statute prescribing a formal procedure for the procurement of A&E services before August 10, 2005, and does not follow the Brooks Act when using FTA funds to contract for A&E services. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 349***: Qualifications-based procurement deficiencies)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office procedures for procuring A&E services that provide for full and open competition.

Direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office procedures for following the Brooks Act when using FTA assistance to contract for A&E services. Direct the state to provide documentation of corrective action implementation and training on new procedure(s).

6. *Verify that applicable clauses have been included in FTA funded procurements exceeding the micro-purchase limit ($3,000) and construction contracts over $2,000, in intergovernmental agreements and subrecipient agreements?*

EXPLANATION

States are required to include specific required clauses in FTA-funded procurements, intergovernmental agreements (e.g., those involving states and other public entities), and subrecipient agreements. The Master Agreement identifies certain clauses that apply to third-party contracts. States

should provide a mechanism to all contractors and subrecipients for access to the Master Agreement.

FTA's BPPM, Appendix A, also includes a discussion of Federally required and other model contract clauses. However, reviewers must not refer to the contents of the BPPM as FTA requirements. The BPPM is a guidance document only. Additional guidance is provided through FTA's Third Party Procurement Frequently Asked Questions website.

States may not modify their own contracts after award to include Federal clauses and so make them eligible for procuring goods and services with Federal funds. States may, however, modify the state GSA-type contracts to add Federal clauses when they issue orders against those state contracts.

Not all clauses apply to every contract. The applicability of clauses depends on the size and type of contract. Procurements above the micro-purchase thresholds must include all applicable FTA clauses as part of the solicitation, purchase order, or contract. A general reference to FTA guidelines is not sufficient to meet this requirement.

In addition to other requirements for specific clauses and certifications, states are required to include a lobbying certification in agreements, contracts, and subcontracts exceeding $100,000. Separate signed certifications regarding lobbying must be obtained by the state from subrecipients and contractors. Subrecipients retain their contractors' certifications and contractors retain subcontractors' certifications. The state is responsible for ensuring that they fulfill the requirements in applicable direct procurements exceeding $100,000.

At the end of this section, a checklist of required clauses is provided. The checklist provides a citation from the Master Agreement for each required clause. Also provided is a checklist for certifications, reports, and forms that are required for DBE, Buy America, debarment, and suspension, and lobbying. A list of other required items to assist in determining whether the state's policies and procedures are actually being followed is also included.

At the end of this section, a listing showing the applicability of FTA clauses to different types of procurements is provided. Note that the construction of ferry vessels using Federal funds is considered a public works project and therefore, the clauses related to construction contracts are applicable.

REFERENCE

49 CFR 18.36(i)(1-13) and (j-o)
29 CFR Parts 4 and 5
41 CFR Parts 50-201 and 50-206
Master Agreement
FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. IV, Section 2 and Appendix D
Best Practices Procurement Manual
FTA Third Party Contracting FAQs

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Before the site visit, review written procurement procedures. During the site visit, examine procurement files for inclusion of required clauses.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if it has not included any reference to FTA requirements or any FTA clauses in contracts, intergovernmental agreements, or subrecipient agreements. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 129:*** No FTA clauses) The state is deficient if it has not included the lobbying certification in its agreements and procurement solicitations. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 12:*** Lobbying certifications not included in agreements/procurement solicitations) The state is deficient if it has not obtained executed certifications from contractors and subrecipients. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 40:*** Lobbying certifications not signed by subgrantees, contractors, or subcontractors)

The reviewer should not find the state deficient if it missed some clauses that should have been included. However, refer the state to the matrix at the end of this section and any other resource that may assist it in determining the applicability of clauses in the future. Clauses addressing debarment and suspension, DBE, and Buy America provisions are addressed elsewhere within this guide.

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to provide the FTA regional office revised procurement procedures that address inclusion of all FTA required third party contract clauses. Direct the state to provide documentation of corrective action implementation and training on new procedure(s).

7. *What is the state's process for ensuring compliance with Buy America requirements? How does the process ensure that the state includes a Buy America provision in all procurements of steel, iron, and manufactured products, except for products with a waiver or purchases under $100,000? Does this procedure encompass procurements such as rolling stock and construction? What is the process to obtain Buy America certifications from successful vendors?*

EXPLANATION

Buy America regulations require that all procurements of steel, iron, and manufactured products, except for those subject to a waiver, contain Buy America provisions. Waivers are listed in Appendix A to 49 CFR 661.7 and include microcomputer equipment and software and purchases under the simplified acquisition threshold (currently $100,000).

The small purchase limitation is based on the value of the procurement, not the price of the item. For example, a purchase of four minivans that totals $120,000, even though each minivan costs $30,000, must comply with the Buy America requirements. States may not split procurements that exceed the threshold in order to avoid Buy America requirements. For construction projects and projects involving the installation of manufactured products, the small purchase limitation is based on the total value of the project, not the value of the steel, iron, and manufactured products purchased for the project.
Buy America provisions apply to:

- All purchases of steel, iron, and manufactured products exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold, regardless of whether they involve capital, operating, or planning funds
- Subcontractors, regardless of the size of the subcontract, if the prime contract is more than the simplified acquisition threshold
- Purchases made using an intergovernmental agreement and jointly purchased manufactured products
- Purchases of used items

The state must include a clause citing the Buy America requirement and a Buy America certification in its invitations for bids (IFB) and requests for proposals (RFP). There are different certifications for procurements of rolling stock than for procurements of other steel, iron, or manufactured products. The specific text for steel, iron, or manufactured products can be found at 49 CFR 661.6. The specific text for rolling stock can be found at 49 CFR 661.12. Each is contained in the FTA *Best Practices Procurement Manual*. The requirements of 49 CFR 663 describe the audit reporting for a procurement of rolling stock.

The state, and those procuring on its behalf, must obtain a signed certification from each successful bidder providing steel, iron, or manufactured products when the total purchase price exceeds the simplified acquisition threshold. The contractor is required to certify that the materials provided either comply or do not comply with Buy America requirements. The state is required to retain these certifications in the contract file and make them available for inspection upon request. If a bidder or offeror certifies that it does not comply with the Buy America requirements, then the state must request, receive, and retain a waiver from FTA before it may award a contract to that bidder or offeror. It should be noted that the Buy America rules apply to utility contracts that are within the scope and budget of an FTA funded project. Buy America applies to the entire project.

States may not obtain signed Buy America certifications after contract award for its own contracts or contracts of other grantees to make the contracts eligible for federal funding. States may, however, obtain signed Buy America certifications before buying off state GSA-type contracts to make them eligible for federal funding. The state should consider the full GSA-type contract amount, not the amount of its purchase, when determining whether Buy America requirements apply to those purchases.

The Buy America waiver for minivans was rescinded on December 3, 2012.

REFERENCE

49 CFR 661.6, 661.7, 661.12 and 661.13
Federal Register Vol. 71, No. 54, pp. 14112-14118
Federal Register Vol. 77, No. 28, pp. 71673 -71678
Notice of Decision To Rescind Buy America Waiver for Minivans and Minivan Chassis
Best Practices Procurement Manual
FTA Third Party Contracting FAQs

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

During the desk review, ask if the state applied for any waivers from Buy America requirements. Review the state's written procurement procedures. On site, discuss the procedures for incorporating Buy America provisions in procurements and obtaining certifications from vendors. Select a sample of procurements and review the files for evidence that Buy America requirements have been met. Focus on procurements of vehicles and other procurements of steel, iron, or manufactured products greater than the $100,000 threshold. Review invitations for bids to determine if Buy America provisions were included. Examine bid responses and executed contracts to determine if properly executed Buy America certifications were obtained.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if it did not include Buy America provisions in solicitations or obtain signed Buy America certifications from vendors. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 138***: Buy America provision not in solicitation and/or contract) (***DEFICIENCY CODE 156***: Contract files lacking Buy America certifications)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office revised procurement procedures that require the state to include Buy America provisions in solicitation documents and to obtain signed certifications from vendors when procuring steel, iron, or manufactured products not subject to a general waiver.

For procurements for which a Buy America certification was not obtained, direct the state to provide the FTA regional office information documenting that the procurement complies with the Buy America provisions.

For procurements in progress but not yet awarded, direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office documentation that it obtained signed Buy America certifications.

Direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office a copy of the signed Buy America certification before awarding the contract for the next procurement subject to Buy America requirements.

8. *As part of its evaluation of bids and proposals prior to award, how does the state ensure award to responsive and responsible contractors possessing the ability, willingness, and integrity to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of the contract?*

EXPLANATION

SAFETEA-LU amended 49 U.S.C. Section 5325 to require FTA-assisted contract awards be made only to "responsible" contractors possessing the ability, willingness, and integrity to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of the contract. Responsibility is determined by the state after receiving bids or proposals and before making contract award. FTA expects the prospective contractor to demonstrate affirmatively to the state that it qualifies as "responsible" and that its proposed subcontractors also qualify as "responsible."

Factors to consider when making responsibility determinations include:

- Integrity and Ethics. Has a satisfactory record of integrity and business ethics, in compliance with 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(j)(2)(A).
- Debarment and Suspension. Is neither debarred nor suspended from federal programs under U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) regulations, "Non-procurement Suspension and Debarment."
- Affirmative Action and DBE. Is in compliance with the Common Grant Rule's Affirmative Action and DOT's Disadvantaged Business Enterprise requirements.
- Public Policy. Is in compliance with the public policies of the federal government, as required by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(j)(2)(B).
- Administrative and Technical Capacity. Has the necessary organization, experience, accounting, and operational controls, and technical skills, or the ability to obtain them, in compliance with 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(j)(2)(D).
- Licensing and Taxes. Is in compliance with applicable licensing and tax laws and regulations.
- Financial Resources. Has, or can obtain, sufficient financial resources to perform the contract, as required by 49 U.S.C. Section 5325(j)(2)(D).
- Production Capability. Has, or can obtain, the necessary production, construction, and technical equipment and facilities.
- Timeliness. Is able to comply with the required delivery or performance schedule, taking into consideration all existing commercial and governmental business commitments.
- Performance Record. Is able to provide a satisfactory current and past performance record.

REFERENCES

49 CFR 18.36(b)(8)
49 USC Section 5325
FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VI, Section 8.b

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

During the site visit, examine selected procurement files, in accordance with records sampling procedures, to determine the extent to which the state makes responsibility determinations prior to awarding contracts, including correspondence between the state and its contractors for evidence of determinations. Some states include this information in evaluation criteria in requests for proposals and some create a responsibility checklist to summarize these determinations.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if there is no evidence it makes responsibility determinations prior to award. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 344:*** Responsibility determination deficiencies) Note that although a state may not have written procedures addressing these determinations specifically, overall procurement procedures combined with a state's business practices may ensure that adequate determinations are being made.

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to provide the FTA regional office documentation of an implemented process to make adequate responsibility determinations prior to award of a contract. For the next procurement, submit to FTA documentation that the required process was implemented.

9. *What are the state's procedures for ensuring that subrecipients or contractors are not suspended or debarred? As part of its evaluation of bids and proposals prior to award, does the state search the System for Award Management (SAM) to identify debarred or suspended bidders?*

10. *If subsequent to awarding a contract, the state discovered that a subrecipient or contactor was listed in SAM as an excluded party, when did the state inform FTA in writing of this information?*

EXPLANATION

The state is required to ensure to the best of its knowledge and belief that none of its principals, affiliates, third party contractors, and subcontractors is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in federally assisted transactions or procurements. FTA requires grantees to review SAM before entering into any third party contract expected to equal or exceed $25,000. A good practice is for the grantee to print the screen with the results of the search to include in the grant or procurement file. [Prior to the implementation of SAM, grantees were required to check the Excluded Parties Listing System (EPLS)]

2 CFR Part 180 defines a principal as an officer, director, owner, partner, principal investigator, or other person with management or supervisory responsibilities related to a covered transaction. The grantee should have a similar review process for its principals as it does for its contractors and subrecipients regarding suspension and debarment.

In the event that a state becomes aware, after the award of a contract, that an excluded party is participating in a covered transaction, it must promptly inform FTA in writing of this information. The state may continue any covered transaction in existence at the time a party was debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded. The state is not required to continue the transaction and may consider termination. However, the state may not renew or extend the covered transaction (other than through a no-cost time extension) with the excluded party.

REFERENCE

2 CFR Part 180

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Review the state's written procurement procedures and employment procedures to determine if the requirement to review the SAM has been included. During the site visit, review contract and subrecipient files to determine if the SAM is being searched before entering into any third party contracts. Ask the state if it has become aware of any situation in which an excluded party is participating in a covered transaction. If so, obtain a copy of the state's written notification to FTA.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if it has not reviewed SAM prior to applicable awards or actions. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 183:*** No verification that excluded parties are not participating)

The state is deficient if it has not promptly informed FTA in writing after becoming aware that an excluded party is participating in a covered transaction. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 189:*** Excluded parties participating in covered transactions)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office procedures to search SAM before entering into applicable transactions. For the next procurement, submit to FTA documentation that the required process was implemented.

Direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office documentation of an implemented process to promptly notify FTA in writing of any excluded party's participation.

11. *What policies and procedures does the state have in place regarding change orders to FTA funded projects? How are these policies monitored for subrecipients administering FTA funded projects?*

EXPLANATION

FTA does not participate in the recipient's decisions involving change orders, constructive changes, or modifications, but reserves the right to review the recipient's supporting documentation as necessary to determine the extent of FTA assistance that may be used to support those costs. To be eligible for FTA assistance under the recipient's grant, the cost of the change, modification, change order, or constructive change must be allowable, allocable, within the scope of its grant, and reasonable for the completion of the changed work.

Section 5310, 5311, 5316, and 5317 progress reports must include budget revisions for changes in line item budgets which may be impacted by change orders.

REFERENCE

49 USC 5325(e)(1)
FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. VII, Section 2
FTA C 9040.1F, Ch. VI, Section 12
FTA C 9070.1F, Ch. VI, Section 17
FTA C. 9045.1, Ch. VI, Section 16
FTA C. 9050.1, Ch. VI, Section 16

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Discuss this question with the regional office in advance of the desk review. Before the site visit, review the list of contract changes and select files for review. Review contract administration and subrecipient oversight procedures. Discuss with the state (and subrecipients) the amount of change orders on current or recent projects. During the site visit, examine change orders to FTA-funded project files to determine how the change order was evaluated prior to execution and whether any change was outside the scope of the grant.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if it is funding ineligible change orders with FTA funds. It is also deficient if its processes do not allow it to adequately report on change orders to FTA when applicable. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 277***: Insufficient documentation to support change orders)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to provide the FTA regional office revised procurement procedures that address appropriate funding, tracking, evaluation, and reporting of change orders. Direct the state to provide documentation of corrective action implementation and training on new procedure(s).

12. *Identify any FTA funded equipment obtained since the last state management review through a piggyback, state-led, or joint procurement method.*

EXPLANATION

Recipients of FTA financial assistance are required by both 49 U.S.C. § 5325(a) and the common grant rule (49 C.F.R. 18.36(c)) to use full and open competition when making purchases. Usually this requirement is fulfilled by one of four procurement methods: (1) conducting a stand-alone procurement for a finite number of vehicles; (2) jointly procuring a finite number of vehicles with one or more grantees; or (3) accepting the assignment of another grantee's contractual right to purchase a finite number of vehicles (aka "piggybacking"). One common requirement in all methods is that the number of vehicles to be purchased is based on the grantee's actual needs and is advertised with the solicitation. Thus, all respondents to the solicitation can provide a bid price based on the number of vehicles to be purchased as well as other salient factors contained in the solicitation. When the contract is formed, the grantee commits to purchasing vehicles at the agreed upon price and the vendor commits to furnishing the vehicles at that price. A fourth procurement method, state purchasing schedules, is led by a State for use by in-state entities.

A joint procurement is a method of contracting in which two or more purchasers agree from the outset to use a single solicitation document and enter into a single contract with a vendor. The parties to a joint procurement may be from more than one state. FTA encourages the use of joint procurements when combining requirements into a larger order can result in a more advantageous contract for the participating recipients. FTA's current guidance does not require the needs of each joint procurement participant to be separately written into the contract. And, as with regular procurements, a joint procurement may take the form of an indefinite delivery/indefinite quantity contract (ID/IQ) if it contains "total minimum and total maximum" terms.

Participation in a joint procurement does not relieve any recipient of the responsibilities it would have if it were procuring goods or services by itself. Recipients that participate in a joint procurement must adhere to all applicable federal requirements, including the prohibition against using federal money to procure unneeded items.

A joint procurement may not be used as an opportunity to improperly expand the scope of a federally assisted contract. A contract has been improperly expanded when excess capacity has been added primarily to permit assignment of those contract rights to another entity.

States are accorded substantial deference under the Common Grant Rule at 49 C.F.R. 18.36(a) in the policies and procedures used in state procurements. By this authority, a State may follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds, so long as it ensures that every purchase order or similar contract includes any clauses required by Federal law. Many states use this authority to create purchasing schedules by which the state and its subsidiaries may acquire goods.

FTA grantees located outside of a state's borders are not permitted to purchase from that State's schedule. Joint procurements (and in limited circumstances piggybacking) are the only forms of FTA-funded contracts permitted among grantees from different states.

FTA has determined that grantees may not purchase items from certain buying cooperatives such as the

National Joint Powers Alliance (NJPA) and the Houston-Galveston Area Council (HGAC). FTA should be consulted before entering into any agreements with such organizations.

For reasons of economy, FTA permits the assignment of unneeded contract rights, sometimes called "piggybacking." FTA discourages the assignment of another recipient's contract rights as a substitute for a stand-alone procurement. Assignments are intended to be used only when a recipient has "inadvertently acquired contract rights in excess of its needs" due to "changed circumstances or honest mistakes."

Intentionally procuring excessive quantities using federal money is a violation of the Common Grant Rule described above. Furthermore, to the extent that an improper assignment of contract rights enables an assignee to avoid otherwise required procurement procedures, it also undermines the Common Grant Rule's general purpose of full and open competition in federally assisted procurements.

While it has become increasingly popular for grantees to acquire vehicles through this method of procurement, piggybacking can also occur for purchases of services and property. A grantee that obtains contractual rights through assignment may use them after first determining that the contract price remains fair and reasonable, and the contract provisions are adequate for compliance with all federal requirements. The grantee need not perform a second price analysis if a price analysis was performed for the original contract. However, FTA expects the grantee to determine whether the contract price or prices originally established are still fair and reasonable before using those rights.

FTA expects the grantee seeking the assignment to review the original contract to be sure that the quantities the assigning grantee acquired, coupled with the quantities the acquiring grantee seeks, do not exceed the amounts available under the assigning grantee's contract. Otherwise, the purchase is a "tag-on" and is considered an improper sole source procurement.

Any changes in the vehicle when assigned must be within the original scope (i.e., no major changes in configuration or design). Although FTA has provided additional guidance in the BPPM, FTA has not developed a finite list of acceptable contract changes. In the case of rolling stock, a major change in quantity or a substitution of major end items not contemplated when competition for the original award took place would generally be a cardinal change. Another cardinal change includes a change from a high-floor to a low-floor vehicle. Changing an engine might result in a cardinal change depending on the circumstances surrounding the project and whether a compatible replacement could be obtained through competition. FTA, however, considers changes to seating, fabrics, colors, exterior paint schemes, signage, floor covering, and other similar changes to be permissible changes.

Vehicles added to the base or option amounts originally specified are called "tag-ons." Tag-ons are not permitted. A tag-on is defined as the adding on to the contracted quantities (base and option) as originally advertised, competed, and awarded, whether for the use of the buyer or for others, and then treating the add-on portion as though it met the requirements of competition.

If a grantee is using another grantee's procurement contract for purchasing revenue vehicles (i.e., "piggybacking"), the purchaser may rely on the pre-award audit completed prior to the original contract. However, the grantee must review the audit and prepare its own signed certifications.

Generally speaking, FTA encourages recipients to use joint procurements, particularly among smaller transit agencies. Recipients often can obtain better pricing by combining their requirements into larger joint purchases. However, they must limit their joint procurement to the amount of property and services required to meet each of their reasonably expected needs, and are prohibited from improperly expanding the procurement to include excess capacity simply for the purpose of assigning contract rights to others at a later date. Accordingly, FTA permits the assignment of unneeded contract rights to another transit agency—piggybacking—only when a recipient has unintentionally acquired more goods or options than it needs to support its transit system.

REFERENCES

FTA C. 4220.1F, Ch. V Section 3
FTA C. 4220.1F, Ch. V Section 7(a)(2)(b)(1)
FTA C. 4220.1F, Ch. IV Section 1(c)(1)
FTA C. 4220.1F, Ch. V Section 4
FTA C. 4220.1F, Ch. V Section 7(a)(2)(a)
FTA C. 4220.1F, Ch. V Section 7(a)(2)
FTA C. 4220.1F, Ch. IV Section 1(b)(2)(b)
Piggybacking Worksheet from FTA Best Practices Procurement Manual
FTA Administrator's Policy Letter March 8, 2013

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Refer to information obtained from the grantee for any piggyback, state-led, or joint procurements conducted since the last triennial review.

Review the file of a piggyback procurement, if applicable. Review the contract and correspondence between the two agencies involved in the piggyback arrangement to ensure that the original procurement contains an assignability clause and meets FTA requirements (e.g., competitive award, required clauses included, required certifications filed,

cost/price analysis conducted, five or seven year contract term, etc.). Ask the state if any changes to the vehicle were required and determine if these were within the original scope.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if it cannot document that the original award contains an assignability clause, vehicles are still available for assignment, or FTA requirements were met. The grantee is deficient if the grantee conducted a "tag-on" purchase. The state is deficient if changes were beyond the original contract scope. The state is deficient if it used FTA funds for an ineligible piggyback, joint, or state-led procurement. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 231:*** Improper piggyback purchase)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to provide the FTA regional office with piggybacking, state-led, or joint procurement procedures that comply with FTA requirements.

Direct the state to provide revised procedures that address the requirements for a piggyback, state-led, or joint procurement and continue the process in accordance with federal regulations or possibly terminate the agreement for convenience, if an improper piggyback procurement is in process.

Notify the FTA regional counsel when significant procurements (i.e., exceeding $100,000) have violated federal requirements.

Rolling Stock Procurements

13. *Since the last state management review, identify any contracts for revenue rolling stock and replacement parts that include ordering periods exceeding five years in total length including base and options for bus procurements or seven years for rail procurements.*

EXPLANATION

States must not enter into contracts for revenue rolling stock and replacement parts with a period of performance exceeding five years for bus procurements inclusive of options, extensions, or renewals. MAP-21, effective July 16, 2012, extended this restriction to seven years for rail procurements. The five- and seven-year rules do not mean the state must obtain delivery, acceptance, or even fabrication in five or seven years. The state, may not exercise the option to acquire buses or replacement parts later than five years (bus) or seven years (rail) after the date of its original contract However, the maximum quantity specified in such multi-year contracts must represent the state's reasonably foreseeable need. Typically, states use indefinite-delivery, indefinite-quantity (IDIQ) contracts for this type of purchase. While IDIQ contracts are permissible, they must meet the requirements described above.

States may seek a waiver from the five-year or seven-year requirement from FTA Headquarters. A copy of the written approval for this waiver must be in the applicable contract file.

REFERENCES

49 USC 5325(e)(1)
FTA C 4220.1F, Ch. IV, Section 2.e. (10)

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

During the site visit, in accordance with records sampling procedures, examine procurement files for rolling stock and replacement part contracts during to ensure that these meet the five- and seven-year contract term restriction. Review any waiver requests and/or approvals.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if a revenue rolling stock contract represents more than five or seven years' requirements. The state is deficient if it has a revenue rolling stock and replacement parts contract with a period of performance exceeding five or seven years and has not obtained prior FTA written approval. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 240:*** Contract(s) period of performance exceeds limitation)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to provide the FTA regional office revised procurement procedures that include the five- and seven-year restriction on the period of performance for rolling stock and replacement part contracts supported with FTA funds. Direct the state to provide the FTA regional office with an assurance that unexecuted options will not be executed on an existing contract that exceeds the five- or seven-year restriction.

14. *When does the state obtain the bus testing report (Altoona testing) showing the bus model purchased meets FTA's bus testing requirements?*

EXPLANATION

The state must have in its possession a copy of the Altoona Bus Testing Report before final acceptance of the first vehicle. Testing applies to buses and modified vans used in transit service, including but not limited to new bus and van models using alternative fuels such as methanol, ethanol, compressed natural

gas (CNG), hydrogen, and electricity (if stored and/or generated on-board the vehicle).

FTA does not require a vehicle manufacturer to test its model before bidding. However, recipients of FTA funds acquiring any bus model must certify that an example of that model will have been tested and the recipient will have received a copy of the resulting Bus Testing Report prepared on the bus model before the final acceptance of the first vehicle.

Bus testing is not required for unmodified mass-produced vans (provided they are only offered to FTA grantees in the 4-year/100,000-mile service life category). Unmodified mass-produced vans are vehicles manufactured as complete, fully assembled vehicles as provided by the original equipment manufacturer (OEM). This category includes vans with raised roofs or wheelchair lifts or ramps that are installed by the OEM or by someone other than the OEM, provided that the installation of these components is completed in strict conformance with the OEM modification guidelines.

REFERENCES

49 CFR Part 665
FTA C 9030.1E, Chapter VI Section 11.f.
Bus Testing Website

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Review vehicle procurement files in accordance with records sampling procedures for a copy of the Altoona Bus Test Report for the specific make/model purchased. Review the state's procurement procedures for a discussion of bus testing. On site, discuss the process for obtaining a copy of the test report.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if a copy of the Altoona Bus Test Report is not in the state's procurement files (***DEFICIENCY CODE 317***: Deficiency with bus model testing requirements).

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to obtain the Altoona Bus Test Report for the specific make/model purchased and provide a copy of it and procedures for obtaining the report for future bus purchases to the FTA regional office. If the vehicle has not been tested and the state has taken delivery of the vehicle(s), notify the FTA regional office immediately.

15. *How does the state conduct pre-award and post-delivery audits to ensure the manufacturer(s) complied with contract specifications and Buy America?*

16. *How does the state verify domestic content, final assembly activities, and location of final assembly at the pre-award and post-delivery stages?*

EXPLANATION

A state purchasing revenue service rolling stock with federal funds must conduct or order to be conducted pre-award and post-delivery audits verifying compliance with Buy America provisions, purchaser's requirements, and Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS). The state is required to keep records, including pre-award and post-delivery certifications, which show that the regulations have been followed. The audits require the state to complete two certifications (Buy America and Purchaser's Requirements) at the pre-award stage and three certifications (Buy America, Purchaser's Requirements, and FMVSS) at the post-delivery stage.

These requirements apply to purchases of new and used revenue service rolling stock. However, FTA recognizes that it may be impractical for used vehicles to demonstrate compliance with some of the Buy America requirements, such as the pre-award and post-delivery audit, and having a resident inspector present during the vehicle's construction.

FTA issued a waiver from Buy America requirements for purchases under the simplified acquisition threshold (currently $100,000). Thus, a procurement of small buses and vans which totals less than $100,000 is not subject to the general Buy America requirements of 49 CFR Part 661. This waiver does not exempt rolling stock from the pre-award and post-delivery purchaser's requirements and FMVSS audits required by 49 CFR Part 663.

Pre-Award Audits and Certifications

States may purchase vehicles in several groups over several years using either vehicle procurement contracts with options or multi-year vehicle procurement contracts. FTA requires that each group of vehicles purchased, i.e., each "order" of vehicles, have a pre-award audit before the order is placed. One pre-award audit may suffice, provided that there is no change in vehicle configuration, i.e., no change that is expected to have a significant impact on vehicle handling and stability or structural integrity, between successive deliveries of vehicles.

Compliance with purchaser's specifications: The state must complete a pre-award purchaser's requirements certification verifying that the manufacturer's bid specifications comply with the state's solicitation requirements and that the proposed manufacturer is responsible and capable of building the bus to the solicitation specifications. The pre-award certification may be based on the state's determination that the vendor is responsive and responsible. The

requirement to conduct an audit for compliance with purchaser's requirements and sign a certification applies to all purchases of revenue rolling stock, even those under the federal simplified acquisition threshold. The pre-award audit is required before a state enters into a formal contract with a supplier. If a state is using another state's procurement contract for purchasing revenue vehicles (i.e., "piggybacking"), the purchaser may rely on the pre-award audit completed prior to the original contract. However, the state must review the audit and prepare its own signed certification.

Compliance with Buy America: If the procurement exceeds the simplified acquisition threshold (currently $100,000), at the pre-award stage, the state must complete:

- A compliance certification verifying that the rolling stock will contain a minimum of 60 percent domestic components, by cost, and that final assembly will take place in the United States; or
- An exemption certification indicating that the state has a letter from FTA granting a waiver from the Buy America requirement.

The state or an independent third party must conduct the Buy America audit. The audit may be based on information provided by the manufacturer; however, certification by the manufacturer is not adequate. If a state is using another state's procurement contract for purchasing revenue vehicles (i.e., "piggybacking"), the purchaser may rely on the pre-award audit completed prior to the original contract. However, the state must review the audit and prepare its own signed certification.

Compliance with FMVSS: The state must receive a certification from the vehicle manufacturer at the pre-award stage that the vehicles being procured comply with the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (49 CFR Part 571).

Post Delivery Audits and Certifications

Compliance with Purchaser's Specifications: The state must complete a post-delivery purchaser's requirements certification verifying that the buses delivered meet the contract specifications. This must be completed before a bus title is transferred to the state or before a bus is placed into revenue service, whichever is first. The post-delivery certification is based on the state's visual inspections and road tests and, if required, the resident inspector's monitoring of the final assembly process and final report of manufacturing activities. The requirement to conduct an audit for compliance with purchaser's requirements and sign a certification applies to all purchases of revenue rolling stock, even those under the federal simplified acquisition threshold.

Grantees are required to have an inspector during final assembly process if they meet the following criteria:

- Grantees purchasing any number of rail vehicles
- Grantees in an urbanized areas with populations of more than 200,000 that are purchasing more than 10 buses
- Grantees in areas with populations of 200,000 or less that are purchasing more than 20 buses

FTA does not require in-plant inspectors for any number of unmodified vans manufactured by the automobile companies. FTA requires only a visual inspection and road test after delivery for such procurements.

In the case of consolidated procurements on behalf of multiple subrecipients, the in-plant inspection requirement is triggered only if any single subrecipient will receive more than 10 or more than 20 vehicles, depending on area size. One in-plant inspector can meet the requirement for multiple grantees. The inspector may not be an agent or employee of the manufacturer. The inspector must prepare a report providing accurate records of all vehicle construction activities and summarizing how the construction and operational characteristics of the vehicles met (or did not meet) the contract specifications.

Compliance with Buy America: Required post-delivery certification includes disclosure by the manufacturer of the final assembly location; a listing of the component and subcomponent parts, the cost (actual or percent of total) of such components and subcomponents and the country of origin; a description of final assembly activities; and the cost of final assembly. Final assembly costs are not to be included when calculating the percent domestic content of the vehicle.

The state or an independent third party must conduct the Buy America audits. The audit may be based on information provided by the manufacturer; however, certification by the manufacturer is not adequate.

FMVSS: The state must complete, at the post-delivery stage, a certification that the state has received from the vehicle manufacturer at both the pre-award and post-delivery stages a certification that the vehicles comply with the FMVSS issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (49 CFR Part 571). The requirement to conduct an audit for compliance with FMVSS and sign a certification applies to all purchases of revenue rolling stock, even those under the federal simplified acquisition threshold.

REFERENCES

49 CFR Part 571

49 CFR Part 661
49 CFR Part 663
FTA C 9030.1E, Chapter VI Section 11.e
Dear Colleague letter of March 30, 2001
Dear Colleague Letter, March 18, 1997
FTA Buy America Website
Conducting Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits for Bus Procurements
Conducting Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits for Rail Vehicle Procurements
Buying Used Buses

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Review vehicle procurement files in accordance with records sampling procedures for copies of pre-award and post-delivery audits, certifications, and review and inspection forms demonstrating that the state ensured the manufacturer complied with all vehicle specifications, including Buy America.

Review the state's procurement procedures for a discussion of pre-award and post-delivery audits. On site, discuss the process for completing the pre-award and post-delivery audits and certifications. If an in-plant inspector was required, discuss how the requirement for an in-plant inspector was fulfilled. Identify the organization providing the in-plant inspector, e.g., the state, the subrecipient, or third-party contractor to the state or subrecipient.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if it did not conduct all of the required audits for revenue rolling stock procurements. The state is deficient if it ordered a group of vehicles from a multi-year procurement before the pre-award audit was conducted. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 253:*** Pre-award and/or post-delivery audits not performed)

The state is deficient if it conducted the required pre-award and post-delivery audits and documented the procedures but did not sign all required certifications. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 265***: Pre-award and/or post-delivery certifications lacking)

The state is deficient if it did not provide for an independent in-plant inspector during manufacture of the vehicles when required or did not prepare a report documenting the construction of the vehicles and how they meet the bid specifications. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 360***: Vehicles purchased without in-plant inspectors, as required)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state submit to the FTA regional office procedures for pre-award and post-delivery review and inspection.

Direct the state to submit documentation to the FTA regional office that the procurement complied with Buy America, FMVSS, and purchaser's requirements.

Direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office pre-award audit information and certifications before awarding the contract and the post-delivery audit information and certifications before drawing FTA funds for the next revenue rolling stock procurement.

Direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office procedures for conducting pre-award audits for options and/or multi-year contracts so that future procurements will comply with this requirement.

If the state did not sign the pre-award and/or post-delivery certifications, direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office the certifications for the procurement reviewed and procedures for completing the applicable pre-award and post-delivery audits certifications for future revenue rolling stock procurements.

Direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office the inspector's report before drawing FTA funds for the next procurement requiring in-plant inspectors.

Procurement Oversight

17. *What oversight procedures and processes does the state implement to mitigate the risk associated with subrecipients conducting procurements with FTA funds?*

EXPLANATION

In addition to complying with state and local law, subrecipients, transit management contractors and, depending on the structure of the contract, other contractors to which a state has contracted out a portion of its FTA funded operations must comply with relevant FTA third party contracting requirements when procuring goods and services with FTA assistance. Subrecipients that are public entities and contractors must comply with FTA requirements that apply to states. Subrecipients that are private nonprofit or for profit entities must comply with all the FTA requirements of FTA C 4220.1F. FTA considers all metropolitan planning organizations (MPOs), even those incorporated as a nonprofit organizations under state law, to be "local governments." Consequently, MPOs must comply with the FTA requirements that apply to states.

The state is responsible for ensuring that these organizations are aware of and comply with the requirements. Note that FTA requirements do not apply to procurements funded solely with local funds, including operating procurements.

Procurement requirements that apply to the state, public entity subrecipients, and contractors are:

- Comply with its own procurement regulations
- Conduct all procurements in a manner providing full and open competition
- Exclude the use of statutorily or administratively imposed in-state or local geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference
- Use competitive proposal procedures based on the Brooks Act when contracting for architectural and engineering services, if the state has not adopted a statute governing the procurement of such services before August 10, 2005
- Award to only responsible contractors possessing the ability, willingness and integrity to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of the contract
- Ensure that every purchase order and contract executed using Federal funds includes all clauses required by Federal statutes and executive orders and their implementing regulations
- Do not enter into any contract for rolling stock with a period of performance for ordering exceeding five years inclusive of options without prior FTA approval
- Comply with Buy America requirements, including pre-award and post-delivery requirements
- Comply with debarment and suspension requirements
- Comply with lobbying requirements
- Comply with piggybacking requirements

In addition to the requirements that apply to states, FTA C 4220.1F requirements that apply to private nonprofit or for-profit entities include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Maintain a written code of standards of conduct governing the performance of employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts
- Have written procurement policies and procedures
- Have written protest procedures to handle and resolve disputes relating to the award of contracts
- Have procedures for settlement of contract issues/disputes (procurements >$100,000)
- Analyze each planned acquisition in order to identify and evaluate potential organizational conflicts of interest
- Review procurement requests to avoid duplicative or unnecessary purchases
- Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the material, product, or services being procured; identify all requirements that offerors must fulfill; and identify evaluation factors in solicitations
- Develop an independent cost estimate before receiving bids or proposals
- Conduct a contract cost or price analysis for every procurement
- Evaluate options at the time of bid award, exercise the options at the agreed upon terms, and determine that the option price is better than current market prices before exercising the options
- Maintain a contract administration system that ensures that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders
- Maintain a written record of procurement history

FTA C 4220.1F contains a complete list of third party contracting requirements.

Some states provide written guidelines or standard terms and conditions to subrecipients and contractors for direct procurements. Some states review subrecipients' and contractors' direct procurements, particularly for vehicles, equipment and construction. Such reviews, which generally focus on bid evaluation and selection, may be used to ensure that FTA (and state) requirements are met.

Monitoring of compliance with FTA third party contracting requirements will require a review of procurement procedures, either through site visits or a periodic review of written procurement manuals. The state is not required to review each subrecipient's or contractors' procurement to ensure compliance with Federal requirements. The state may review selected procurements on a periodic basis in conjunction with a site visit or other general review of compliance with Federal requirements.

REFERENCES

2 CFR Part 180
49 CFR Part 20
49 CFR 18.36
FTA Master Agreement for FY2011, Sections 2.d-e
FTA C 4220.1F
FTA C 9040.1F, Ch. VI, Section 5
FTA C 9070.1F, Ch. VI, Section 9

FTA C 9050.1, Ch. VI, Section 8
FTA C 9045.1, Ch. VI, Section 8
FTA C 8100.1C, Ch. II, Section 3.b

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Review the state management plan for a discussion of policies and procedures applicable to procurements with Federal funds by subrecipients. Review the applications and standard agreements for procurement requirements. Review procurement solicitations and contracts for transit management services for procurement requirements. Review other pertinent documents that describe state procurement policies and procedures or provide guidance to subrecipients and contractors regarding applicable Federal and state procurement requirements.

On site, discuss the mechanisms used to inform subrecipients and transit management contractors of procurement requirements and to monitor compliance by subrecipients and transit management contractors. Identify technical assistance provided. If the state provides standard terms and conditions, review them for inclusion of Federally required clauses and clauses that restrict full and open competition. If the state reviews procurements and procurement procedures during site visits, review any documentation of reviews of subrecipient written procurement procedures. Review a sample of subrecipients' procurement documents if the state has any on file. If not, review a sample of procurements during site visits.

DETERMINATION

The state is deficient if it does not monitor subrecipients and contractors making direct procurements with FTA assistance for compliance with the requirements. (***DEFICIENCY CODE 278***: Insufficient oversight of procurement)

SUGGESTED CORRECTIVE ACTION

Direct the state to submit to the FTA regional office procedures for informing subrecipients and contractors making direct procurements with FTA assistance of Federal procurement requirements and for monitoring them for compliance with the requirements. Direct the state to provide documentation of corrective action implementation and training on new procedure(s).

A. REQUIRED THIRD-PARTY CONTRACT CLAUSES
(excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000)

REQUIREMENT	***COMMENTS***	***MASTER AGREEMENT REFERENCE***
All FTA-Assisted Third-Party Contracts and Subcontracts		
No Federal government obligations to third-parties by use of a disclaimer		*§2.f*
Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts		*§3.f*
Access to Records		*§10.a*
Federal changes		*§2.c(3)(d)*
Civil Rights (EEO, Title VI & ADA)		*§13*
Incorporation of FTA Terms	*Per FTA C 4220.1F*	*§17.a*
Energy Conservation		*§30*
Awards Exceeding $10,000		
Termination provisions	*49 CFR Part 18 Not required of states*	*§12*
Awards Exceeding $25,000		
Debarment and Suspension	*2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200*	*§3.b*
Awards Exceeding the Simplified Acquisition Threshold ($100,000)		
Buy America	*When tangible property or construction will be acquired*	*§16.a*
Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches, or other litigation		*§96*
Awards Exceeding $100,000 (by Statute)		
Lobbying		*§3.d*
Clean Air		*§17.m*
Clean Water		*§17.m*
Transport of Property or Persons		
Cargo Preference	*When acquiring property suitable for shipment by ocean vessel*	*§16.b*
Fly America	*When property or persons transported by air between U.S. and foreign destinations, or between foreign locations*	*§16.c*

A. REQUIRED THIRD-PARTY CONTRACT CLAUSES
(excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000)

REQUIREMENT	*COMMENTS*	*MASTER AGREEMENT REFERENCE*
Construction Activities		
Davis Bacon Act	*Except for contracts <$2,000 or third party contracts for supplies, materials, or articles ordinarily available on the open market*	*§28.a*
Copeland Anti-Kickback Act	*Section 1: All* *Section 2: Contracts >$2,000*	*§28.a*
Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act	*Contracts >$100,000*	*§28.a*
Bonding for construction activities exceeding $100,000	*5% bid guarantee;* *100% performance bond; and* *Payment bond equal to:* • *50% for contracts < $1 M* • *40% for contracts > $1 M, but < $5 M* • *$2.5 M for contracts > $5 M* *Not required of states*	*§17.p(1)*
Seismic Safety	*Contracts for construction of new buildings or additions to existing buildings*	*§26.e*
Nonconstruction Activities		
Nonconstruction Employee Protection (Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act)	*Applicable to all turnkey, rolling stock and operational contracts (excluding contracts for transportation services) > $100,000*	*§28.b*
Transit Operations		
Transit Employee Protective Arrangements	*Applies to Section 5307, 5309, 5311 and 5316 projects*	*§28.d*
Charter Service Operations		*§32*
School Bus Operations		*§33*
Drug and Alcohol Testing	*Safety sensitive functions.* *Applies to Section 5307, 5309 and 5311 projects*	*§40.b*
Planning, Research, Development, and Documentation Projects		
Patent Rights		*§19*
Rights in Data and Copyrights		*§20*
Miscellaneous Special Requirements		
Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBEs)	*Contracts awarded on the basis of a bid or proposal offering to use DBEs*	*§13.d*

A. REQUIRED THIRD-PARTY CONTRACT CLAUSES
(excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000)

REQUIREMENT	*COMMENTS*	*MASTER AGREEMENT REFERENCE*
Prompt Payment and Return of Retainage	*Per 49 CFR Part 26, if grantee meets the threshold for a DBE program*	*§13.d*
Recycled Products	*Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year*	*§17.l*
ADA Access	*Contracts for rolling stock or facilities construction/ renovation*	*§13.g*
Assignability Clause	*Piggyback procurements*	*§17.a*
State Requirements		
Special Notification Requirements for States		*§42*

B. REQUIRED CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, AND FORMS
(excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000)

REQUIREMENT	*COMMENTS*	*MASTER AGREEMENT REFERENCE*
Bus Testing Certification and Report	*Procurements of buses and modified mass produced vans*	*§17.o(4)*
TVM Certifications	*Procurements of buses and modified mass produced vans*	*§13.d(1)*
Buy America Certification	*Procurements of steel, iron or manufactured products > $100,000*	*§16.a*
Pre-Award Audit	*Rolling stock procurements*	*§17.o(3)*
Pre-Award Buy America Certification	*Rolling stock procurements>$100,000*	*§17.o(3)*
Pre-Award Purchaser's Requirement Certification	*Rolling stock procurements*	*§17.o(3)*
Post-Delivery Audit	*Rolling stock procurements*	*§17.o(3)*
Post-Delivery Buy America Certification	*Rolling stock procurements >$100,000*	*§17.o(3)*
Post-Delivery Purchaser's Requirement Certification	*Rolling stock procurements*	*§17.o(3)*
On-Site Inspector's Report	*Rolling stock procurements for more than 10 vehicles for areas >200,000 in population and 20 for areas <200,000 in population*	*§17.o(3)*
Federal Motor Vehicles Safety Standards Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Certification	*Non-rail rolling stock procurements*	*§17.o(3)*
Excluded Parties Listing System search	*Procurements > $25,000*	*§3.b*
Lobbying Certification	*Procurements > $100,000*	*§3.d(1)*

B. REQUIRED CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, AND FORMS
(excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000)

REQUIREMENT	***COMMENTS***	***MASTER AGREEMENT REFERENCE***
Standard Form LLL and Quarterly Updates (when required)	*Procurements > $100,000 where contractor engages in lobbying activities*	*§3.d(1)*
Cost effectiveness determination	*Facilities or equipment leases*	*5010.1D, Ch. IV, Section 3.j*

APPLICABILITY OF THIRD-PARTY CONTRACT CLAUSES
(excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000)

CLAUSE	***TYPE OF PROCUREMENT***				
	Professional Services/A&E	***Operations/ Management/ Subrecipients***	***Revenue Rolling Stock***	***Construction***	***Materials & Supplies***
No Federal government obligations to third-parties by use of a disclaimer	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*
Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*
Access to Records	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*
Federal changes	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*
Civil Rights (EEO, Title VI & ADA)	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*
Incorporation of FTA Terms	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*
Energy Conservation	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*
Termination Provisions (not required of states)	*>$10,000*	*>$10,000*	*>$10,000*	*>$10,000*	*>$10,000*
Debarment and Suspension	*>$25,000*	*>$25,000*	*>$25,000*	*>$25,000*	*>$25,000*
Buy America			*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000 (for steel, iron, manufactured products)*
Provisions for resolution of disputes, breaches or other litigation	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*
Lobbying	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*
Clean Air	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*
Clean Water	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*
Cargo Preference			*Involving property that may be transported by ocean vessel*	*Involving property that may be transported by ocean vessel*	*Involving property that may be transported by ocean vessel*
Fly America	*Involving foreign transport or travel by air*	*Involving foreign transport or travel by air*	*Involving foreign transport or travel by air*	*Involving foreign transport or travel by air*	*Involving foreign transport or travel by air*
Davis Bacon Act				*>$2,000 (including ferry vessels)*	
Copeland Anti-Kickback Act				*Section 1: All Section 2: >$2,000 (including ferry vessels)*	
Contract Work Hours & Safety Standards Act		*>$100,000*	*>$100,000*	*>$100,000 (including ferry vessels)*	

APPLICABILITY OF THIRD-PARTY CONTRACT CLAUSES
(excluding micro-purchases, except for construction contracts over $2,000)

CLAUSE	***TYPE OF PROCUREMENT***				
	Professional Services/A&E	***Operations/ Management/ Subrecipients***	***Revenue Rolling Stock***	***Construction***	***Materials & Supplies***
Bonding (not required of states)				*>$100,000 (including ferry vessels)*	
Seismic Safety	*A&E for new buildings & additions*			*New buildings & additions*	
Transit Employee Protective Arrangements		*Transit operations funded with Section 5307, 5309, 5311 or 5316 funds*			
Charter Service Operations		*All*			
School Bus Operations		*All*			
Drug and Alcohol Testing		*Transit operations funded with Section 5307, 5309 or 5311 funds*			
Patent Rights	*Research & development*				
Rights in Data and Copyrights requirements	*Research & development*				
Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBEs)	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*	*All*
Prompt Payment	*All non TVM purchases if threshold for DBE program met*	*All non TVM purchases if threshold for DBE program met*	*All non TVM purchases if threshold for DBE program met*	*All non TVM purchases if threshold for DBE program met*	*All non TVM purchases if threshold for DBE program met*
Recycled Products		*Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year*		*Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year*	*Contracts for items designated by EPA, when procuring $10,000 or more per year*
ADA Access	*A&E*	*All*	*All*	*All*	
Special Notification Requirements for States	*Limited to states*	*Limited to states*	*Limited to states*	*Limited to states*	*Limited to states*

REFERENCE MATERIAL - FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION BEST PRACTICES PROCUREMENT MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Appendix A - Governing Documents)

A.1 - Federally Required and Other Model Contract Clauses

1. Fly America Requirements
2. Buy America Requirements
3. Charter Bus and School Bus Requirements
4. Cargo Preference Requirements
5. Seismic Safety Requirements
6. Energy Conservation Requirements
7. Clean Water Requirements
8. Bus Testing
9. Pre-Award and Post Delivery Audit Requirements
10. Lobbying
11. Access to Records and Reports
12. Federal Changes
13. Bonding Requirements
14. Clean Air
15. Recycled Products
16. Davis-Bacon and Copeland Anti-Kickback Acts
17. Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act
18. [Reserved]
19. No Government Obligation to Third Parties
20. Program Fraud and False or Fraudulent Statements and Related Acts
21. Termination
22. Government-wide Debarment and Suspension (Nonprocurement)
23. Privacy Act
24. Civil Rights Requirements
25. Breaches and Dispute Resolution
26. Patent and Rights in Data
27. Transit Employee Protective Agreements
28. Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE)
29. [Reserved]
30. Incorporation of Federal Transit Administration (FTA) Terms
31. Drug and Alcohol Testing

15. FLY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS

49 U.S.C. § 40118
41 CFR Part 301-10

Applicability to Contracts

The Fly America requirements apply to the transportation of persons or property, by air, between a place in the U.S. and a place outside the U.S., or between places outside the U.S., when the FTA will participate in the costs of such air transportation. Transportation on a foreign air carrier is permissible when provided by a foreign air carrier under a code share agreement when the ticket identifies the U.S. air carrier's designator code and flight number. Transportation by a foreign air carrier is also permissible if there is a bilateral or multilateral air transportation agreement to which the U.S. Government and a foreign government are parties and which the Federal DOT has determined meets the requirements of the Fly America Act.

Flow Down Requirements

The Fly America requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors, who are responsible for ensuring that lower tier contractors and subcontractors are in compliance.

Model Clause/Language

The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specified clause or language. FTA proposes the following language.

Fly America Requirements

The Contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 40118 (the "Fly America" Act) in accordance with the General Services Administration's regulations at 41 CFR Part 301-10, which provide that recipients and subrecipients of Federal funds and their contractors are required to use U.S. Flag air carriers for U.S Government-financed international air travel and transportation of their personal effects or property, to the extent such service is available, unless travel by foreign air carrier is a matter of necessity, as defined by the Fly America Act. The Contractor shall submit, if a foreign air carrier was used, an appropriate certification or memorandum adequately explaining why service by a U.S. flag air carrier was not available or why it was necessary to use a foreign air carrier and shall, in any event, provide a certificate of compliance with the Fly America requirements. The Contractor agrees to include the requirements of this section in all subcontracts that may involve international air transportation.

2. BUY AMERICA REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323(j)
49 CFR Part 661

Applicability to Contracts
The Buy America requirements apply to the following types of contracts: Construction Contracts and Acquisition of Goods or Rolling Stock (valued at more than $100,000).

Flow Down
The Buy America requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors, who are responsible for ensuring that lower tier contractors and subcontractors are in compliance. The $100,000 threshold applies only to the grantee contract, subcontracts under that amount are subject to Buy America.

Mandatory Clause/Language
The Buy America regulation, at 49 CFR 661.13, requires notification of the Buy America requirements in FTA-funded contracts, but does not specify the language to be used. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Buy America - The contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j) and 49 C.F.R. Part 661, which provide that Federal funds may not be obligated unless steel, iron, and manufactured products used in FTA-funded projects are produced in the United States, unless a waiver has been granted by FTA or the product is subject to a general waiver. General waivers are listed in 49 C.F.R. 661.7, and include final assembly in the United States for 15 passenger vans and 15 passenger wagons produced by Chrysler Corporation, and microcomputer equipment and software. Separate requirements for rolling stock are set out at 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and 49 C.F.R. 661.11. Rolling stock must be assembled in the United States and have a 60 percent domestic content.

A bidder or offeror must submit to the FTA recipient the appropriate Buy America certification (below) with all bids or offers on FTA-funded contracts, except those subject to a general waiver. Bids or offers that are not accompanied by a completed Buy America certification must be rejected as nonresponsive. This requirement does not apply to lower tier subcontractors.

Certification requirement for procurement of steel, iron, or manufactured products.

Certificate of Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it will meet the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1) and the applicable regulations in 49 C.F.R. Part 661.5.

Date _____

Signature_____

Company Name _____

Title _____

Certificate of Non-Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it cannot comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(1) and 49 C.F.R. 661.5, but it may qualify for an exception pursuant to 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(A), 5323(j)(2)(B), or 5323(j)(2)(D), and 49 C.F.R. 661.7.

Date _____

Signature _____

Company Name _____

Title _____

Certification requirement for procurement of buses, other rolling stock and associated equipment.

Certificate of Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C).

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it will comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and the regulations at 49 C.F.R. Part 661.11.

Date _____

Signature _____

Company Name _____

Title _____

Certificate of Non-Compliance with 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C)

The bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it cannot comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(C) and 49 C.F.R. 661.11, but may qualify for an exception pursuant to 49 U.S.C. 5323(j)(2)(A), 5323(j)(2)(B), or 5323(j)(2)(D), and 49 CFR 661.7.

Date _____

Signature _____

Company Name _____

Title _____

3. CHARTER BUS REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323(d)
49 CFR Part 604

Applicability to Contracts
The Charter Bus requirements apply to the following type of contract: Operational Service Contracts.

Flow Down Requirements
The Charter Bus requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier service contractors.

Model Clause/Language
The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specific clause or language. The following clause has been developed by FTA.

Charter Service Operations - The contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. 5323(d) and 49 CFR Part 604, which provides that recipients and subrecipients of FTA assistance are prohibited from providing charter service using federally funded equipment or facilities if there is at least one private charter operator willing and able to provide the service, except under one of the exceptions at 49 CFR 604.9. Any charter service provided under one of the exceptions must be "incidental," i.e., it must not interfere with or detract from the provision of mass transportation.

3. SCHOOL BUS REQUIREMENTS
49 U.S.C. 5323(F)
49 CFR Part 605

Applicability to Contracts
The School Bus requirements apply to the following type of contract: Operational Service Contracts.

Flow Down Requirements
The School Bus requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier service contractors.

Model Clause/Language
The relevant statutes and regulations do not mandate any specific clause or language. The following clause has been developed by FTA.

School Bus Operations - Pursuant to 69 U.S.C. 5323(f) and 49 CFR Part 605, recipients and subrecipients of FTA assistance may not engage in school bus operations exclusively for the transportation of students and school personnel in competition with private school bus operators unless qualified under specified exemptions. When operating exclusive school bus service under an allowable exemption, recipients and subrecipients may not use federally funded equipment, vehicles, or facilities.

---

4. CARGO PREFERENCE REQUIREMENTS
46 U.S.C. 1241
46 CFR Part 381

Applicability to Contracts
The Cargo Preference requirements apply to all contracts involving equipment, materials, or commodities which may be transported by ocean vessels.

Flow Down
The Cargo Preference requirements apply to all subcontracts when the subcontract may be involved with the transport of equipment, material, or commodities by ocean vessel.

Model Clause/Language
The MARAD regulations at 46 CFR 381.7 contain suggested contract clauses. The following language is proffered by FTA.

Cargo Preference - Use of United States-Flag Vessels - The contractor agrees: a. to use privately owned United States-Flag commercial vessels to ship at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers) involved, whenever shipping any equipment, material, or commodities pursuant to the underlying contract to the extent such vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for United States-Flag commercial vessels; b. to furnish within 20 working days following the date of loading for shipments originating within the United States or within 30 working days following the date of leading for shipments originating outside the United States, a legible copy of a rated, "on-board" commercial ocean bill-of -lading in English for each shipment of cargo described in the preceding paragraph to the Division of National Cargo, Office of Market Development, Maritime Administration, Washington, DC 20590 and to the FTA recipient (through the contractor in the case of a subcontractor's bill-of-lading.) c. to include these requirements in all subcontracts issued pursuant to this contract when the subcontract may involve the transport of equipment, material, or commodities by ocean vessel.

---

5. SEISMIC SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

42 U.S.C. 7701 et seq. 49
CFR Part 41

Applicability to Contracts

The Seismic Safety requirements apply only to contracts for the construction of new buildings or additions to existing buildings.

Flow Down

The Seismic Safety requirements flow down from FTA recipients and subrecipients to first tier contractors to assure compliance, with the applicable building standards for Seismic Safety, including the work performed by all subcontractors.

Model Clauses/Language

The regulations do not provide suggested language for third-party contract clauses. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Seismic Safety - The contractor agrees that any new building or addition to an existing building will be designed and constructed in accordance with the standards for Seismic Safety required in Department of Transportation Seismic Safety Regulations 49 CFR Part 41 and will certify to compliance to the extent required by the regulation. The contractor also agrees to ensure that all work performed under this contract including work performed by a subcontractor is in compliance with the standards required by the Seismic Safety Regulations and the certification of compliance issued on the project.

---

6. ENERGY CONSERVATION REQUIREMENTS

42 U.S.C. 6321 et seq.
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts

The Energy Conservation requirements are applicable to all contracts.

Flow Down

The Energy Conservation requirements extend to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier and subrecipients and their subagreements at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

No specific clause is recommended in the regulations because the Energy Conservation requirements are so dependent on the state energy conservation plan. The following language has been developed by FTA:

Energy Conservation - The contractor agrees to comply with mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act.

---

7. CLEAN WATER REQUIREMENTS
33 U.S.C. 1251

Applicability to Contracts
The Clean Water requirements apply to each contract and subcontract which exceeds $100,000.

Flow Down
The Clean Water requirements flow down to FTA recipients and subrecipients at every tier.

Model Clause/Language
While no mandatory clause is contained in the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, the following language developed by FTA contains all the mandatory requirements:

Clean Water - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, 33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

---

8. BUS TESTING
49 U.S.C. 5323(c)
49 CFR Part 665

Applicability to Contracts
The Bus Testing requirements pertain only to the acquisition of Rolling Stock/Turnkey.

Flow Down
The Bus Testing requirements should not flow down, except to the turnkey contractor as stated in Master Agreement.

Model Clause/Language
Clause and language therein are merely suggested. 49 CFR Part 665 does not contain specific language to be included in third party contracts but does contain requirements applicable to

subrecipients and third party contractors. Bus Testing Certification and language therein are merely suggested.

Bus Testing - The Contractor [Manufacturer] agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. A 5323(c) and FTA's implementing regulation at 49 CFR Part 665 and shall perform the following:

1) A manufacturer of a new bus model or a bus produced with a major change in components or configuration shall provide a copy of the final test report to the recipient at a point in the procurement process specified by the recipient which will be prior to the recipient's final acceptance of the first vehicle.

2) A manufacturer who releases a report under paragraph 1 above shall provide notice to the operator of the testing facility that the report is available to the public.

3) If the manufacturer represents that the vehicle was previously tested, the vehicle being sold should have the identical configuration and major components as the vehicle in the test report, which must be provided to the recipient prior to recipient's final acceptance of the first vehicle. If the configuration or components are not identical, the manufacturer shall provide a description of the change and the manufacturer's basis for concluding that it is not a major change requiring additional testing.

4) If the manufacturer represents that the vehicle is "grandfathered" (has been used in mass transit service in the United States before October 1, 1988, and is currently being produced without a major change in configuration or components), the manufacturer shall provide the name and address of the recipient of such a vehicle and the details of that vehicle's configuration and major components.

CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE WITH FTA'S BUS TESTING REQUIREMENTS
The undersigned [Contractor/Manufacturer] certifies that the vehicle offered in this procurement complies with 49 U.S.C. A 5323(c) and FTA's implementing regulation at 49 CFR Part 665.

The undersigned understands that misrepresenting the testing status of a vehicle acquired with Federal financial assistance may subject the undersigned to civil penalties as outlined in the Department of Transportation's regulation on Program Fraud Civil Remedies, 49 CFR Part 31. In addition, the undersigned understands that FTA may suspend or debar a manufacturer under the procedures in 49 CFR Part 29.

Date: _____

Signature: _____

Company Name: _____

Title: _____

9. PRE-AWARD AND POST DELIVERY AUDITS REQUIREMENTS

49 U.S.C. 5323
49 CFR Part 663

Applicability to Contracts
These requirements apply only to the acquisition of Rolling Stock/Turnkey.

Flow Down
These requirements should not flow down, except to the turnkey contractor as stated in Master Agreement.

Model Clause/Language
Clause and language therein are merely suggested. 49 C.F.R. Part 663 does not contain specific language to be included in third party contracts but does contain requirements applicable to subrecipients and third party contractors.

- Buy America certification is mandated under FTA regulation, "Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits of Rolling Stock Purchases," 49 C.F.R. 663.13.

-- Specific language for the Buy America certification is mandated by FTA regulation,

"Buy America Requirements--Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, as amended,"

49 C.F.R. 661.12, but has been modified to include FTA's Buy America requirements codified at 49 U.S.C. A 5323(j).

Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audit Requirements - The Contractor agrees to comply with 49 U.S.C. § 5323(l) and FTA's implementing regulation at 49 C.F.R. Part 663 and to submit the following certifications:

(1) Buy America Requirements: The Contractor shall complete and submit a declaration certifying either compliance or noncompliance with Buy America. If the Bidder/Offeror certifies compliance with Buy America, it shall submit documentation which lists 1) component and subcomponent parts of the rolling stock to be purchased identified by manufacturer of the parts, their country of origin and costs; and 2) the location of the final assembly point for the rolling stock, including a description of the activities that will take place at the final assembly point and the cost of final assembly.

(2) Solicitation Specification Requirements: The Contractor shall submit evidence that it will be capable of meeting the bid specifications.
(3) Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS): The Contractor shall submit 1) manufacturer's FMVSS self-certification sticker information that the vehicle complies with relevant FMVSS or 2) manufacturer's certified statement that the contracted buses will not be subject to FMVSS regulations.

BUY AMERICA CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE WITH FTA REQUIREMENTS
FOR BUSES, OTHER ROLLING STOCK, OR ASSOCIATED EQUIPMENT

(To be submitted with a bid or offer exceeding the small purchase threshold for Federal assistance programs, currently set at $100,000.)

Certificate of Compliance

The bidder hereby certifies that it will comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. Section 5323(j)(2)(C), Section 165(b)(3) of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, as amended, and the regulations of 49 C.F.R. 661.11:

Date: _____

Signature: _____

Company Name: _____

Title: _____

Certificate of Non-Compliance

The bidder hereby certifies that it cannot comply with the requirements of 49 U.S.C. Section 5323(j)(2)(C) and Section 165(b)(3) of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, as amended, but may qualify for an exception to the requirements consistent with 49 U.S.C. Sections 5323(j)(2)(B) or (j)(2)(D), Sections 165(b)(2) or (b)(4) of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act, as amended, and regulations in 49 C.F.R. 661.7.

Date: _____

Signature: _____

Company Name: _____

Title: _____

10. LOBBYING

31 U.S.C. 1352
49 CFR Part 19
49 CFR Part 20

Applicability to Contracts

The Lobbying requirements apply to Construction/Architectural and Engineering/Acquisition of Rolling Stock/Professional Service Contract/Operational Service Contract/Turnkey contracts.

Flow Down

The Lobbying requirements mandate the maximum flow down, pursuant to Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. § 1352(b)(5) and 49 C.F.R. Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7.

Mandatory Clause/Language

Clause and specific language therein are mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Clause pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, *et seq.*]

- Lobbying Certification and Disclosure of Lobbying Activities for third party contractors are mandated by 31 U.S.C. 1352(b)(5), as amended by Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, and DOT implementing regulation, "New Restrictions on Lobbying," at 49 CFR § 20.110(d)

- Language in Lobbying Certification is mandated by 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, Section 7, which provides that contractors file the certification required by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Modifications have been made to the Lobbying Certification pursuant to Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995.

- Use of "Disclosure of Lobbying Activities," Standard Form-LLL set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR Part 20, as amended by "Government wide Guidance For New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96) is mandated by 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A.

Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment, 31 U.S.C. 1352, as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, P.L. 104-65 [to be codified at 2 U.S.C. § 1601, et seq.] - Contractors who apply or bid for an award of $100,000 or more shall file the certification required by 49 CFR part 20, "New Restrictions on Lobbying." Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier shall also disclose the name of any registrant under the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 who has made lobbying contacts on its behalf with non-Federal funds with respect to that Federal contract, grant or award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the recipient.

APPENDIX A, 49 CFR PART 20--CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING
Certification for Contracts, Grants, Loans, and Cooperative Agreements
(To be submitted with each bid or offer exceeding $100,000)

The undersigned [Contractor] certifies, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for making lobbying contacts to an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form--LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions [as amended by "Government wide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying," 61 Fed. Reg. 1413 (1/19/96). Note: Language in paragraph (2) herein has been modified in accordance with Section 10 of the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 (P.L. 104-65, to be codified at 2 U.S.C. 1601, *et seq.*)]

(3) The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31, U.S.C. § 1352 (as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995). Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such failure.

[Note: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. § 1352(c)(1)-(2)(A), any person who makes a prohibited expenditure or fails to file or amend a required certification or disclosure form shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such expenditure or failure.]

The Contractor, _____, certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of each statement of its certification and disclosure, if any. In addition, the Contractor understands and agrees that the provisions of 31 U.S.C. A 3801, *et seq.,* apply to this certification and disclosure, if any.
_____ Signature of Contractor's Authorized Official

_____ Name and Title of Contractor's Authorized Official

_____ Date

11. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS

49 U.S.C. 5325
18 CFR 18.36 (i)
49 CFR 633.17

Applicability to Contracts
Reference Chart "Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Type of Contracts"

Flow Down
FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.

Model Clause/Language
The specified language is not mandated by the statutes or regulations referenced, but the language provided paraphrases the statutory or regulatory language.

Access to Records - The following access to records requirements apply to this Contract:

1. Where the Purchaser is not a State but a local government and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 18.36(i), the Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their authorized representatives access to any books, documents, papers and records of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions. Contractor also agrees, pursuant to 49 C.F.R. 633.17 to provide the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives including any PMO Contractor access to Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311.
2.

2. Where the Purchaser is a State and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R. 633.17, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator or his authorized representatives, including any PMO Contractor, access to the Contractor's records and construction sites pertaining to a major capital project, defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1, which is receiving federal financial assistance through the programs described at 49 U.S.C. 5307, 5309 or 5311. By definition, a major capital project excludes contracts of less than the simplified acquisition threshold currently set at $100,000.

3. Where the Purchaser enters into a negotiated contract for other than a small purchase or under the simplified acquisition threshold and is an institution of higher education, a hospital or other non-profit organization and is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 C.F.R.

19.48, Contractor agrees to provide the Purchaser, FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their duly authorized representatives with access to any books, documents, papers and record of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to this contract for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions.

4. Where any Purchaser which is the FTA Recipient or a subgrantee of the FTA Recipient in accordance with 49 U.S.C. 5325(a) enters into a contract for a capital project or improvement (defined at 49 U.S.C. 5302(a)1) through other than competitive bidding, the Contractor shall make available records related to the contract to the Purchaser, the Secretary of Transportation and the Comptroller General or any authorized officer or employee of any of them for the purposes of conducting an audit and inspection.

5. The Contractor agrees to permit any of the foregoing parties to reproduce by any means whatsoever or to copy excerpts and transcriptions as reasonably needed.

6. The Contractor agrees to maintain all books, records, accounts and reports required under this contract for a period of not less than three years after the date of termination or expiration of this contract, except in the event of litigation or settlement of claims arising from the performance of this contract, in which case Contractor agrees to maintain same until the Purchaser, the FTA Administrator, the Comptroller General, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have disposed of all such litigation, appeals, claims or exceptions related thereto. Reference 49 CFR 18.39(i)(11).

7. FTA does not require the inclusion of these requirements in subcontracts.

Requirements for Access to Records and Reports by Types of Contract

Contract Characteristics		Operational Service Contract	Turnkey	Construction	Architectural Engineering	Acquisition of Rolling Stock	Professional Services
I State Grantees a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000) b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		None None unless[1] non-competitive award	Those imposed on state pass thru to Contractor	None Yes, if non-competitive award or if funded thru[2] 5307/5309/5311	None None unless non-competitive award	None None unless non-competitive award	None None unless non-competitive award
II Non State Grantees a. Contracts below SAT ($100,000) b. Contracts above $100,000/Capital Projects		Yes[3] Yes[3]	Those imposed on non-state Grantee pass thru to Contractor	Yes Yes	Yes Yes	Yes Yes	Yes Yes

Sources of Authority:
[1] 49 USC 5325 (a)
[2] 49 CFR 633.17
[3] 18 CFR 18.36 (i)

---

12. FEDERAL CHANGES
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Federal Changes requirement applies to all contracts.

Flow Down
The Federal Changes requirement flows down appropriately to each applicable changed requirement.

Model Clause/Language
No specific language is mandated. The following language has been developed by FTA.

Federal Changes - Contractor shall at all times comply with all applicable FTA regulations, policies, procedures and directives, including without limitation those listed directly or by reference in the

Master Agreement between Purchaser and FTA, as they may be amended or promulgated from time to time during the term of this contract. Contractor's failure to so comply shall constitute a material breach of this contract.

---

13. BONDING REQUIREMENTS

Applicability to Contracts

For those construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding $100,000, FTA may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the recipient, provided that they meet the minimum requirements for construction contracts as follows:

a. A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five (5) percent of the bid price. The "bid guarantees" shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certifies check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

b. A performance bond on the part to the Contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

c. A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "payment bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment, as required by law, of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract. Payment bond amounts required from Contractors are as follows:

(1) 50% of the contract price if the contract price is not more than $1 million;

(2) 40% of the contract price if the contract price is more than $1 million but not more than $5 million; or

(3) $2.5 million if the contract price is more than $5 million.

d. A cash deposit, certified check or other negotiable instrument may be accepted by a grantee in lieu of performance and payment bonds, provided the grantee has established a procedure to assure that the interest of FTA is adequately protected. An irrevocable letter of credit would also satisfy the requirement for a bond.

Flow Down

Bonding requirements flow down to the first tier contractors.

Model Clauses/Language

FTA does not prescribe specific wording to be included in third party contracts. FTA has prepared sample clauses as follows:

Bid Bond Requirements (Construction)

(a) Bid Security

A Bid Bond must be issued by a fully qualified surety company acceptable to (Recipient) and listed as a company currently authorized under 31 CFR, Part 223 as possessing a Certificate of Authority as described thereunder.

(b) Rights Reserved

In submitting this Bid, it is understood and agreed by bidder that the right is reserved by (Recipient) to reject any and all bids, or part of any bid, and it is agreed that the Bid may not be withdrawn for a period of [ninety (90)] days subsequent to the opening of bids, without the written consent of (Recipient).

It is also understood and agreed that if the undersigned bidder should withdraw any part or all of his bid within [ninety (90)] days after the bid opening without the written consent of (Recipient), shall refuse or be unable to enter into this Contract, as provided above, or refuse or be unable to furnish adequate and acceptable Performance Bonds and Labor and Material Payments Bonds, as provided above, or refuse or be unable to furnish adequate and acceptable insurance, as provided above, he shall forfeit his bid security to the extent of (Recipient's) damages occasioned by such withdrawal, or refusal, or inability to enter into an agreement, or provide adequate security therefor.

It is further understood and agreed that to the extent the defaulting bidder's Bid Bond, Certified Check, Cashier's Check, Treasurer's Check, and/or Official Bank Check (excluding any income generated thereby which has been retained by (Recipient) as provided in [Item x "Bid Security" of the Instructions to Bidders]) shall prove inadequate to fully recompense (Recipient) for the damages occasioned by default, then the undersigned bidder agrees to indemnify (Recipient) and pay over to (Recipient) the difference between the bid security and (Recipient's) total damages, so as to make (Recipient) whole.

The undersigned understands that any material alteration of any of the above or any of the material contained on this form, other than that requested, will render the bid unresponsive.

Performance and Payment Bonding Requirements (Construction)

The Contractor shall be required to obtain performance and payment bonds as follows:

(a) Performance bonds

1. The penal amount of performance bonds shall be 100 percent of the original contract price, unless the (Recipient) determines that a lesser amount would be adequate for the protection of the (Recipient).

2. The (Recipient) may require additional performance bond protection when a contract price is increased. The increase in protection shall generally equal 100 percent of the increase in contract price. The (Recipient) may secure additional protection by directing the Contractor to increase the penal amount of the existing bond or to obtain an additional bond.

(b) Payment bonds

1. The penal amount of the payment bonds shall equal:

(i) Fifty percent of the contract price if the contract price is not more than $1 million.

(ii) Forty percent of the contract price if the contract price is more than $1 million but not more than $5 million; or

(iii) Two and one half million if the contract price is more than $5 million.

2. If the original contract price is $5 million or less, the (Recipient) may require additional protection as required by subparagraph 1 if the contract price is increased.

Performance and Payment Bonding Requirements (Non-Construction)

The Contractor may be required to obtain performance and payment bonds when necessary to protect the (Recipient's) interest.

(a) The following situations may warrant a performance bond:

1. (Recipient) property or funds are to be provided to the contractor for use in performing the contract or as partial compensation (as in retention of salvaged material).

2. A contractor sells assets to or merges with another concern, and the (Recipient), after recognizing the latter concern as the successor in interest, desires assurance that it is financially capable.

3. Substantial progress payments are made before delivery of end items starts.

4. Contracts are for dismantling, demolition, or removal of improvements.

(b) When it is determined that a performance bond is required, the Contractor shall be required to obtain performance bonds as follows:

1. The penal amount of performance bonds shall be 100 percent of the original contract price, unless the (Recipient) determines that a lesser amount would be adequate for the protection of the (Recipient).

2. The (Recipient) may require additional performance bond protection when a contract price is increased. The increase in protection shall generally equal 100 percent of the increase in contract price. The (Recipient) may secure additional protection by directing the Contractor to increase the penal amount of the existing bond or to obtain an additional bond.

(c) A payment bond is required only when a performance bond is required, and if the use of payment bond is in the (Recipient's) interest.

(d) When it is determined that a payment bond is required, the Contractor shall be required to obtain payment bonds as follows:

1. The penal amount of payment bonds shall equal:

(i) Fifty percent of the contract price if the contract price is not more than $1 million;

(ii) Forty percent of the contract price if the contract price is more than $1 million but not more than $5 million; or

(iii) Two and one half million if the contract price is increased.

Advance Payment Bonding Requirements

The Contractor may be required to obtain an advance payment bond if the contract contains an advance payment provision and a performance bond is not furnished. The (recipient) shall determine the amount of the advance payment bond necessary to protect the (Recipient).

Patent Infringement Bonding Requirements (Patent Indemnity)

The Contractor may be required to obtain a patent indemnity bond if a performance bond is not furnished and the financial responsibility of the Contractor is unknown or doubtful. The (recipient) shall determine the amount of the patent indemnity to protect the (Recipient).

Warranty of the Work and Maintenance Bonds

1. The Contractor warrants to (Recipient), the Architect and/or Engineer that all materials and equipment furnished under this Contract will be of highest quality and new unless otherwise specified by (Recipient), free from faults and defects and in conformance with the Contract Documents. All work not so conforming to these standards shall be considered defective. If

required by the [Project Manager], the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

2. The Work furnished must be of first quality and the workmanship must be the best obtainable in the various trades. The Work must be of safe, substantial and durable construction in all respects. The Contractor hereby guarantees the Work against defective materials or faulty workmanship for a minimum period of one (1) year after Final Payment by (Recipient) and shall replace or repair any defective materials or equipment or faulty workmanship during the period of the guarantee at no cost to (Recipient). As additional security for these guarantees, the Contractor shall, prior to the release of Final Payment [as provided in Item X below], furnish separate Maintenance (or Guarantee) Bonds in form acceptable to (Recipient) written by the same corporate surety that provides the Performance Bond and Labor and Material Payment Bond for this Contract. These bonds shall secure the Contractor's obligation to replace or repair defective materials and faulty workmanship for a minimum period of one (1) year after Final Payment and shall be written in an amount equal to ONE HUNDRED PERCENT (100%) of the CONTRACT SUM, as adjusted (if at all).

---

14. CLEAN AIR
42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq
40 CFR 15.61
49 CFR Part 18

Applicability to Contracts
The Clean Air requirements apply to all contracts exceeding $100,000, including indefinite quantities where the amount is expected to exceed $100,000 in any year.

Flow Down
The Clean Air requirements flow down to all subcontracts which exceed $100,000.

Model Clauses/Language
No specific language is required. FTA has proposed the following language.

Clean Air - (1) The Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. §§ 7401 et seq. The Contractor agrees to report each violation to the Purchaser and understands and agrees that the
Purchaser will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to FTA and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding $100,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

---

15. RECYCLED PRODUCTS

42 U.S.C. 6962
40 CFR Part 247
Executive Order 12873

Applicability to Contracts

The Recycled Products requirements apply to all contracts for items designated by the EPA, when the purchaser or contractor procures $10,000 or more of one of these items during the fiscal year, or has procured $10,000 or more of such items in the previous fiscal year, using Federal funds. New requirements for "recovered materials" will become effective May 1, 1996. These new regulations apply to all procurement actions involving items designated by the EPA, where the procuring agency purchases $10,000 or more of one of these items in a fiscal year, or when the cost of such items purchased during the previous fiscal year was $10,000.

Flow Down

These requirements flow down to all to all contractor and subcontractor tiers.

Model Clause/Language

No specific clause is mandated, but FTA has developed the following language.

Recovered Materials - The contractor agrees to comply with all the requirements of Section 6002 of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), as amended (42 U.S.C. 6962), including but not limited to the regulatory provisions of 40 CFR Part 247, and Executive Order 12873, as they apply to the procurement of the items designated in Subpart B of 40 CFR Part 247.

---

16. DAVIS-BACON AND COPELAND ANTI-KICKBACK ACTS

Background and Application

The Davis-Bacon and Copeland Acts are codified at 40 USC 3141, *et seq.* and 18 USC 874. The Acts apply to grantee construction contracts and subcontracts that "at least partly are financed by a loan or grant from the Federal Government." 40 USC 3145(a), 29 CFR 5.2(h), 49 CFR 18.36(i)(5). The Acts apply to any construction contract over $2,000. 40 USC 3142(a), 29 CFR 5.5(a). 'Construction,' for purposes of the Acts, includes "actual construction, alteration and/or repair, including painting and decorating." 29 CFR 5.5(a). The requirements of both Acts are incorporated into a single clause (*see* 29 CFR 3.11) enumerated at 29 CFR 5.5(a) and reproduced below.

The clause language is drawn directly from 29 CFR 5.5(a) and any deviation from the model clause below should be coordinated with counsel to ensure the Acts' requirements are satisfied.

Clause Language
Davis-Bacon and Copeland Anti-Kickback Acts

(1) **Minimum wages** - (i) All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937 or under the Housing Act of 1949 in the construction or development of the project), will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the contractor and such laborers and mechanics.

Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph (1)(iv) of this section; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in 29 CFR Part 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: Provided, That the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classifications and wage rates conformed under paragraph (1)(ii) of this section) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.

(ii)(A) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:

(1) Except with respect to helpers as defined as 29 CFR 5.2(n)(4), the work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and

(2) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and

(3) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination; and

(4) With respect to helpers as defined in 29 CFR 5.2(n)(4), such a classification prevails in the area in which the work is performed.

(B) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(C) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Administrator for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(D) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to paragraphs (a)(1)(ii) (B) or (C) of this section, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.

(iii) Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.

(iv) If the contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program, Provided, That the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.

(v)(A) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefor only when the following criteria have been met:

(1) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and

(2) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and

(3) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.

(B) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(C) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Administrator for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination with 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(D) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to paragraphs (a)(1)(v) (B) or (C) of this section, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.

(2) **Withholding** - The [***insert name of grantee***] shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld from the contractor under this contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937 or under the Housing Act of 1949 in the construction or development of the project), all or part of the wages required by the contract, the [***insert name of grantee***] may, after written notice to the contractor, sponsor, applicant, or owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.

(3) **Payrolls and basic records** - (i) Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937, or under the Housing Act of 1949, in the construction or development of the project). Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.

(ii)(A) The contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the [***insert name of grantee***] for transmission to the Federal Transit Administration. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under section 5.5(a)(3)(i) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5. This information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 is available for this purpose and may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents (Federal Stock Number 029-005-00014-1), U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors.

(B) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:

(1) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be maintained under section 5.5(a)(3)(i) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5 and that such information is correct and complete;

(2) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in Regulations, 29 CFR part 3;

(3) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.

(C) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph (a)(3)(ii)(B) of this section.

(D) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under section 1001 of title 18 and section 231 of title 31 of the United States Code.

(iii) The contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph (a)(3)(i) of this section available for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of the Federal Transit Administration or the Department of Labor, and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, the Federal agency may, after written notice to the contractor, sponsor, applicant, or owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR 5.12.

(4) **Apprentices and trainees** - (i) Apprentices - Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Bureau, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice. The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed. Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division of the U.S. Department of Labor determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination. In the event the

Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Bureau, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(ii) Trainees - Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration. The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration. Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(iii) Equal employment opportunity - The utilization of apprentices, trainees and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR part 30.

(5) **Compliance with Copeland Act requirements** - The contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR part 3, which are incorporated by reference in this contract.

(6) **Subcontracts** - The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses contained in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1) through (10) and such other clauses as the Federal Transit Administration may by appropriate instructions require, and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5.

(7) **Contract termination: debarment** - A breach of the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5 may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.

(8) **Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act requirements** - All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 CFR parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.

(9) **Disputes concerning labor standards** - Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this contract shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 CFR parts 5, 6, and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.

(10) **Certification of eligibility** - (i) By entering into this contract, the contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

(ii) No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

(iii) The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.

---

17. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT

Background and Application

The Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act is codified at 40 USC 3701, *et seq.* The Act applies to grantee contracts and subcontracts "financed at least in part by loans or grants from … the [Federal] Government." 40 USC 3701(b)(1)(B)(iii) and (b)(2), 29 CFR 5.2(h), 49 CFR 18.36(i)(6). Although the original Act required its application in any construction contract over $2,000 or non-construction contract to which the Act applied over $2,500 (and language to that effect is still found in 49 CFR 18.36(i)(6)), the Act no longer applies to any "contract in an amount that is not greater than $100,000." 40 USC 3701(b)(3) (A)(iii).

The Act applies to construction contracts and, in very limited circumstances, non-construction projects that employ "laborers or mechanics on a public work." These non-construction applications do not generally apply to transit procurements because transit procurements (to include rail cars and buses) are deemed "commercial items." 40 USC 3707, 41 USC 403 (12). A grantee that contemplates entering into a contract to procure a developmental or unique item should consult counsel to determine if the Act applies to that procurement and that additional language required by 29 CFR 5.5(c) must be added to the basic clause below.

The clause language is drawn directly from 29 CFR 5.5(b) and any deviation from the model clause below should be coordinated with counsel to ensure the Act's requirements are satisfied.

Clause Language
Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards

(1) **Overtime requirements** - No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.

(2) **Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages** - In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section, in the sum of $10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this section.

(3) **Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages** - The (***write in the name of the grantee***) shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (2) of this section.

(4) **Subcontracts** - The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this section.

---

18. [RESERVED]

---

19. NO GOVERNMENT OBLIGATION TO THIRD PARTIES

Applicability to Contracts
Applicable to all contracts.

Flow Down
Not required by statute or regulation for either primary contractors or subcontractors, this concept should flow down to all levels to clarify, to all parties to the contract, that the Federal Government does not have contractual liability to third parties, absent specific written consent.

Model Clause/Language
While no specific language is required, FTA has developed the following language.

No Obligation by the Federal Government.

(1) The Purchaser and Contractor acknowledge and agree that, notwithstanding any concurrence by the Federal Government in or approval of the solicitation or award of the underlying contract, absent the express written consent by the Federal Government, the Federal Government is not a party to this contract and shall not be subject to any obligations or liabilities to the Purchaser, Contractor, or any other party (whether or not a party to that contract) pertaining to any matter resulting from the underlying contract.

(2) The Contractor agrees to include the above clause in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clause shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to its provisions.

---

20. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS AND RELATED ACTS
31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.
49 CFR Part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001
49 U.S.C. 5307

Applicability to Contracts
These requirements are applicable to all contracts.

Flow Down
These requirements flow down to contractors and subcontractors who make, present, or submit covered claims and statements.

Model Clause/Language
These requirements have no specified language, so FTA proffers the following language.

Program Fraud and False or Fraudulent Statements or Related Acts.

(1) The Contractor acknowledges that the provisions of the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986, as amended, 31 U.S.C. § 3801 et seq. and U.S. DOT regulations, "Program Fraud Civil Remedies," 49 C.F.R. Part 31, apply to its actions pertaining to this Project. Upon execution of the underlying contract, the Contractor certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of any statement it has made, it makes, it may make, or causes to be made, pertaining to the underlying contract or the FTA assisted project for which this contract work is being performed. In addition to other penalties that may be applicable, the Contractor further acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification, the Federal Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986 on the Contractor to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(2) The Contractor also acknowledges that if it makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim, statement, submission, or certification to the Federal Government under a contract connected with a project that is financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance originally awarded by FTA under the authority of 49 U.S.C. § 5307, the Government reserves the right to impose the penalties of 18 U.S.C. § 1001 and 49 U.S.C. § 5307(n)(1) on the Contractor, to the extent the Federal Government deems appropriate.

(3) The Contractor agrees to include the above two clauses in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA. It is further agreed that the clauses shall not be modified, except to identify the subcontractor who will be subject to the provisions.

---

21. TERMINATION
49 U.S.C. Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E

Applicability to Contracts
All contracts (with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education,) in excess of $10,000 shall contain suitable provisions for termination by the grantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (For contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher education the threshold is $100,000.) In addition, such contracts shall describe conditions under which the contract may be terminated for default as well as conditions where the contract may be terminated because of circumstances beyond the control of the contractor.

Flow Down
The termination requirements flow down to all contracts in excess of $10,000, with the exception of contracts with nonprofit organizations and institutions of higher learning.

Model Clause/Language
FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such clauses. The following are suggestions of clauses to be used in different types of contracts:

a. Termination for Convenience (General Provision) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, at any time by written notice to the Contractor when it is in the Government's best interest. The Contractor shall be paid its costs, including contract close-out costs, and profit on work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to (Recipient) to be paid the Contractor. If the Contractor has any property in its possession belonging to the (Recipient), the Contractor will account for the same, and dispose of it in the manner the (Recipient) directs.

b. Termination for Default [Breach or Cause] (General Provision) If the Contractor does not deliver supplies in accordance with the contract delivery schedule, or, if the contract is for services, the Contractor fails to perform in the manner called for in the contract, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of the contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. Termination shall be effected by serving a notice of termination on the contractor setting forth the manner in which the Contractor is in default. The contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in the contract.

If it is later determined by the (Recipient) that the Contractor had an excusable reason for not performing, such as a strike, fire, or flood, events which are not the fault of or are beyond the control of the Contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new delivery of performance schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

c. Opportunity to Cure (General Provision) The (Recipient) in its sole discretion may, in the case of a termination for breach or default, allow the Contractor [an appropriately short period of time] in which to cure the defect. In such case, the notice of termination will state the time period in which cure is permitted and other appropriate conditions

If Contractor fails to remedy to (Recipient)'s satisfaction the breach or default of any of the terms, covenants, or conditions of this Contract within [ten (10) days] after receipt by Contractor of written notice from (Recipient) setting forth the nature of said breach or default, (Recipient) shall have the right to terminate the Contract without any further obligation to Contractor. Any such termination for default shall not in any way operate to preclude (Recipient) from also pursuing all available remedies against Contractor and its sureties for said breach or default.

d. Waiver of Remedies for any Breach In the event that (Recipient) elects to waive its remedies for any breach by Contractor of any covenant, term or condition of this Contract, such waiver by (Recipient) shall not limit (Recipient)'s remedies for any succeeding breach of that or of any other term, covenant, or condition of this Contract.

e. Termination for Convenience (Professional or Transit Service Contracts) The (Recipient), by written notice, may terminate this contract, in whole or in part, when it is in the Government's interest. If this contract is terminated, the Recipient shall be liable only for payment under the payment provisions of this contract for services rendered before the effective date of termination.

f. Termination for Default (Supplies and Service) If the Contractor fails to deliver supplies or to perform the services within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for supplies delivered and accepted, or services performed in accordance with the manner or performance set forth in this contract.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

g. Termination for Default (Transportation Services) If the Contractor fails to pick up the commodities or to perform the services, including delivery services, within the time specified in this contract or any extension or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor

a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of default. The Contractor will only be paid the contract price for services performed in accordance with the manner of performance set forth in this contract.

If this contract is terminated while the Contractor has possession of Recipient goods, the Contractor shall, upon direction of the (Recipient), protect and preserve the goods until surrendered to the Recipient or its agent. The Contractor and (Recipient) shall agree on payment for the preservation and protection of goods. Failure to agree on an amount will be resolved under the Dispute clause.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the (Recipient).

h. Termination for Default (Construction) If the Contractor refuses or fails to prosecute the work or any separable part, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the time specified in this contract or any extension or fails to complete the work within this time, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any other provisions of this contract, the (Recipient) may terminate this contract for default. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature of the default. In this event, the Recipient may take over the work and compete it by contract or otherwise, and may take possession of and use any materials, appliances, and plant on the work site necessary for completing the work. The Contractor and its sureties shall be liable for any damage to the Recipient resulting from the Contractor's refusal or failure to complete the work within specified time, whether or not the Contractor's right to proceed with the work is terminated. This liability includes any increased costs incurred by the Recipient in completing the work.

The Contractor's right to proceed shall not be terminated nor the Contractor charged with damages under this clause if-

1. the delay in completing the work arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor. Examples of such causes include: acts of God, acts of the Recipient, acts of another Contractor in the performance of a contract with the Recipient, epidemics, quarantine restrictions, strikes, freight embargoes; and

2. the contractor, within [10] days from the beginning of any delay, notifies the (Recipient) in writing of the causes of delay. If in the judgment of the (Recipient), the delay is excusable, the time for completing the work shall be extended. The judgment of the (Recipient) shall be final and conclusive on the parties, but subject to appeal under the Disputes clauses.

If, after termination of the Contractor's right to proceed, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, or that the delay was excusable, the rights and obligations of the parties will be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

i. Termination for Convenience or Default (Architect and Engineering) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract in whole or in part, for the Recipient's convenience or because of the failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations. The (Recipient) shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the nature, extent, and effective date of the termination. Upon receipt of the notice, the Contractor shall (1) immediately discontinue all services affected (unless the notice directs otherwise), and (2) deliver to the Contracting Officer all data, drawings, specifications, reports, estimates, summaries, and other information and materials accumulated in performing this contract, whether completed or in process.

If the termination is for the convenience of the Recipient, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment in the contract price but shall allow no anticipated profit on unperformed services.

If the termination is for failure of the Contractor to fulfill the contract obligations, the Recipient may complete the work by contact or otherwise and the Contractor shall be liable for any additional cost incurred by the Recipient.

If, after termination for failure to fulfill contract obligations, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Recipient.

j. Termination for Convenience of Default (Cost-Type Contracts) The (Recipient) may terminate this contract, or any portion of it, by serving a notice or termination on the Contractor. The notice shall state whether the termination is for convenience of the (Recipient) or for the default of the Contractor. If the termination is for default, the notice shall state the manner in which the contractor has failed to perform the requirements of the contract. The Contractor shall account for any property in its possession paid for from funds received from the (Recipient), or property supplied to the Contractor by the (Recipient). If the termination is for default, the (Recipient) may fix the fee, if the contract provides for a fee, to be paid the contractor in proportion to the value, if any, of work performed up to the time of termination. The Contractor shall promptly submit its termination claim to the (Recipient) and the parties shall negotiate the termination settlement to be paid the Contractor.

If the termination is for the convenience of the (Recipient), the Contractor shall be paid its contract close-out costs, and a fee, if the contract provided for payment of a fee, in proportion to the work performed up to the time of termination.

If, after serving a notice of termination for default, the (Recipient) determines that the Contractor has an excusable reason for not performing, such as strike, fire, flood, events which are not the fault of and are beyond the control of the contractor, the (Recipient), after setting up a new work schedule, may allow the Contractor to continue work, or treat the termination as a termination for convenience.

22. GOVERNMENT-WIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT)

Background and Applicability

In conjunction with the Office of Management and Budget and other affected Federal agencies, DOT published an update to 49 CFR Part 29 on November 26, 2003. This government-wide regulation implements Executive Order 12549, *Debarment and Suspension*, Executive Order 12689, *Debarment and Suspension*, and 31 U.S.C. 6101 note (Section 2455, Public Law 103-355, 108 Stat. 3327).

The provisions of Part 29 apply to all grantee contracts and subcontracts at any level expected to equal or exceed $25,000 as well as any contract or subcontract (at any level) for Federally required auditing services. 49 CFR 29.220(b). This represents a change from prior practice in that the dollar threshold for application of these rules has been lowered from $100,000 to $25,000. These are contracts and subcontracts referred to in the regulation as "covered transactions."

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors (at any level) that enter into covered transactions are required to verify that the entity (as well as its principals and affiliates) they propose to contract or subcontract with is not excluded or disqualified. They do this by (a) Checking the Excluded Parties List System, (b) Collecting a certification from that person, or (c) Adding a clause or condition to the contract or subcontract. This represents a change from prior practice in that certification is still acceptable but is no longer required. 49 CFR 29.300.

Grantees, contractors, and subcontractors who enter into covered transactions also must require the entities they contract with to comply with 49 CFR 29, subpart C and include this requirement in their own subsequent covered transactions (i.e., the requirement flows down to subcontracts at all levels).

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the optional method of verifying that contractors are not excluded or disqualified by certification.

Suspension and Debarment

> This contract is a covered transaction for purposes of 49 CFR Part 29. As such, the contractor is required to verify that none of the contractor, its principals, as defined at 49 CFR 29.995, or affiliates, as defined at 49 CFR 29.905, are excluded or disqualified as defined at 49 CFR 29.940 and 29.945.
>
> The contractor is required to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C and must include the requirement to comply with 49 CFR 29, Subpart C in any lower tier covered transaction it enters into.
> By signing and submitting its bid or proposal, the bidder or proposer certifies as follows:

The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact relied upon by **{insert agency name}**. If it is later determined that the bidder or proposer knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to remedies available to **{insert agency name}**, the Federal Government may pursue available remedies, including but not limited to suspension and/or debarment. The bidder or proposer agrees to comply with the requirements of 49 CFR 29, Subpart C while this offer is valid and throughout the period of any contract that may arise from this offer. The bidder or proposer further agrees to include a provision requiring such compliance in its lower tier covered transactions.

---

23. PRIVACY ACT
5 U.S.C. 552

Applicability to Contracts
When a grantee maintains files on drug and alcohol enforcement activities for FTA, and those files are organized so that information could be retrieved by personal identifier, the Privacy Act requirements apply to all contracts.

Flow Down
The Federal Privacy Act requirements flow down to each third party contractor and their contracts at every tier.

Model Clause/Language
The text of the following clause has not been mandated by statute or specific regulation, but has been developed by FTA.

Contracts Involving Federal Privacy Act Requirements - The following requirements apply to the Contractor and its employees that administer any system of records on behalf of the Federal Government under any contract:

(1) The Contractor agrees to comply with, and assures the compliance of its employees with, the information restrictions and other applicable requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974,

5 U.S.C. § 552a. Among other things, the Contractor agrees to obtain the express consent of the Federal Government before the Contractor or its employees operate a system of records on behalf of the Federal Government. The Contractor understands that the requirements of the Privacy Act, including the civil and criminal penalties for violation of that Act, apply to those individuals involved, and that failure to comply with the terms of the Privacy Act may result in termination of the underlying contract.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract to administer any system of records on behalf of the Federal Government financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

24. CIVIL RIGHTS REQUIREMENTS

29 U.S.C. § 623, 42 U.S.C. § 2000
42 U.S.C. § 6102, 42 U.S.C. § 12112
42 U.S.C. § 12132, 49 U.S.C. § 5332
29 CFR Part 1630, 41 CFR Parts 60 et seq.

Applicability to Contracts

The Civil Rights Requirements apply to all contracts.

Flow Down

The Civil Rights requirements flow down to all third party contractors and their contracts at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

The following clause was predicated on language contained at 49 CFR Part 19, Appendix A, but FTA has shortened the lengthy text.

Civil Rights - The following requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(1) Nondiscrimination - In accordance with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000d, section 303 of the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 6102, section 202 of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, 42 U.S.C. § 12132, and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees that it will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, age, or disability. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with applicable Federal implementing regulations and other implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(2) Equal Employment Opportunity - The following equal employment opportunity requirements apply to the underlying contract:

(a) Race, Color, Creed, National Origin, Sex - In accordance with Title VII of the Civil Rights Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 2000e, and Federal transit laws at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable equal employment opportunity requirements of U.S. Department of Labor (U.S. DOL) regulations, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor," 41 C.F.R. Parts 60 et seq., (which implement Executive Order No. 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order No. 11375, "Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," 42 U.S.C. § 2000e note), and with any applicable Federal statutes, executive orders, regulations, and Federal policies that may in the future affect construction activities undertaken in the course of the Project. The Contractor agrees to take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, color, creed, national origin, sex, or age. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion or transfer, recruitment or recruitment advertising, layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of

compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(b) Age - In accordance with section 4 of the Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967, as amended, 29 U.S.C. § § 623 and Federal transit law at 49 U.S.C. § 5332, the Contractor agrees to refrain from discrimination against present and prospective employees for reason of age. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(c) Disabilities - In accordance with section 102 of the Americans with Disabilities Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 12112, the Contractor agrees that it will comply with the requirements of U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, "Regulations to Implement the Equal Employment Provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act," 29 C.F.R. Part 1630, pertaining to employment of persons with disabilities. In addition, the Contractor agrees to comply with any implementing requirements FTA may issue.

(3) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA, modified only if necessary to identify the affected parties.

---

25. BREACHES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION

49 CFR Part 18
FTA Circular 4220.1E

Applicability to Contracts

All contracts in excess of $100,000 shall contain provisions or conditions which will allow for administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. This may include provisions for bonding, penalties for late or inadequate performance, retained earnings, liquidated damages or other appropriate measures.

Flow Down

The Breaches and Dispute Resolutions requirements flow down to all tiers.

Model Clauses/Language

FTA does not prescribe the form or content of such provisions. What provisions are developed will depend on the circumstances and the type of contract. Recipients should consult legal counsel in developing appropriate clauses. The following clauses are examples of provisions from various FTA third party contracts.

Disputes - Disputes arising in the performance of this Contract which are not resolved by agreement of the parties shall be decided in writing by the authorized representative of (Recipient)'s [title of employee]. This decision shall be final and conclusive unless within [ten (10)] days from the date of receipt of its copy, the Contractor mails or otherwise furnishes a written appeal to the [title of

employee]. In connection with any such appeal, the Contractor shall be afforded an opportunity to be heard and to offer evidence in support of its position. The decision of the [title of employee] shall be binding upon the Contractor and the Contractor shall abide be the decision.

Performance During Dispute - Unless otherwise directed by (Recipient), Contractor shall continue performance under this Contract while matters in dispute are being resolved.

Claims for Damages - Should either party to the Contract suffer injury or damage to person or property because of any act or omission of the party or of any of his employees, agents or others for whose acts he is legally liable, a claim for damages therefor shall be made in writing to such other party within a reasonable time after the first observance of such injury of damage.

Remedies - Unless this contract provides otherwise, all claims, counterclaims, disputes and other matters in question between the (Recipient) and the Contractor arising out of or relating to this agreement or its breach will be decided by arbitration if the parties mutually agree, or in a court of competent jurisdiction within the State in which the (Recipient) is located.

Rights and Remedies - The duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and the rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of any duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law. No action or failure to act by the (Recipient), (Architect) or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of any right or duty afforded any of them under the Contract, nor shall any such action or failure to act constitute an approval of or acquiescence in any breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.

---

26. PATENT AND RIGHTS IN DATA

37 CFR Part 401
49 CFR Parts 18 and 19

Applicability to Contracts

Patent and rights in data requirements for federally assisted projects ONLY apply to research projects in which FTA finances the purpose of the grant is to finance the development of a product or information. These patent and data rights requirements do not apply to capital projects or operating projects, even though a small portion of the sales price may cover the cost of product development or writing the user's manual.

Flow Down

The Patent and Rights in Data requirements apply to all contractors and their contracts at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

The FTA patent clause is substantially similar to the text of 49 C.F.R. Part 19, Appendix A, Section 5, but the rights in data clause reflects FTA objectives. For patent rights, FTA is governed by Federal law and regulation. For data rights, the text on copyrights is insufficient to meet FTA's purposes for awarding research grants. This model clause, with larger rights as a standard, is proposed with the understanding that this standard could be modified to FTA's needs.

CONTRACTS INVOLVING EXPERIMENTAL, DEVELOPMENTAL, OR RESEARCH WORK.

A. **Rights in Data** - This following requirements apply to each contract involving experimental, developmental or research work:

(1) The term "subject data" used in this clause means recorded information, whether or not copyrighted, that is delivered or specified to be delivered under the contract. The term includes graphic or pictorial delineation in media such as drawings or photographs; text in specifications or related performance or design-type documents; machine forms such as punched cards, magnetic tape, or computer memory printouts; and information retained in computer memory. Examples include, but are not limited to: computer software, engineering drawings and associated lists, specifications, standards, process sheets, manuals, technical reports, catalog item identifications, and related information. The term "subject data" does not include financial reports, cost analyses, and similar information incidental to contract administration.

(2) The following restrictions apply to all subject data first produced in the performance of the contract to which this Attachment has been added:

(a) Except for its own internal use, the Purchaser or Contractor may not publish or reproduce subject data in whole or in part, or in any manner or form, nor may the Purchaser or Contractor authorize others to do so, without the written consent of the Federal Government, until such time as the Federal Government may have either released or approved the release of such data to the public; this restriction on publication, however, does not apply to any contract with an academic institution.

(b) In accordance with 49 C.F.R. § 18.34 and 49 C.F.R. § 19.36, the Federal Government reserves a royalty-free, non-exclusive and irrevocable license to reproduce, publish, or otherwise use, and to authorize others to use, for "Federal Government purposes," any subject data or copyright described in subsections (2)(b)1 and (2)(b)2 of this clause below. As used in the previous sentence, "for Federal Government purposes," means use only for the direct purposes of the Federal Government. Without the copyright owner's consent, the Federal Government may not extend its Federal license to any other party.

1. Any subject data developed under that contract, whether or not a copyright has been obtained; and

2. Any rights of copyright purchased by the Purchaser or Contractor using Federal assistance in whole or in part provided by FTA.

(c) When FTA awards Federal assistance for experimental, developmental, or research work, it is FTA's general intention to increase transportation knowledge available to the public, rather than to restrict the benefits resulting from the work to participants in that work. Therefore, unless FTA determines otherwise, the Purchaser and the Contractor performing experimental, developmental, or research work required by the underlying contract to which this Attachment is added agrees to permit FTA to make available to the public, either FTA's license in the copyright to any subject data developed in the

course of that contract, or a copy of the subject data first produced under the contract for which a copyright has not been obtained. If the experimental, developmental, or research work, which is the subject of the underlying contract, is not completed for any reason whatsoever, all data developed under that contract shall become subject data as defined in subsection (a) of this clause and shall be delivered as the Federal Government may direct. This subsection (c) , however, does not apply to adaptations of automatic data processing equipment or programs for the Purchaser or Contractor's use whose costs are financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA for transportation capital projects.

(d) Unless prohibited by state law, upon request by the Federal Government, the Purchaser and the Contractor agree to indemnify, save, and hold harmless the Federal Government, its officers, agents, and employees acting within the scope of their official duties against any liability, including costs and expenses, resulting from any willful or intentional violation by the Purchaser or Contractor of proprietary rights, copyrights, or right of privacy, arising out of the publication, translation, reproduction, delivery, use, or disposition of any data furnished under that contract. Neither the Purchaser nor the Contractor shall be required to indemnify the Federal Government for any such liability arising out of the wrongful act of any employee, official, or agents of the Federal Government.
(e) Nothing contained in this clause on rights in data shall imply a license to the Federal Government under any patent or be construed as affecting the scope of any license or other right otherwise granted to the Federal Government under any patent.

(f) Data developed by the Purchaser or Contractor and financed entirely without using Federal assistance provided by the Federal Government that has been incorporated into work required by the underlying contract to which this Attachment has been added is exempt from the requirements of subsections (b), (c), and (d) of this clause, provided that the Purchaser or Contractor identifies that data in writing at the time of delivery of the contract work.

(g) Unless FTA determines otherwise, the Contractor agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract for experimental, developmental, or research work financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

(3) Unless the Federal Government later makes a contrary determination in writing, irrespective of the Contractor's status (i.e., a large business, small business, state government or state instrumentality, local government, nonprofit organization, institution of higher education, individual, etc.), the Purchaser and the Contractor agree to take the necessary actions to provide, through FTA, those rights in that invention due the Federal Government as described in

U.S. Department of Commerce regulations, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements," 37 C.F.R. Part 401.

(4) The Contractor also agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract for experimental, developmental, or research work financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

B. **Patent Rights** - The following requirements apply to each contract involving experimental, developmental, or research work:

(1) General - If any invention, improvement, or discovery is conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under the contract to which this Attachment has been added, and that invention, improvement, or discovery is patentable under the laws of the United States of America or any foreign country, the Purchaser and Contractor agree to take actions necessary to provide immediate notice and a detailed report to the party at a higher tier until FTA is ultimately notified.

(2) Unless the Federal Government later makes a contrary determination in writing, irrespective of the Contractor's status (a large business, small business, state government or state instrumentality, local government, nonprofit organization, institution of higher education, individual), the Purchaser and the Contractor agree to take the necessary actions to provide, through FTA, those rights in that invention due the Federal Government as described in U.S. Department of Commerce regulations, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements," 37 C.F.R. Part 401.

(3) The Contractor also agrees to include the requirements of this clause in each subcontract for experimental, developmental, or research work financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

---

27. TRANSIT EMPLOYEE PROTECTIVE AGREEMENTS

49 U.S.C. § 5310, § 5311, and § 5333
29 CFR Part 215

Applicability to Contracts

The Transit Employee Protective Provisions apply to each contract for transit operations performed by employees of a Contractor recognized by FTA to be a transit operator. (Because transit operations involve many activities apart from directly driving or operating transit vehicles, FTA determines which activities constitute transit "operations" for purposes of this clause.)

Flow Down

These provisions are applicable to all contracts and subcontracts at every tier.

Model Clause/Language

Since no mandatory language is specified, FTA had developed the following language:

Transit Employee Protective Provisions. (1) The Contractor agrees to the comply with applicable transit employee protective requirements as follows:

(a) General Transit Employee Protective Requirements - To the extent that FTA determines that transit operations are involved, the Contractor agrees to carry out the transit operations work on the underlying contract in compliance with terms and conditions determined by the U.S. Secretary of Labor

to be fair and equitable to protect the interests of employees employed under this contract and to meet the employee protective requirements of 49 U.S.C. A 5333(b), and U.S. DOL guidelines at 29 C.F.R. Part 215, and any amendments thereto. These terms and conditions are identified in the letter of certification from the U.S. DOL to FTA applicable to the FTA Recipient's project from which Federal assistance is provided to support work on the underlying contract. The Contractor agrees to carry out that work in compliance with the conditions stated in that U.S. DOL letter. The requirements of this subsection (1), however, do not apply to any contract financed with Federal assistance provided by FTA either for projects for elderly individuals and individuals with disabilities authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5310(a)(2), or for projects for nonurbanized areas authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5311. Alternate provisions for those projects are set forth in subsections (b) and (c) of this clause.

(b) Transit Employee Protective Requirements for Projects Authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5310(a)(2) for Elderly Individuals and Individuals with Disabilities - If the contract involves transit operations financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5310(a)(2), and if the U.S. Secretary of Transportation has determined or determines in the future that the employee protective requirements of 49 U.S.C. § 5333(b) are necessary or appropriate for the state and the public body subrecipient for which work is performed on the underlying contract, the Contractor agrees to carry out the Project in compliance with the terms and conditions determined by the U.S. Secretary of Labor to meet the requirements of 49 U.S.C. § 5333(b), U.S. DOL guidelines at 29 C.F.R. Part 215, and any amendments thereto. These terms and conditions are identified in the U.S. DOL's letter of certification to FTA, the date of which is set forth Grant Agreement or Cooperative Agreement with the state. The Contractor agrees to perform transit operations in connection with the underlying contract in compliance with the conditions stated in that U.S. DOL letter.

(c) Transit Employee Protective Requirements for Projects Authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5311 in Nonurbanized Areas - If the contract involves transit operations financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5311, the Contractor agrees to comply with the terms and conditions of the Special Warranty for the Nonurbanized Area Program agreed to by the U.S. Secretaries of Transportation and Labor, dated May 31, 1979, and the procedures implemented by U.S. DOL or any revision thereto.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to include the any applicable requirements in each subcontract involving transit operations financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FTA.

---

28. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE)

49 CFR Part 26

Background and Applicability

The newest version on the Department of Transportation's Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) program became effective July 16, 2003. The rule provides guidance to grantees on the use of overall and contract goals, requirement to include DBE provisions in subcontracts, evaluating DBE participation where specific contract goals have been set, reporting requirements, and replacement of DBE subcontractors. Additionally, the DBE program dictates payment terms and conditions (including

limitations on retainage) applicable to all subcontractors regardless of whether they are DBE firms or not.

The DBE program applies to all DOT-assisted contracting activities. A formal clause such as that below must be included in all contracts above the micro-purchase level. The requirements of clause subsection b flow down to subcontracts.

A substantial change to the payment provisions in this newest version of Part 26 concerns retainage (*see* section 26.29). Grantee choices concerning retainage should be reflected in the language choices in clause subsection d.

Clause Language

The following clause language is suggested, not mandatory. It incorporates the payment terms and conditions applicable to all subcontractors based in Part 26 as well as those related only to DBE subcontractors. The suggested language allows for the options available to grantees concerning retainage, specific contract goals, and evaluation of DBE subcontracting participation when specific contract goals have been established.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises

a. This contract is subject to the requirements of Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 26, *Participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises in Department of Transportation Financial Assistance Programs.* The national goal for participation of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) is 10%. The agency's overall goal for DBE participation is **__ %.** A separate contract goal **[of __ % DBE participation has] [has not]** been established for this procurement.

b. The contractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of this DOT-assisted contract. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as **{insert agency name}** deems appropriate. Each subcontract the contractor signs with a subcontractor must include the assurance in this paragraph (*see* 49 CFR 26.13(b)).

c. ***{If a separate contract goal has been established, use the following}*** Bidders/offerors are required to document sufficient DBE participation to meet these goals or, alternatively, document adequate good faith efforts to do so, as provided for in 49 CFR 26.53. Award of this contract is conditioned on submission of the following **[concurrent with and accompanying sealed bid] [concurrent with and accompanying an initial proposal] [prior to award]**:

1. The names and addresses of DBE firms that will participate in this contract;
2. A description of the work each DBE will perform;
3. The dollar amount of the participation of each DBE firm participating;

4. Written documentation of the bidder/offeror's commitment to use a DBE subcontractor whose participation it submits to meet the contract goal;
5. Written confirmation from the DBE that it is participating in the contract as provided in the prime contractor's commitment; and
6. If the contract goal is not met, evidence of good faith efforts to do so.

[Bidders][Offerors] must present the information required above **[as a matter of responsiveness] [with initial proposals] [prior to contract award]** (*see* 49 CFR 26.53(3)).

{If no separate contract goal has been established, use the following} The successful bidder/offeror will be required to report its DBE participation obtained through race-neutral means throughout the period of performance.

d. The contractor is required to pay its subcontractors performing work related to this contract for satisfactory performance of that work no later than 30 days after the contractor's receipt of payment for that work from the **{insert agency name}**. In addition, **[the contractor may not hold retainage from its subcontractors.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after the subcontractor's work related to this contract is satisfactorily completed.] [is required to return any retainage payments to those subcontractors within 30 days after incremental acceptance of the subcontractor's work by the {insert agency name} and contractor's receipt of the partial retainage payment related to the subcontractor's work.]**

e. The contractor must promptly notify **{insert agency name}**, whenever a DBE subcontractor performing work related to this contract is terminated or fails to complete its work, and must make good faith efforts to engage another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work. The contractor may not terminate any DBE subcontractor and perform that work through its own forces or those of an affiliate without prior written consent of **{insert agency name}**.

---

29. [RESERVED]

---

30. INCORPORATION OF FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION (FTA) TERMS

FTA Circular 4220.1E

Applicability to Contracts

The incorporation of FTA terms applies to all contracts.

Flow Down

The incorporation of FTA terms has unlimited flow down.

Model Clause/Language

FTA has developed the following incorporation of terms language**:**

Incorporation of Federal Transit Administration (FTA) Terms - The preceding provisions include, in part, certain Standard Terms and Conditions required by DOT, whether or not expressly set forth in the preceding contract provisions. All contractual provisions required by DOT, as set forth in FTA Circular 4220.1E, are hereby incorporated by reference. Anything to the contrary herein notwithstanding, all FTA mandated terms shall be deemed to control in the event of a conflict with other provisions contained in this Agreement. The Contractor shall not perform any act, fail to perform any act, or refuse to comply with any (name of grantee) requests which would cause (name of grantee) to be in violation of the FTA terms and conditions.

---

31. DRUG AND ALCOHOL TESTING

49 U.S.C. §5331
49 CFR Parts 653 and 654

Applicability to Contracts

The Drug and Alcohol testing provisions apply to Operational Service Contracts.

Flow Down Requirements

Anyone who performs a safety-sensitive function for the recipient or subrecipient is required to comply with 49 CFR 653 and 654, with certain exceptions for contracts involving maintenance services. Maintenance contractors for non-urbanized area formula program grantees are not subject to the rules. Also, the rules do not apply to maintenance subcontractors.

Model Clause/Language

Introduction

FTA's drug and alcohol rules, 49 CFR 653 and 654, respectively, are unique among the regulations issued by FTA. First, they require recipients to ensure that any entity performing a safety-sensitive function on the recipient's behalf (usually subrecipients and/or contractors) implement a complex drug and alcohol testing program that complies with Parts 653 and 654. Second, the rules condition the receipt of certain kinds of FTA funding on the recipient's compliance with the rules; thus, the recipient is not in compliance with the rules unless every entity that performs a safety-sensitive function on the recipient's behalf is in compliance with the rules. Third, the rules do not specify how a recipient ensures that its subrecipients and/or contractors comply with them.

How a recipient does so depends on several factors, including whether the contractor is covered independently by the drug and alcohol rules of another Department of Transportation operating administration, the nature of the relationship that the recipient has with the contractor, and the financial resources available to the recipient to oversee the contractor's drug and alcohol testing program. In short, there are a variety of ways a recipient can ensure that its subrecipients and contractors comply with the rules.

Therefore, FTA has developed three model contract provisions for recipients to use "as is" or to modify to fit their particular situations.

Explanation of Model Contract Clauses

Under Option 1, the recipient ensures the contractor's compliance with the rules by requiring the contractor to participate in a drug and alcohol program administered by the recipient. The advantages of doing this are obvious: the recipient maintains total control over its compliance with 49 CFR 653 and 654. The disadvantage is that the recipient, which may not directly employ any safety-sensitive employees, has to implement a complex testing program. Therefore, this may be a practical option only for those recipients which have a testing program for their employees, and can add the contractor's safety-sensitive employees to that program.

Under Option 2, the recipient relies on the contractor to implement a drug and alcohol testing program that complies with 49 CFR 653 and 654, but retains the ability to monitor the contractor's testing program; thus, the recipient has less control over its compliance with the drug and alcohol testing rules than it does under option 1. The advantage of this approach is that it places the responsibility for complying with the rules on the entity that is actually performing the safety-sensitive function. Moreover, it reserves to the recipient the power to ensure that the contractor complies with the program. The disadvantage of Option 2 is that without adequate monitoring of the contractor's program, the recipient may find itself out of compliance with the rules.

Under option 3, the recipient specifies some or all of the specific features of a contractor's drug and alcohol compliance program. Thus, it requires the recipient to decide what it wants to do and how it wants to do it. The advantage of this option is that the recipient has more control over the contractor's drug and alcohol testing program, yet it is not actually administering the testing program. The disadvantage is that the recipient has to specify and understand clearly what it wants to do and why.

Drug and Alcohol Testing
Option 1

The contractor agrees to:

(a) participate in (grantee's or recipient's) drug and alcohol program established in compliance with 49 CFR 653 and 654.

Drug and Alcohol Testing
Option 2

The contractor agrees to establish and implement a drug and alcohol testing program that complies with 49 CFR Parts 653 and 654, produce any documentation necessary to establish its compliance with Parts 653 and 654, and permit any authorized representative of the United States Department of Transportation or its operating administrations, the State Oversight Agency of (name of State), or the (insert name of grantee), to inspect the facilities and records associated with the implementation of the drug and alcohol testing program as required under 49 CFR Parts 653 and 654 and review the

testing process. The contractor agrees further to certify annually its compliance with Parts 653 and 654 before (insert date) and to submit the Management Information System (MIS) reports before (insert date before March 15) to (insert title and address of person responsible for receiving information). To certify compliance the contractor shall use the "Substance Abuse Certifications" in the "Annual List of Certifications and Assurances for Federal Transit Administration Grants and Cooperative Agreements," which is published annually in the Federal Register.

Drug and Alcohol Testing
Option 3

The contractor agrees to establish and implement a drug and alcohol testing program that complies with 49 CFR Parts 653 and 654, produce any documentation necessary to establish its compliance with Parts 653 and 654, and permit any authorized representative of the United States Department of Transportation or its operating administrations, the State Oversight Agency of (name of State), or the (insert name of grantee), to inspect the facilities and records associated with the implementation of the drug and alcohol testing program as required under 49 CFR Parts 653 and 654 and review the testing process. The contractor agrees further to certify annually its compliance with Parts 653 and 654 before (insert date) and to submit the Management Information System (MIS) reports before (insert date before March 15) to (insert title and address of person responsible for receiving information). To certify compliance the contractor shall use the "Substance Abuse Certifications" in the "Annual List of Certifications and Assurances for Federal Transit Administration Grants and Cooperative Agreements," which is published annually in the Federal Register. The Contractor agrees further to [Select a, b, or c] (a) submit before (insert date or upon request) a copy of the Policy Statement developed to implement its drug and alcohol testing program; OR (b) adopt (insert title of the Policy Statement the recipient wishes the contractor to use) as its policy statement as required under 49 CFR 653 and 654; OR (c) submit for review and approval before (insert date or upon request) a copy of its Policy Statement developed to implement its drug and alcohol testing program. In addition, the contractor agrees to: (to be determined by the recipient, but may address areas such as: the selection of the certified laboratory, substance abuse professional, or Medical Review Officer, or the use of a consortium).

APPENDIX I- POWERPOINT

FLORIDA

Freight, Logistics & Passenger Operations

FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

PROCUREMENT GUIDANCE FOR TRANSIT AGENCIES

PRESENTATION OVERVIEW

- Funding Sources
- Types of Procurements
- Level of Procurement Methods
- Checklists
- Scenarios

FDOT

FLP OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS & PASSENGER OPERATIONS

Funding Sources

- Federal
- State
- Local

- Determine what funding source will be used in the procurement
- Follow appropriate guidelines based on source
  - Third Party Guidance
  - State Procurement Guidelines
  - Local Procurement Guidelines

FDOT

FLP OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS & PASSENGER OPERATIONS

Types of Procurement
Third Party Contracts

- Professional Services/Architectural Engineering Services
- Operations/Management/Subrecipients
- Rolling Stock
- Construction
- Materials and Supplies

- Determine what type of procurement fits the purchase

FDOT

FLP OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS & PASSENGER OPERATIONS

Level of Procurement Method

Third Party Contracts

- **Micro Purchases**
  - Procurements less than $2,500
- **Small Purchases***
  - Procurements greater than $2,500 but less than $35,000
- **Competitive Procurements***
  - Procurements greater than $35,000
- **Other methods listed in the Procurement Guidance for Transit Agencies Manual***

- Determine what level of procurement fits the purchase
- *Ensure that all potential vendors/contractors will accept the applicable federal clauses – this should be done prior to completing the checklist

FDOT

FLP OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS & PASSENGER OPERATIONS

Checklists

Third Party Contracts

To ensure that the applicable clauses are included in the agency's procurement request, the appropriate checklist should be utilized.

The checklist should notate where the applicable clauses can be found in the supporting documentation.

FLP FDOT

Guide for Professional Services and Architectural Engineering Services Checklist

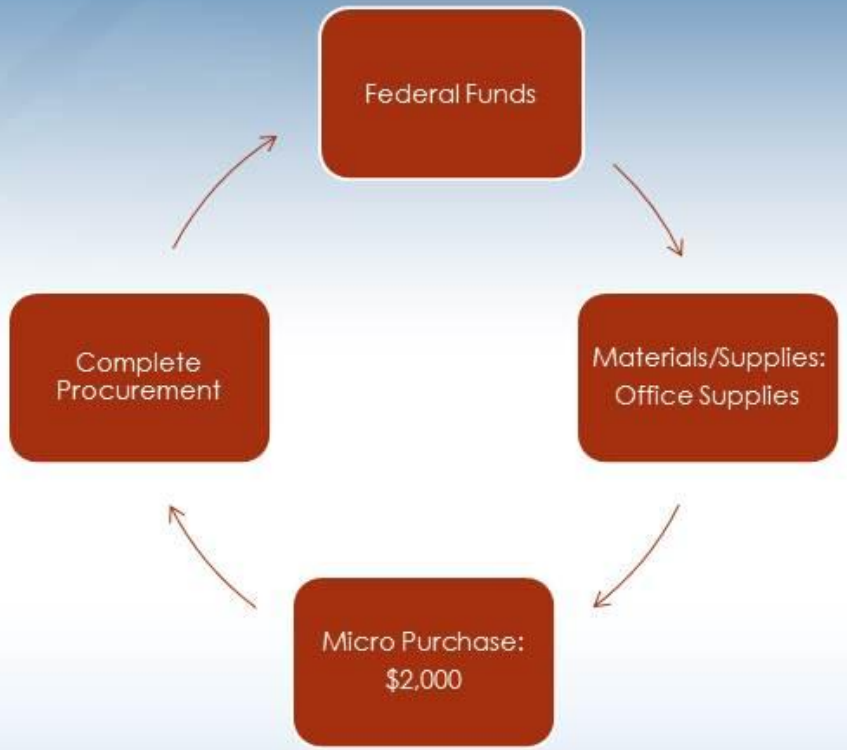
Applicable Federal Clauses	Location of Requirement in Purchasing Package
[illegible]	
[illegible]	
[illegible]	

Scenarios

Third Party Contracts

Micro Purchase

- Funding Source
- Types of Procurement
- Level of Procurement Method



FDOT

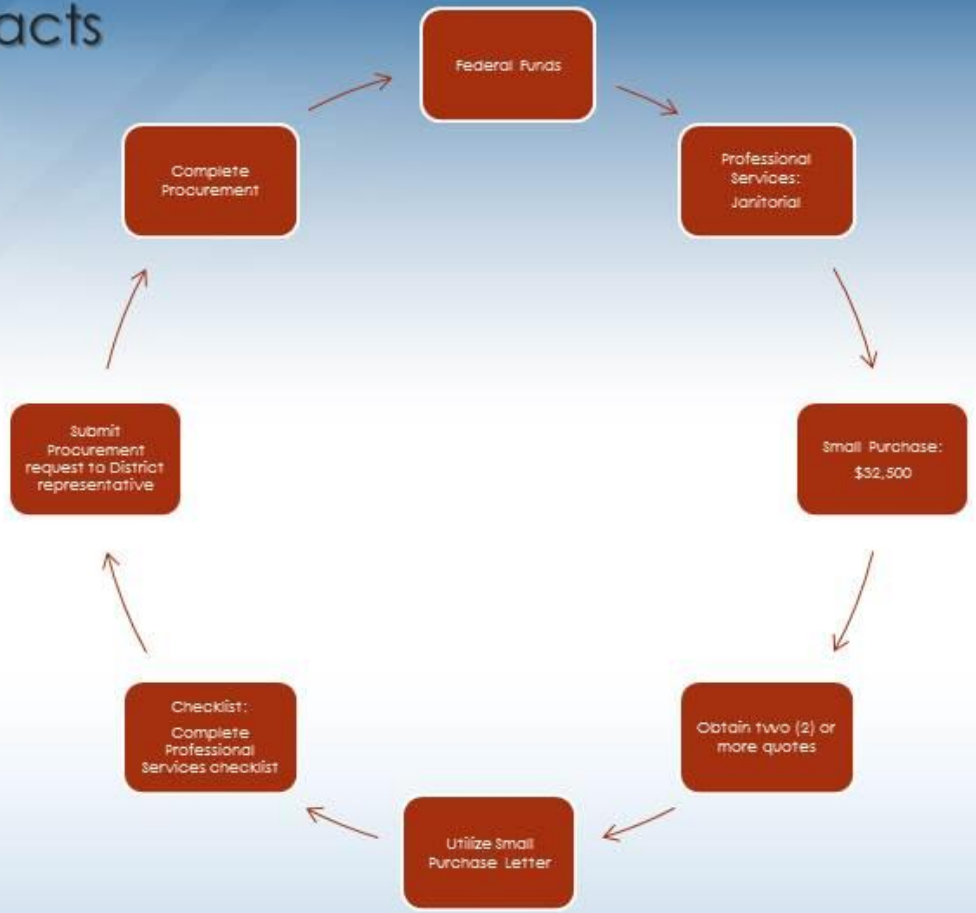
FLP OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS & PASSENGER OPERATIONS

Scenarios

Third Party Contracts

Small Purchase

- Funding Source
- Types of Procurement
- Level of Procurement Method
  - Obtain quotes
- Checklist
- Small Purchase Letter
- District Approval



FDOT

FLP OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS & PASSENGER OPERATIONS

Useful Tools

Third Party Contracts

Small Purchase

(Date)

To: Joe's Auto Shop

From: BBB Transit Agency

Subject: Acceptance of Federal Clauses

This purchase shall conform in all respects to the Federal Transit Administration's Federally Required and Other Model Clauses including but not limited to: No government obligation to third parties; Program fraud and false or fraudulent statements and related acts, 31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq., 49 CFR part 31 18 U.S.C. 1001, 49 U.S.C. 5307; Access to records and reports, 49 U.S.C. 5325, 18 CFR 18.36 (i), 49 CFR 633.17; Federal changes, 49 CFR part 18; Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE), 49 CFR part 26; Termination, 49 U.S.C. part 18
FTA circular 4220.1F.

Date:_____

Signature:

Company Name:_____

Title:

SAMPLE

REQUEST FOR QUOTATION

Item Description	Recycled Content Y-N-A*	Quantity - Unit	Unit Price	Total Price

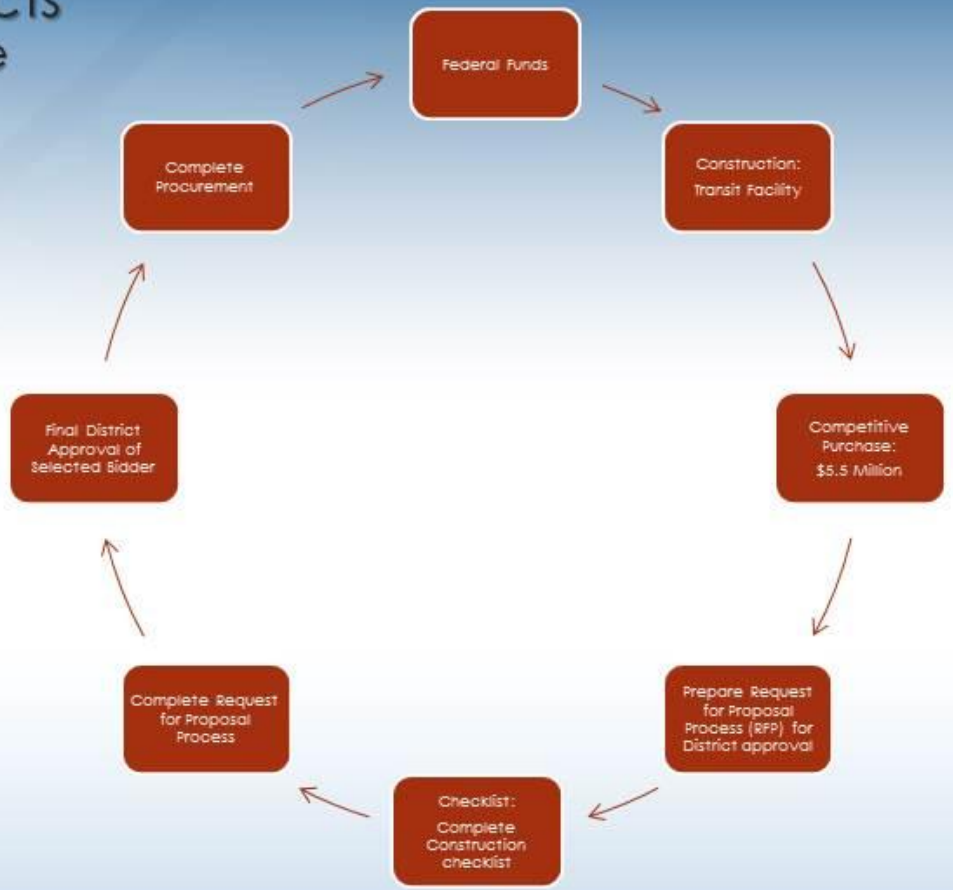
OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS & PASSENGER OPERATIONS

Scenarios

Third Party Contracts

Competitive Purchase

- Funding Source
- Types of Procurement
- Level of Procurement Method
- Prepare & Complete RFP
  - District Approval
- Complete Checklist
- Complete RFP Process
- Final District Approval of Selected Bidder



FDOT

OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS & PASSENGER OPERATIONS

Goals

Third Party Contracts

- Ensure applicable federal clauses are accepted by the vendors/contractors
- Ensure checklists are completed and approved by District Representative

FDOT

FLP OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS & PASSENGER OPERATIONS

FLORIDA

Freight, Logistics & Passenger Operations

FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

For questions or comments, please contact:

Erin Schepers | Vehicle Procurement Manager
erin.schepers@dot.state.fl.us | (850) 414-4526

FDOT

STATE OF FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FLP
Office of Freight, Logistics and Passenger Operations

<This Page Intentionally Left Blank>

END OF MANUAL

OFFICE OF FREIGHT, LOGISTICS & PASSENGER OPERATIONS